

# 400

Series

## Perkins 400J Series

Model IQ IR IW IY IF

# ELECTRONIC APPLICATION & INSTALLATION MANUAL

404J-E22TA

404J-E22T

403J-E17T

**Three and Four cylinder diesel engines for agricultural, industrial, construction applications**

# CONTENTS

|            |  |           |
|------------|--|-----------|
| <b>1.0</b> | <b>INTRODUCTION AND PURPOSE</b> .....  | <b>12</b> |
| <b>1.1</b> | <b>A &amp; I Manual Introduction</b> .....                                     | <b>12</b> |
| 1.1.1      | Regulation.....  | 12        |
| 1.1.2      | Safety.....  | 13        |
| 1.1.3      | Warning – Welding.....   | 13        |
| 1.1.4      | Warning - Electrostatic Paint Spraying.....                                    | 13        |
| 1.1.5      | Washing and Painting Processes (Excluding Electrostatic).....                  | 13        |
| 1.1.6      | Warning - Jump Starting.....   | 14        |
| <b>1.2</b> | <b>Functional Safety</b> .....   | <b>14</b> |
| 1.2.1      | Engine Speed Control.....  | 14        |
| <b>2.0</b> | <b>ENGINE &amp; AFTERTREATMENT COMPONENT OVERVIEW</b> .....                    | <b>19</b> |
| <b>2.1</b> | <b>Main Engine Sensor and Actuator Detail</b> .....                            | <b>19</b> |
| 2.1.1      | Electronic Control Module (ECM).....   | 19        |
| 2.1.2      | Fuel System.....   | 19        |
| 2.1.3      | Engine Speed.....  | 19        |
| 2.1.4      | NOx Reduction System (NRS).....  | 19        |
| 2.1.5      | Core Engine System.....  | 20        |
| 2.1.6      | Air System.....  | 20        |
| <b>2.2</b> | <b>Aftertreatment System Components, Sensors &amp; Actuator Overview</b> ..... | <b>20</b> |
| 2.2.1      | Diesel Oxidation Catalyst (DOC).....   | 20        |
| 2.2.2      | Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF).....   | 20        |
| 2.2.3      | DOC Inlet and DPF Inlet Temperature Sensors.....                               | 21        |
| 2.2.4      | DPF Delta Pressure Sensor.....   | 21        |
| <b>2.3</b> | <b>System Component Diagrams and Electrical Schematic</b> .....                | <b>22</b> |
| 2.3.1      | 404 On Engine Harness layout.....  | 22        |
| 2.3.2      | 403 On Engine Harness layout.....  | 23        |
| 2.3.3      | 400 Series < 55kW DOC, DPF aftertreatment component and sensor Layout.....     | 24        |
| 2.3.4      | 400 Series Electrical Schematic without link harness.....                      | 24        |
| 2.3.5      | Engine and Aftertreatment I/O tables.....                                      | 24        |
| <b>3.0</b> | <b>CUSTOMER SYSTEM OVERVIEW KEY ELEMENTS</b> .....                             | <b>25</b> |
| <b>3.1</b> | <b>Aftertreatment Configurations</b> .....                                     | <b>25</b> |
| <b>3.2</b> | <b>Stage V Mandatory Install Components</b> .....                              | <b>25</b> |

Release 10.0

|             |  |           |
|-------------|--|-----------|
| <b>3.3</b>  | <b>Example of Optional Customer Installed Components.....</b>    | <b>26</b> |
| <b>4.0</b>  | <b>POWER &amp; GROUNDING CONSIDERATIONS.....</b>                 | <b>28</b> |
| <b>4.1</b>  | <b>System Grounding .....</b>                                    | <b>28</b> |
| 4.1.1       | Ground Stud on Starter Motor .....                               | 28        |
| 4.1.2       | Engine Block Ground Connection .....                             | 28        |
| 4.1.3       | ECM Body Grounding.....  | 29        |
| <b>4.2</b>  | <b>Engine Electrical System Power and Grounding.....</b>         | <b>29</b> |
| <b>4.3</b>  | <b>System Voltage &amp; Current Requirements .....</b>           | <b>30</b> |
| 4.3.1       | Engine ECM Controller.....                                       | 30        |
| 4.3.2       | Glow Plug System .....   | 31        |
| 4.3.3       | Electric Lift / Prime Pump .....                                 | 31        |
| 4.3.4       | System Effect on Alternator Specification .....                  | 32        |
| <b>4.4</b>  | <b>Engine ECM Location – Wiring Constraints .....</b>            | <b>32</b> |
| <b>4.5</b>  | <b>ECM Power Supply Conductors.....</b>                          | <b>32</b> |
| <b>4.6</b>  | <b>Injector Power Supply Circuit .....</b>                       | <b>32</b> |
| <b>4.7</b>  | <b>Injector Circuit Resistance .....</b>                         | <b>32</b> |
| <b>4.8</b>  | <b>ECM Power Supply Circuit Resistance .....</b>                 | <b>32</b> |
| <b>4.9</b>  | <b>Injector Cables.....</b>                                      | <b>33</b> |
| <b>4.10</b> | <b>Fuel Metering Unit Cable .....</b>                            | <b>34</b> |
| <b>4.11</b> | <b>Engine Solenoid and Actuators .....</b>                       | <b>34</b> |
| <b>4.12</b> | <b>Voltage Suppression Requirement .....</b>                     | <b>35</b> |
| <b>4.13</b> | <b>ECM Key-Off .....</b>   | <b>35</b> |
| <b>4.14</b> | <b>ECM Body to Chassis Maximum Potential Difference .....</b>    | <b>35</b> |
| <b>4.15</b> | <b>ECM Output Driver Connection Warning .....</b>                | <b>35</b> |
| <b>5.0</b>  | <b>ENGINE CONNECTORS &amp; WIRING HARNESS REQUIREMENTS .....</b> | <b>36</b> |
| <b>5.1</b>  | <b>Engine ECM Connectors.....</b>                                | <b>36</b> |
| <b>5.2</b>  | <b>Engine ECM J1 Connector .....</b>                             | <b>36</b> |
| 5.2.1       | Engine ECM J1 Connector Layout .....                             | 36        |
| 5.2.2       | Engine ECM J1 Connector I/O .....                                | 37        |
| 5.2.3       | Engine ECM J1 Connector Information .....                        | 37        |

|            |   |           |
|------------|---|-----------|
| <b>5.3</b> | <b>Engine ECM J2 Connector .....</b>                            | <b>37</b> |
| 5.3.1      | Engine ECM J2 Connector Layout .....                            | 37        |
| 5.3.2      | Engine ECM J2 Connector I/O .....                               | 37        |
| 5.3.3      | Engine ECM J2 Connector Information .....                       | 38        |
| <b>5.4</b> | <b>Engine ECM Harness Strain Relief .....</b>                   | <b>38</b> |
| <b>5.5</b> | <b>Engine Interface Connector (EIC) (47 pin) .....</b>          | <b>39</b> |
| 5.5.1      | EIC Summary (47 Pin).....                                       | 39        |
| 5.5.2      | EIC Layout .....  | 39        |
| 5.5.3      | EIC I/O .....   | 39        |
| 5.5.4      | EIC Information .....   | 39        |
| 5.5.5      | EIC Strain Relief.....  | 39        |
| <b>5.6</b> | <b>All connector Sealing Plug Installation guidelines .....</b> | <b>41</b> |
| <b>5.7</b> | <b>Wire Specification Requirements .....</b>                    | <b>41</b> |
| 5.7.1      | Wire Thickness Overview.....                                    | 41        |
| 5.7.2      | ISO6722 – Thin Wall.....  | 41        |
| 5.7.3      | Factory Supplied Link Harness .....                             | 42        |
| 5.7.4      | Harness wiring installation standard .....                      | 43        |
| 5.7.5      | Connector Installation Standard .....                           | 43        |
| 5.7.6      | Harness bends near connectors .....                             | 43        |
| 5.7.7      | Cable Routing.....  | 43        |
| 5.7.8      | Twisted cable pairs .....                                       | 44        |
| 5.7.9      | Electromagnetic Compliance (EMC) .....                          | 44        |
| 5.7.10     | Insulation Selection and Thermal Protection .....               | 45        |
| <b>6.0</b> | <b>CUSTOMER CONNECTION OF ENGINE COMPONENTS .....</b>           | <b>46</b> |
| <b>6.1</b> | <b>Engine ECM Installation Requirements .....</b>               | <b>46</b> |
| 6.1.1      | Engine ECM Power Supply .....                                   | 46        |
| 6.1.2      | Engine ECM Geometry .....                                       | 47        |
| 6.1.3      | Engine ECM Mounting .....                                       | 48        |
| 6.1.4      | Engine ECM Mounting Orientation.....                            | 49        |
| 6.1.5      | Engine ECM Vibration Requirements.....                          | 52        |
| 6.1.6      | Engine ECM Temperature Limitations .....                        | 53        |
| <b>6.2</b> | <b>Water in Fuel Switch (WIF) .....</b>                         | <b>54</b> |
| 6.2.1      | WIF Switch Operation .....                                      | 54        |
| 6.2.2      | WIF Switch Configuration .....                                  | 55        |
| 6.2.3      | WIF Switch Installation .....                                   | 56        |

|            |  |           |
|------------|--|-----------|
| 6.2.4      | WIF Connector Information .....                                    | 57        |
| 6.2.5      | WIF Component I/O .....  | 57        |
| <b>6.3</b> | <b>Air Inlet Temperature Sensor .....</b>                          | <b>57</b> |
| 6.3.1      | Air Inlet Temperature Sensor Operation .....                       | 57        |
| 6.3.2      | Air Inlet Temperature Sensor Configuration .....                   | 58        |
| 6.3.3      | Air Inlet Temperature Sensor Installation .....                    | 58        |
| 6.3.4      | Air Inlet Temperature Sensor Schematic .....                       | 58        |
| 6.3.5      | Air Inlet Temperature Sensor Connector Information .....           | 58        |
| 6.3.6      | Air Inlet Temperature Sensor Component I/O .....                   | 59        |
| <b>6.4</b> | <b>Engine Diagnostic Connector .....</b>                           | <b>59</b> |
| 6.4.1      | Engine Diagnostic Connector Operation .....                        | 59        |
| 6.4.2      | Engine Diagnostic Connector Configuration .....                    | 59        |
| 6.4.3      | Engine Diagnostic Connector Installation .....                     | 59        |
| 6.4.4      | Engine Diagnostic Connector Schematic .....                        | 60        |
| 6.4.5      | Engine Diagnostic Connector Information .....                      | 60        |
| 6.4.6      | Engine Diagnostic Connector Component I/O .....                    | 60        |
| <b>6.5</b> | <b>Air Filter Restriction Switch .....</b>                         | <b>61</b> |
| 6.5.1      | Air Filter Restriction Switch Operation .....                      | 61        |
| 6.5.2      | Air Filter Restriction Switch Configuration .....                  | 61        |
| 6.5.3      | Air Filter Restriction Switch Installation .....                   | 62        |
| 6.5.4      | Air Filter Restriction Switch Schematic .....                      | 62        |
| 6.5.5      | Air Filter Restriction Switch Connector Information .....          | 62        |
| 6.5.6      | Air Filter Restriction Switch Component I/O .....                  | 62        |
| <b>6.6</b> | <b>Engine Electric Fuel Prime / Lift Pump .....</b>                | <b>63</b> |
| 6.6.1      | Engine Electric Fuel Prime / Lift Pump Operation .....             | 63        |
| 6.6.2      | Engine Electric Fuel Prime / Lift Pump Installation .....          | 63        |
| 6.6.3      | Engine Electric Fuel Prime / Lift Pump Schematic .....             | 64        |
| 6.6.4      | Engine Electric Fuel Prime / Lift Pump Connector Information ..... | 64        |
| 6.6.5      | Engine Electric Fuel Prime / Lift Pump Component I/O .....         | 64        |
| <b>7.0</b> | <b>CONNECTING ENGINE TO AFTERTREATMENT .....</b>                   | <b>65</b> |
| <b>7.1</b> | <b>Aftertreatment system .....</b>                                 | <b>65</b> |
| 7.1.1      | Aftertreatment System Architecture Overview .....                  | 65        |
| <b>7.2</b> | <b>Exhaust Gas Temperature Sensors .....</b>                       | <b>65</b> |
| 7.2.1      | Exhaust Gas Temperature Sensor Operation .....                     | 65        |
| 7.2.2      | Exhaust Gas Temperature Sensor Configuration .....                 | 66        |

|            |   |           |
|------------|---|-----------|
| 7.2.3      | Exhaust Gas Temperature Sensor wiring schematic.....                      | 66        |
| 7.2.4      | Exhaust Gas Temperature Sensor connector information .....                | 66        |
| 7.2.5      | Exhaust Gas Temperature component I/O .....                               | 67        |
| <b>7.3</b> | <b>Delta P Pressure Sensor .....</b>                                      | <b>67</b> |
| 7.3.1      | Delta P Pressure Sensor Operation.....                                    | 67        |
| 7.3.2      | Delta P Pressure Sensor Configuration .....                               | 67        |
| 7.3.3      | Delta P Pressure Sensor Installation .....                                | 67        |
| 7.3.4      | Delta P Pressure Sensor Schematic.....                                    | 68        |
| 7.3.5      | DPF Delta P Connector Information.....                                    | 68        |
| 7.3.6      | DPF Delta P component I/O.....  | 69        |
| <b>8.0</b> | <b>STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE.....</b>                              | <b>70</b> |
| <b>8.1</b> | <b>Starting the Engine .....</b>  | <b>70</b> |
| 8.1.1      | Starter Motor Control.....  | 70        |
| <b>8.2</b> | <b>Stopping the Engine (and Preventing Restart) .....</b>                 | <b>74</b> |
| 8.2.1      | Ignition Key switch.....  | 75        |
| 8.2.2      | Battery Disconnect Switches (also known Battery Isolation Switches) ..... | 75        |
| 8.2.3      | User Defined Shutdown (Remote Shutdown) .....                             | 75        |
| 8.2.4      | Engine Emergency Stops.....   | 77        |
| 8.2.5      | Common problems with the application of stop devices .....                | 77        |
| 8.2.6      | Engine Idle Shutdown .....  | 77        |
| <b>9.0</b> | <b>ENGINE SPEED DEMAND .....</b>  | <b>80</b> |
| <b>9.1</b> | <b>Analogue Throttle Sensor .....</b>                                     | <b>81</b> |
| 9.1.1      | Analogue Throttle Sensor Operation .....                                  | 81        |
| 9.1.2      | Analogue Throttle Sensor Configuration .....                              | 82        |
| 9.1.3      | Evaluating Component Compatibility (Testing) .....                        | 82        |
| 9.1.4      | Analogue Throttle Sensor Installation .....                               | 82        |
| 9.1.5      | Idle Validation Switch Compatibility Test .....                           | 83        |
| <b>9.2</b> | <b>PWM Throttle Sensor .....</b>  | <b>83</b> |
| 9.2.1      | PWM Throttle Sensor Operation .....                                       | 83        |
| 9.2.2      | PWM Throttle Sensor Configuration .....                                   | 85        |
| 9.2.3      | Evaluating Component Compatibility (Testing) .....                        | 85        |
| 9.2.4      | PWM Throttle Sensor Installation.....                                     | 85        |
| <b>9.3</b> | <b>PTO mode.....</b>  | <b>85</b> |
| 9.3.1      | PTO Mode Operation.....   | 85        |

|             |  |            |
|-------------|--|------------|
| 9.3.2       | PTO Mode Configuration .....                                   | 90         |
| 9.3.3       | PTO Mode Installation .....                                    | 90         |
| <b>9.4</b>  | <b>Multi Position Throttle Switch (MPTS).....</b>              | <b>90</b>  |
| 9.4.1       | MPTS Operation.....  | 90         |
| 9.4.2       | MPTS Configuration .....                                       | 91         |
| 9.4.3       | MPTS Installation .....  | 92         |
| <b>9.5</b>  | <b>Torque Speed Control TSC1 (Speed Control Over CAN).....</b> | <b>93</b>  |
| <b>9.6</b>  | <b>Arbitration of Throttle speed demand.....</b>               | <b>93</b>  |
| 9.6.1       | Throttle Arbitration Configuration.....                        | 93         |
| 9.6.2       | Manual Throttle Selection Switch.....                          | 93         |
| 9.6.3       | Manual Throttle Selection with Return to Idle Operation.....   | 93         |
| 9.6.4       | Manual Arbitration Installation .....                          | 93         |
| 9.6.5       | Largest Wins selection (Default).....                          | 94         |
| 9.6.6       | Lowest Wins selection .....                                    | 94         |
| <b>9.7</b>  | <b>Throttle Calibration .....</b>                              | <b>94</b>  |
| 9.7.1       | Throttle Parameter Description.....                            | 95         |
| 9.7.2       | Throttle Calibration Function.....                             | 96         |
| 9.7.3       | Idle Validation Switch .....                                   | 101        |
| <b>9.8</b>  | <b>Engine Acceleration Ramp Rates .....</b>                    | <b>102</b> |
| <b>9.9</b>  | <b>Engine Limp Home Speed .....</b>                            | <b>102</b> |
| <b>9.10</b> | <b>Definition of Engine Speed Points.....</b>                  | <b>103</b> |
| 9.10.1      | Engine Low Idle .....  | 103        |
| 9.10.2      | Engine High Idle .....   | 104        |
| <b>9.11</b> | <b>Engine Speed Output.....</b>                                | <b>104</b> |
| <b>10.0</b> | <b>COLD WEATHER ENGINE OPERATION &amp; STARTING AIDS .....</b> | <b>105</b> |
| <b>10.1</b> | <b>Control of Glow Plugs by the Engine ECM.....</b>            | <b>105</b> |
| 10.1.1      | Glow Plug System Operation .....                               | 105        |
| 10.1.2      | Glow Plug System Installation.....                             | 105        |
| 10.1.3      | Glow Plug Connector .....                                      | 106        |
| <b>10.2</b> | <b>Breather Heater Connection .....</b>                        | <b>107</b> |
| <b>11.0</b> | <b>OPERATOR INDICATORS &amp; FAULT DISPLAYS.....</b>           | <b>109</b> |
| <b>11.1</b> | <b>Engine &amp; Aftertreatment Diagnostic Systems .....</b>    | <b>109</b> |
| 11.1.1      | Monitoring System Fault Status Levels.....                     | 110        |

|             |  |            |
|-------------|--|------------|
| <b>11.2</b> | <b>Gauge Drivers .....</b>   | <b>110</b> |
| 11.2.1      | Datalink Driven Intelligent Displays .....                               | 110        |
| 11.2.2      | Minimum Functional Specification for J1939 display .....                 | 111        |
| <b>11.3</b> | <b>Lamp Outputs &amp; Operation .....</b>                                | <b>111</b> |
| 11.3.1      | Hardwired Lamp Outputs .....   | 111        |
| 11.3.2      | J1939 Indicator Support.....   | 112        |
| 11.3.3      | Indicator ISO Reference Symbols.....                                     | 113        |
| 11.3.4      | Engine Shutdown Indicator.....   | 113        |
| 11.3.5      | Engine Warning Indicator .....   | 114        |
| 11.3.6      | Engine Wait to Start Indicator .....                                     | 114        |
| 11.3.7      | Oil Pressure Indicator .....   | 115        |
| 11.3.8      | Emissions System Malfunction Indicator (MIL Lamp).....                   | 116        |
| 11.3.9      | Wait To Disconnect Indicator .....                                       | 117        |
| 11.3.10     | DPF Indicator.....   | 117        |
| 11.3.11     | Engine Running Output Indicator .....                                    | 118        |
| 11.3.12     | Regeneration Active Lamp .....   | 119        |
| 11.3.13     | Regeneration Inhibit Lamp .....  | 119        |
| <b>12.0</b> | <b>ENGINE &amp; AFTERTREATMENT MONITORING SYSTEM .....</b>               | <b>120</b> |
| <b>12.1</b> | <b>General Information .....</b>   | <b>120</b> |
| 12.1.1      | Monitoring Levels .....  | 120        |
| 12.1.2      | Parameter Severity Levels .....  | 121        |
| 12.1.3      | Monitoring System Configurable Parameters .....                          | 122        |
| <b>12.2</b> | <b>Emissions Critical Components Monitoring &amp; Protection.....</b>    | <b>124</b> |
| 12.2.1      | Inducement Strategy High Level Overview .....                            | 124        |
| 12.2.2      | Combined EU / EPA Inducement Strategy Operation.....                     | 124        |
| 12.2.3      | Combined EU/EPA Inducement Strategy Configuration .....                  | 125        |
| 12.2.4      | Repeat Occurrence and Final Inducement Handling .....                    | 125        |
| 12.2.5      | Final Inducement Safe Harbor Mode.....                                   | 125        |
| 12.2.6      | Engine First Fit Inducement Activation .....                             | 126        |
| <b>12.3</b> | <b>Non Emissions Critical Component Monitoring &amp; Protection.....</b> | <b>126</b> |
| 12.3.1      | Coolant Temperature.....   | 126        |
| 12.3.2      | Engine Oil Pressure .....  | 127        |
| 12.3.3      | Intake Manifold Temperature .....  | 128        |
| <b>13.0</b> | <b>MACHINE INTEGRATION CONSIDERATION .....</b>                           | <b>129</b> |
| <b>13.1</b> | <b>Aftertreatment System Operation.....</b>                              | <b>129</b> |

|             |  |            |
|-------------|--|------------|
| 13.1.1      | DOC Operation.....   | 129        |
| 13.1.2      | DPF Operation.....   | 129        |
| 13.1.3      | Passive Plus Operation.....  | 129        |
| 13.1.4      | Active Regeneration.....   | 129        |
| 13.1.5      | Engine Elevated Idle (Mandatory Installation) .....                  | 130        |
| 13.1.6      | Machine Integration Of Elevated Idle.....                            | 132        |
| 13.1.7      | Parasitic Load Request (CAN Message) .....                           | 134        |
| <b>13.2</b> | <b>DPF Regeneration Control System Overview .....</b>                | <b>135</b> |
| 13.2.1      | DPF Escalation Levels Configuration .....                            | 142        |
| <b>13.3</b> | <b>DPF Regeneration Lock to Idle Operation .....</b>                 | <b>142</b> |
| 13.3.1      | Shutdown.....  | 142        |
| 13.3.2      | Idle Down.....   | 143        |
| <b>13.4</b> | <b>DPF Regen Inhibit Switch and DPF Regen Inhibit Lamp .....</b>     | <b>144</b> |
| 13.4.1      | DPF Regen Inhibit Switch Operation.....                              | 144        |
| 13.4.2      | DPF Regen Active Lamp Logic .....                                    | 145        |
| 13.4.3      | DPF Regen Inhibit Switch Configuration .....                         | 145        |
| 13.4.4      | Inhibit Switch, Inhibit Lamp and Regen Active Lamp Installation..... | 145        |
| <b>13.5</b> | <b>DPF Regen System J1939 Message Summary.....</b>                   | <b>147</b> |
| <b>13.6</b> | <b>Engine Soft Start Protection .....</b>                            | <b>148</b> |
| 13.6.1      | Engine Soft Start Protection Operation .....                         | 148        |
| 13.6.2      | Engine Soft Start Protection Configuration .....                     | 148        |
| 13.6.3      | Engine Soft Start Protection Installation.....                       | 148        |
| <b>14.0</b> | <b>ENGINE GOVERNOR .....</b>   | <b>150</b> |
| <b>14.1</b> | <b>Min / Max Governing .....</b>                                     | <b>150</b> |
| 14.1.1      | Min / Max Governing Operation.....                                   | 150        |
| 14.1.2      | Min / Max Governing Configuration.....                               | 151        |
| 14.1.3      | Min / Max Governing Installation .....                               | 151        |
| <b>14.2</b> | <b>Engine All Speed Governing.....</b>                               | <b>151</b> |
| 14.2.1      | Engine All Speed Governing Operation.....                            | 151        |
| 14.2.2      | Engine All Speed Governing Configuration .....                       | 152        |
| 14.2.3      | Engine All Speed Governing Installation .....                        | 152        |
| <b>14.3</b> | <b>Rating Selection Using ET.....</b>                                | <b>152</b> |
| <b>14.4</b> | <b>Engine High Speed Governor (Governor Run-Out) .....</b>           | <b>153</b> |
| 14.4.1      | Engine High Speed Governor Operation.....                            | 153        |

|             |   |            |
|-------------|---|------------|
| 14.4.2      | Engine High Speed Governor Configuration .....            | 153        |
| <b>14.5</b> | <b>Mode Selection .....</b>                               | <b>153</b> |
| 14.5.1      | Mode Selection Operation.....                             | 153        |
| 14.5.2      | Mode Selection Configuration .....                        | 154        |
| 14.5.3      | Mode Select Installation .....                            | 154        |
| 14.5.4      | Mode Select changes requested via the J1939 datalink..... | 154        |
| <b>15.0</b> | <b>OPTIONAL ENGINE FEATURES.....</b>                      | <b>156</b> |
| <b>15.1</b> | <b>Alternative Low Idle .....</b>                         | <b>156</b> |
| 15.1.1      | Alternative Low Idle Operation.....                       | 156        |
| 15.1.2      | Alternative Low Idle Configuration .....                  | 156        |
| 15.1.3      | Alternative Low Idle Installation .....                   | 156        |
| <b>15.2</b> | <b>Coolant Level Switch.....</b>                          | <b>157</b> |
| 15.2.1      | Coolant Level Switch Operation.....                       | 157        |
| 15.2.2      | Coolant Level Switch Configuration .....                  | 157        |
| 15.2.3      | Coolant Level Switch Installation .....                   | 157        |
| <b>15.3</b> | <b>Auxiliary Pressure Sensor .....</b>                    | <b>158</b> |
| 15.3.1      | Auxiliary Pressure Sensor Operation .....                 | 158        |
| 15.3.2      | Auxiliary Pressure Sensor Configuration.....              | 158        |
| 15.3.3      | Auxiliary Pressure Sensor Installation.....               | 158        |
| <b>15.4</b> | <b>Auxiliary Temperature Sensor .....</b>                 | <b>159</b> |
| 15.4.1      | Auxiliary Temperature Sensor operation.....               | 159        |
| 15.4.2      | Auxiliary Temperature sensor Configuration.....           | 159        |
| 15.4.3      | Auxiliary Temperature Installation .....                  | 160        |
| <b>15.5</b> | <b>Charge Air Temperature sensor .....</b>                | <b>160</b> |
| 15.5.1      | Charge Air Temperature sensor operation .....             | 160        |
| 15.5.2      | Charge Air Temperature sensor configuration .....         | 160        |
| 15.5.3      | Charge Air Temperature Installation .....                 | 161        |
| <b>15.6</b> | <b>ON-OFF Fan .....</b>                                   | <b>161</b> |
| 15.6.1      | ON-OFF Fan Speed operation .....                          | 161        |
| 15.6.2      | ON-OFF Fan Speed Configuration .....                      | 161        |
| 15.6.3      | ON-OFF Fan Speed Installation .....                       | 162        |
| <b>15.7</b> | <b>Engine No Load Fuel Map Offset.....</b>                | <b>163</b> |
| 15.7.1      | Engine No Load Fuel Map Offset Operation .....            | 163        |
| 15.7.2      | Engine No Load Fuel Map Offset Configuration .....        | 163        |

|              |   |            |
|--------------|---|------------|
| 15.7.3       | Engine No Load Fuel Map Offset Installation .....       | 163        |
| <b>15.8</b>  | <b>Low Battery Voltage Elevated Idle .....</b>          | <b>163</b> |
| 15.8.1       | Low Battery Voltage Elevated Idle Operation.....        | 163        |
| 15.8.2       | Low Battery Voltage Elevated Idle Configuration .....   | 164        |
| 15.8.3       | Low Battery Voltage Elevated Idle Installation .....    | 164        |
| <b>15.9</b>  | <b>Engine Running Output.....</b>                       | <b>164</b> |
| 15.9.1       | Engine Running Output Operation .....                   | 164        |
| 15.9.2       | Engine Running Output Configuration .....               | 164        |
| 15.9.3       | Engine Running Output Installation .....                | 165        |
| <b>15.10</b> | <b>Maintenance Indicator .....</b>                      | <b>165</b> |
| 15.10.1      | Maintenance Indicator Operation .....                   | 165        |
| 15.10.2      | Maintenance Indicator Configuration.....                | 166        |
| 15.10.3      | Maintenance Indicator Installation.....                 | 166        |
| <b>15.11</b> | <b>Immobiliser .....</b>                                | <b>166</b> |
| 15.11.1      | Immobiliser Operation.....                              | 166        |
| 15.11.2      | Immobiliser Configuration .....                         | 169        |
| 15.11.3      | Immobiliser Installation .....                          | 169        |
| <b>16.0</b>  | <b>DATALINK SUPPORT .....</b>                           | <b>170</b> |
| <b>16.1</b>  | <b>SAE J1939 .....</b>                                  | <b>170</b> |
| 16.1.1       | Summary of Key J1939 Application Issues.....            | 170        |
| 16.1.2       | Physical layer .....                                    | 170        |
| 16.1.3       | Network Layer.....                                      | 170        |
| 16.1.4       | Application Layer .....                                 | 171        |
| <b>16.2</b>  | <b>Connection and Use of the J1939 CAN Bus .....</b>    | <b>171</b> |
| <b>16.3</b>  | <b>J1939 Supported Parameters Quick reference .....</b> | <b>173</b> |
| <b>16.4</b>  | <b>J1939 Parameters – Detailed Descriptions .....</b>   | <b>183</b> |
| 16.4.1       | Sending Messages to the Engine ECM .....                | 183        |
| 16.4.2       | J1939 Section 71 – TSC1 Operation .....                 | 183        |
| <b>17.0</b>  | <b>LAMP AND LED SPECIFICATION.....</b>                  | <b>192</b> |
| <b>18.0</b>  | <b>CONNECTOR LIST INFORMATION.....</b>                  | <b>194</b> |
| <b>19.0</b>  | <b>REVISION HISTORY .....</b>                           | <b>195</b> |

## 1.0 Introduction and Purpose

The information contained in this manual is confidential and proprietary to Perkins. It is intended for circulation only to Perkins and Perkins dealer employees, or to employees of OEMs intending to purchase and install Tier 4 Final/Stage V Perkins engines in their equipment. Distribution of this material must be limited to personnel whose duties require knowledge of such material and is intended exclusively for their information and training. Distribution of this material for other purposes is strictly prohibited.

### 1.1 A & I Manual Introduction

This manual has been compiled to explain mandatory requirements, provide information for designers, and provide information on the application and installation of the 400 Series Tier 4 Final / Stage V engine into industrial equipment, to meet U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) Tier 4 Final / European Union (EU) Stage V emission standards.

Serial number prefix for the engines referenced in this manual are:

- IQ
- IR
- IW
- IY
- IF

The following media publications should be used in conjunction with this manual for further technical information:

- 400 Series Tier 4 Final / Stage V Mechanical Application & Installation Manual.
- 400 Series Tier 4 Final / Stage V Exhaust Fluid System Supplement.
- 400 Series Tier 4 Final / Stage V Operator and Maintenance Manual (OMM).
- System Operation Test and Adjust (SOTA).
- Disassembly and Assembly (D&A).
- Engine Sales Manual (ESM).

Always follow correct practices, procedures and safety precautions.

**Important note:** The information provided may be subject to change. Perkins has provided this information in good faith and is not liable for how this information is interpreted or applied.

Perkins is not responsible for failures resulting from attachments, systems, accessory items, and parts not sold or approved by Perkins. Consult the applicable warranties for complete details of the Perkins warranty coverage.

The OEM and customer are reminded that it is their responsibility to ensure compliance with the requirements of any applicable employee health and safety laws and regulations, both nationally and internationally, in relation to the engine installation applicable to the equipment concerned. In giving notice of approval in respect to the installation, Perkins does not assume such responsibilities on behalf of the OEM or customer and while engine installation approval and advice is an opinion given in good faith, the equipment manufacturer and customer remain responsible as detailed above and must act and insure accordingly.

#### 1.1.1 Regulation

To ensure the Engine is compliant to the regulation, it's important to note that the ECM and the Engine are correctly paired. To ease the matching process, both Engine and ECM have serial number labels attached.

**It is the responsibility of the OEM to ensure the ECM and Engine are paired as per their serial number labels.**

Warning:

Not respecting the pairing of the engine and ECM will result in emission non-compliance and a potential negative performance impact.

### 1.1.2 Safety

Most accidents that involve product operation, maintenance and repair are caused by failure to observe basic safety rules or precautions. An accident can often be avoided by recognizing potentially hazardous situations before an accident occurs. A person must be alert to potential hazards. This person should also have the necessary training, skills and tools in order to perform these functions properly.

The information in this publication was based upon current information at the time of publication. Check for the most current information before you start any job. Perkins Distributors will have the most current information.

Improper operation, maintenance or repair of this product may be dangerous. Improper operation, maintenance or repair of this product may result in injury or death.

Do not operate or perform any maintenance or repair on this product until you have read and understood the operation, maintenance and repair information.

Perkins cannot anticipate every possible circumstance that might involve a potential hazard. The warnings in this publication and on the product are not all inclusive. If a tool, a procedure, a work method or an operating technique that is not specifically recommended by Perkins is used, you must be sure that it is safe for you and for other people. You must also be sure that the product will not be damaged and / or made unsafe by the procedures that are used.

### 1.1.3 Warning – Welding

Welding can cause damage to the on engine and aftertreatment electrical and electronics components. The following precautions should be taken before and during welding:

- Turn the engine OFF.
- Place the ignition key switch in the OFF position.
- Disconnect the negative battery cable from the battery. If the machine is fitted with a battery disconnect switch then open the switch.
- Clamp the ground cable of the welder to the component that will be welded. Place the clamp as close as possible to the weld.
- Protect any wiring harnesses from welding debris and splatter.

Important Note:

- **Do not** use electrical components in order to ground the welder.
- **Do not** use the ECM, sensors and / or any other electrical components in order to ground the welder.

### 1.1.4 Warning - Electrostatic Paint Spraying

The high voltages used in electrostatic paint spraying can cause damage to on engine electronics. The damage can manifest itself through immediate failure of components, or by weakening electronic components causing them to fail at a later date.

Electrostatic painting is not recommended. In circumstances where the engine must be painted using electrostatic processes, it is necessary to provide technical details of the applied voltage, estimated current and maximum process exposure time. Electrostatic painting is not permitted without prior consent.

As a minimum where the electrostatic process characteristics are acceptable it is necessary to use a common ground for all circuits on the engine electrical components and aftertreatment electrical components. All pins must be connected to a common ground. The engine ECM **must not** be painted using any process.

### 1.1.5 Washing and Painting Processes (Excluding Electrostatic)

The engine and aftertreatment electrical components must not be painted without prior consent. Painting the engine ECM will reduce heat dissipation capability and so the ECM must not be painted. Additionally the engine ECM pressure valve and connectors need to be protected against fluid / paint ingress. The ECM can only be washed if both of the ECM connectors are attached. During Jet washing the ECM must not be powered and the following limits must be adhered to:

|                                 |      |
|---------------------------------|------|
| Min Distance from ECM Case (mm) | 100  |
| Max Water Flow Rate (L/min)     | 14   |
| Max Water Pressure (kPa)        | 8000 |
| Max Water Temperature (°C)      | 80   |
| Max Exposure Time (sec)         | 30   |

Table 1.1

### 1.1.6 Warning - Jump Starting

Jump-starting an engine can cause higher than normal voltages to appear across the battery terminals. Care must be taken that this does not exceed the recommended maximum voltage for all electrical components on the engine and aftertreatment components. The system voltage must not exceed 16 volts.

## 1.2 Functional Safety

EU legislation for machinery safety necessitates compliance with harmonised functional safety standards at the point at which a machine product is placed on the market.

In anticipation that certain machine installations may place particular requirements on the functional safety performance level to be achieved by some functions within the engine control system, a number of developments have been made.

To understand whether the following information is relevant to a particular installation, a machine level PHA (Preliminary Hazard Analysis) or MCSSA (Machine Control System Safety Assessment) must be carried out to the functional safety standard relevant to your product (eg. ISO 13849 or ISO 19014).

Based upon a risk analysis (PHA) performed at the engine level, software development has been made to allow an engine control function (engine speed control) to achieve a Performance Level of C (PL-c) according to ISO 13849, if required by the PHA or MCSSA for a particular machine installation, AND if configured correctly.

It is the customer's responsibility to ensure that the engine is configured correctly with the service tool, as described below, AND that the throttles selected meet the defined reliability criteria AND that the resulting system is configured and validated correctly. Perkins cannot accept any responsibility for inappropriate configuration of the parameters associated with functional safety.

### 1.2.1 Engine Speed Control

In order to support PL-c for Engine Speed Control there are a number of configuration rules that must be followed to provide adequate Diagnostic Coverage (DC.)

The ECM will mitigate the following hazards if the configuration explained below is adhered to:

- Unintended Acceleration
- Unintended Elevated Idle
- Absence of Commanded Deceleration

#### 1.2.1.1 Functional Safety Monitoring Configuration

To enable the engine software monitoring for the application features discussed below the following configuration must be made with the Service Tool to set Desired Engine Speed Monitor Enable Status Configuration to **Enabled**.

Release 10.0

| Configuration field names                                | Configuration Options | Default Configuration |
|--|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Desired Engine Speed Monitor Enable Status Configuration | Enabled / Disabled    | Disabled              |

Table 1.2

This configuration is protected by the Feature Protection System (FPS) so Factory Passwords must be obtained to change this.

**1.2.1.2 Diagnostics and Fault Reaction**

If the monitoring for Desired Engine Speed is triggered the following diagnostic error will be triggered

- 515-2 Engines Desired Operating Speed: Erratic, Intermittent or Incorrect

When the above code triggers the Limp Home feature is triggered which means the maximum engine speed will be limited to the Limp Home speed. This can be configured in the Service Tool as follows:

| Configuration field names      | Configuration Options | Default Configuration |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Limp Home Desired Engine Speed | Low Idle to 1800rpm   | 1200rpm               |

Table 1.3

**1.2.1.3 Throttles**

Any throttle that is chosen must have a minimum Mean Time To Dangerous Failure (MTTFd) in excess of 150 years. Note that this is assuming no more than 2 throttles are used on the application e.g. 2 PWMs, 1 PWM and 1 TSC1.

The following methods are the only speed control options that support PLC:

- TSC1 Speed Control
- PWM (Pulse Width Modulation) throttle
  - If two PWM throttles are required then Speed Arbitration must be set to ‘Largest Wins’

If TSC1 is to be used for Speed control then the new SPNs for Message Counter and Message Checksum must be used to provide better diagnostic coverage. Refer to the later section in the manual on TSC1 Operation for full details. A J1939 message overview is provided in Table 1.4.

| NAME                               | PGN              | Default Priority | Tx/Rx/On Req | SPN  | Start Byte | Length  | Units  | Resolution                        | Min Value | Max Value |
|------------------------------------|------------------|------------------|--------------|------|------------|---------|--------|-----------------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| <b>TORQUE CONTROL 1</b>            | <b>SPEED 0 0</b> | <b>3</b>         | <b>Rx</b>    |      |            |         |        |                                   |           |           |
| Override Control Mode              |                  |                  |              | 695  | 1.1        | 3 bits  | States | 4 states/2 bit                    | 0         | 3         |
| Requested Speed Control Conditions |                  |                  |              | 696  | 1.3        | 2 bits  | States | 4 states/2 bit                    | 0         | 3         |
| Override Control Mode Priority     |                  |                  |              | 897  | 1.5        | 2 bits  | States | 4 states/2 bit                    | 0         | 3         |
| Requested Speed / Speed Limit      |                  |                  |              | 898  | 2-3        | 16 bits | rpm    | 0.125 rpm per bit, Offset = 0 rpm | 0         | 8,031.875 |
| Requested Torque / Torque Limit    |                  |                  |              | 518  | 4          | 8 bits  | %      | 1 %/bit, Offset = -125 %          | -125      | 125       |
| TSC1 Transmission Rate             |                  |                  |              | 3349 | 5.1        | 3 bits  | States | 8 states/3 bit, Offset = 0        | 0         | 7         |
| TSC1 Control Purpose               |                  |                  |              | 3350 | 5.4        | 5 bits  | States | 32 states/5 bit, Offset = 0       | 0         | 31        |
| Message Counter                    |                  |                  |              | 4206 | 8.1        | 4 bits  | Count  | 1 count/bit, Offset = 0 count     | 0         | 15        |
| Message Checksum                   |                  |                  |              | 4207 | 8.5        | 4 bits  | Count  | 1 count/bit, Offset = 0 count     | 0         | 15        |

Table 1.4

**1.2.1.4 Ok to Elevate Idle**

Permission to Elevate the Idle Speed to support Elevate Idle functionality must be done by J1939 using the following message:

The engine speed control function cannot support PL-c if hardwired switches are used to provide OK to Elevate Idle speed functionality

| NAME                                 | PGN         | Default Priority | Tx/Rx/On Req | SPN  | Start Byte | Length | Units  | Resolution      | Min Value | Max Value |
|--------------------------------------|-------------|------------------|--------------|------|------------|--------|--------|-----------------|-----------|-----------|
| <b>CAB MESSAGE 2 (CM2)</b>           | <b>8500</b> | <b>34048</b>     | <b>6</b>     |      |            |        |        |                 |           |           |
| Elevated Engine Speed Allowed Switch |             |                  |              | 7579 | 4.5        | 2 bits | states | 4 states/2 bits | 0         | 3         |

Table 1.5

This is a functional safety critical message.

**States description:**

- 00 Not Allowed
- 01 Allowed
- 10 Error
- 11 Not Available

This J1939 message must be sent to the ECM continuously every **1 second** to ensure the Machine controller stays in communication with the Engine controller. If the message is lost for 9 cycles (9 seconds) a diagnostic message will be triggered (639-9.) In this state the ECM will revert to ‘working’ state which does **not** allow the idle speed to be elevated. If this message is lost whilst speed is elevated the speed will drop back to the configured Low Idle speed.

To improve the level of Diagnostic Coverage for this feature it must now be configured with the Service Tool in the configuration menu:

| Configuration field names                         | Configuration Options | Default Configuration |
|---|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Elevated Engine Speed Allowed Input Configuration | J1939<br>Hardwired    | J1939                 |

Table 1.6

The ECM supports the following J1939 message to announce the speed that idle speed could be elevated to if Ok To Elevate Idle is allowed. Depending on the Machine definition of ‘safe state’ the following message should be monitored to decide whether or not it is safe to elevate the idle i.e. when SPN7579 should be set to ‘01’ and sent to the ECM.

| NAME   | PGN         | Default Priority | Tx/Rx/On Req | SPN  | Start Byte | Length | Units | Resolution                       | Min Value | Max Value |
|--|-------------|------------------|--------------|------|------------|--------|-------|----------------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| <b>CONTINUOUS TORQUE &amp; SPEED LIMIT REQUEST (CTL)</b> | <b>CF00</b> | <b>52992</b>     | <b>6</b>     |      |            |        |       |                                  |           |           |
| Engine Speed Limit Request - Minimum Continuous          |             |                  |              | 1784 | 1          | 8 bits | rpm   | 32 rpm per bit<br>Offset = 0 rpm | 0         | 8000      |

Table 1.7

**1.2.1.5 Mode Selection Feature**

If the Mode Selection feature is to be used then it must be controlled with J1939 and not the Hardwired switch method. The J1939 message for switching between modes is as follows:

| NAME   | PGN  | Default Priority | Tx/Rx/On Req | SPN  | Start Byte | Length | Units  | Resolution      | Min Value | Max Value |
|--|------|------------------|--------------|------|------------|--------|--------|-----------------|-----------|-----------|
| OFF HIGHWAY ENGINE CONTROL SELECTION (OHECS) | FDCB | 64971            | 6            |      |            |        |        |                 |           |           |
| Engine Operating Mode Command                |      |                  |              | 8608 | 5.5        | 4 bits | States | 16 states/4 bit | 0         | 4         |

Table 1.8

The use of Min/Max governing is also not permitted if PL-c for Engine Speed control is required.

**1.2.1.6 Alternative Low Idle**

The Alternative Low Idle feature cannot be used if PL-c is required for Engine Speed control.

If this feature is required for the installation it must be controlled by the Machine controller. Alternative Low Idle speed can be easily managed with TSC1 if this is the Speed Control Method used.

## 2.0 Engine & Aftertreatment Component Overview

### 2.1 Main Engine Sensor and Actuator Detail

#### 2.1.1 Electronic Control Module (ECM)

The A6E10 ECM is an electronic control device that governs engine speed, torque output and manages the engines performance and emissions via a number of sensors and actuators. The engine ECM should be mounted off the engine following the guidelines in this document. The device has two connection sockets J2 and J1. Engine and application wiring is distributed across both connectors. The ECM is air cooled and surface cooled and is limited to a maximum ambient temperature and surface mounting temperature. Details of these limits are shown in the Mechanical A&I Guide.

#### 2.1.2 Fuel System

The engine fuel system comprises of an electronic lift and / or prime pump, high pressure fuel pump, electronically controlled unit injectors and a high pressure fuel rail to feed the injectors. The electrical lift pump is used to provide a constant flow of fuel to the engine fuel pump. This pump also provides the user with an electrical priming feature. The fuel pump provides high pressure fuel to the fuel rail. The engine ECM via the fuel pump solenoid controls this fuel pump delivery and the resulting rail pressure. The engine ECM controls the fuel pump solenoid control based upon the inputs received from the fuel temperature sensor (which enables the control to be tailored to the specific fuel characteristics) and the fuel rail pressure sensor (which measures the actual pressure within the fuel rail).

**Note: for more information regarding the electrical fuel lift pump and priming feature please see the Mechanical A&I Guide and section 6.6 of this document for electrical installation requirements.**

High pressure fuel is delivered to each of the electronically controlled unit injectors which when activated by the engine ECM deliver a controlled measure of fuel for combustion. Voltages applied by the ECM to activate the injectors are high, around 80V, and the OEM must ensure that any systems sensitive to electromagnetic radiation are not close proximity to the harness components that lead to the injectors.

It should be noted that in many cases a fault on any of these sensors, solenoids or switches will cause the engine to derate, or enter a limp home state due to their emissions critical nature.

#### 2.1.3 Engine Speed

The engine is fitted with two Hall Effect speed sensors. The first (primary sensor) is mounted on the engine to measure the crank speed and position and the other (secondary sensor) is used to measure the cam shaft speed, position and engine cycle. The engine uses the primary speed signal during normal engine operation as this signal is more accurate at higher speeds. If the primary speed signal is lost during engine running then the engine will enter a derate condition, however if the engine is cranking the engine will start but be limited to a programmed derate. The secondary speed sensor is used to calculate the engine cycle during engine starting and for limp home operation. For this reason, if the secondary sensor signal is lost the engine will not start, but if the engine is running a fault code will be raised and the engine will continue to run normally.

During normal operation, the secondary speed/timing sensor is used to determine the cycle that the engine is on. When the timing has been established, the primary speed/timing sensor is then used to determine the engine speed and the angular position.

The loss of signal to the primary sensor and/or the secondary sensor will result in one of the following faults:

- The engine will continue to run when only one sensor signal is present from either the primary sensor or the secondary sensor.
- Loss of signal from the primary sensor and the secondary sensor during operation of the engine will cause fuel injection to be terminated and the engine will stop.

#### 2.1.4 NOx Reduction System (NRS)

The NOx Reduction System recycles a portion of the exhaust gases back into the inlet air. The recirculation reduces the oxides of nitrogen (NOx) in the exhaust gases. The recycled exhaust gas passes through a cooler before being introduced into the inlet air.

The NOx reduction system is made up of the following components:

- NRS Metering Valve

The metering valve controls the mass air flow through the NOx reduction system cooler by means of a DC motor and a position sensor.

This part of the engine control system is emissions critical and for this reason the engine may apply a derate if any of these components enter a fault condition.

### 2.1.5 Core Engine System

There are a number of core engine operation sensors that are used to determine how the engine control system should respond to various conditions. These components include the coolant temperature sensor and the oil pressure switch.

The barometric sensor is integral to the engine ECM. The sensor is used to determine atmospheric (barometric) pressure. The atmospheric pressure is used to determine the atmospheric related fuel limits (if any) e.g. at high altitude fuel may be limited during cranking to prevent turbo overspeed.

The coolant temperature sensor measurement is used as an input to the cold-start strategy. The sensor reading is also used to determine fuel limits and injection timing at various temperatures to control engine emissions.

The oil pressure switch detects engine oil pressure. The oil pressure switch is used for engine protection, e.g., if insufficient oil pressure is measured during engine operation, oil pressure would be raised. The engine oil pressure switch is operated when a pressure of between 0.6 and 0.9 bar is detected.

### 2.1.6 Air System

The engine air system contains the following electronic components.

- **Air Inlet Temperature Sensor** - The air inlet temperature sensor is a passive sensor used to measure the Air temperature after the air cleaner. This temperature is used to regulate the engine NRS system during a number of scenarios.
- **Intake Throttle Valve** - The air intake throttle valve is used to adjust the air flow at intake manifold inlet to allow the engine to help control temperature in the aftertreatment system and control air flow into the NRS system.
- **Combined Intake Manifold pressure / temperature sensor (temperature for 4TA only)** - The intake manifold pressure sensor measures the air pressure inside the intake manifold. The intake manifold temperature sensor measures the temperature of the mixed air inside the inlet manifold. The temperature / pressure sensor is used in a number of engine management control strategies contained within the engine ECM.
- **Intake Manifold temperature sensor (4T or 3T only)** - The intake manifold temperature sensor measures the temperature of the mixed air inside the inlet manifold. The temperature sensor is used in a number of engine management control strategies contained within the engine ECM.

## 2.2 Aftertreatment System Components, Sensors & Actuator Overview

### 2.2.1 Diesel Oxidation Catalyst (DOC)

The Diesel Oxidation Catalyst is also known as the (DOC). The DOC is a device in the exhaust system that oxidizes certain elements in the exhaust gases. These elements can include carbon monoxide (CO), hydrocarbons and the soluble organic fractions (SOF) of particulate matter.

### 2.2.2 Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)

The Tier 4 Final/Stage V product range use both in cylinder PM (Particulate Matter) reduction methods and additional PM capture (DPF) exhaust system components to meet the Tier 4 Final/Stage V PM reduction targets.

### **2.2.3 DOC Inlet and DPF Inlet Temperature Sensors**

The exhaust system will have a dual probe temperature sensor. All temperature sensors are required for accurate control /monitoring of the engine aftertreatment system.

### **2.2.4 DPF Delta Pressure Sensor**

The DPF has a differential pressure sensor that monitors the pressure at the DPF in and DPF out to measure the soot level in the DPF. The DPF delta Pressure sensor is required for accurate control /monitoring of the engine aftertreatment system.

## 2.3 System Component Diagrams and Electrical Schematic

### 2.3.1 404 On Engine Harness layout

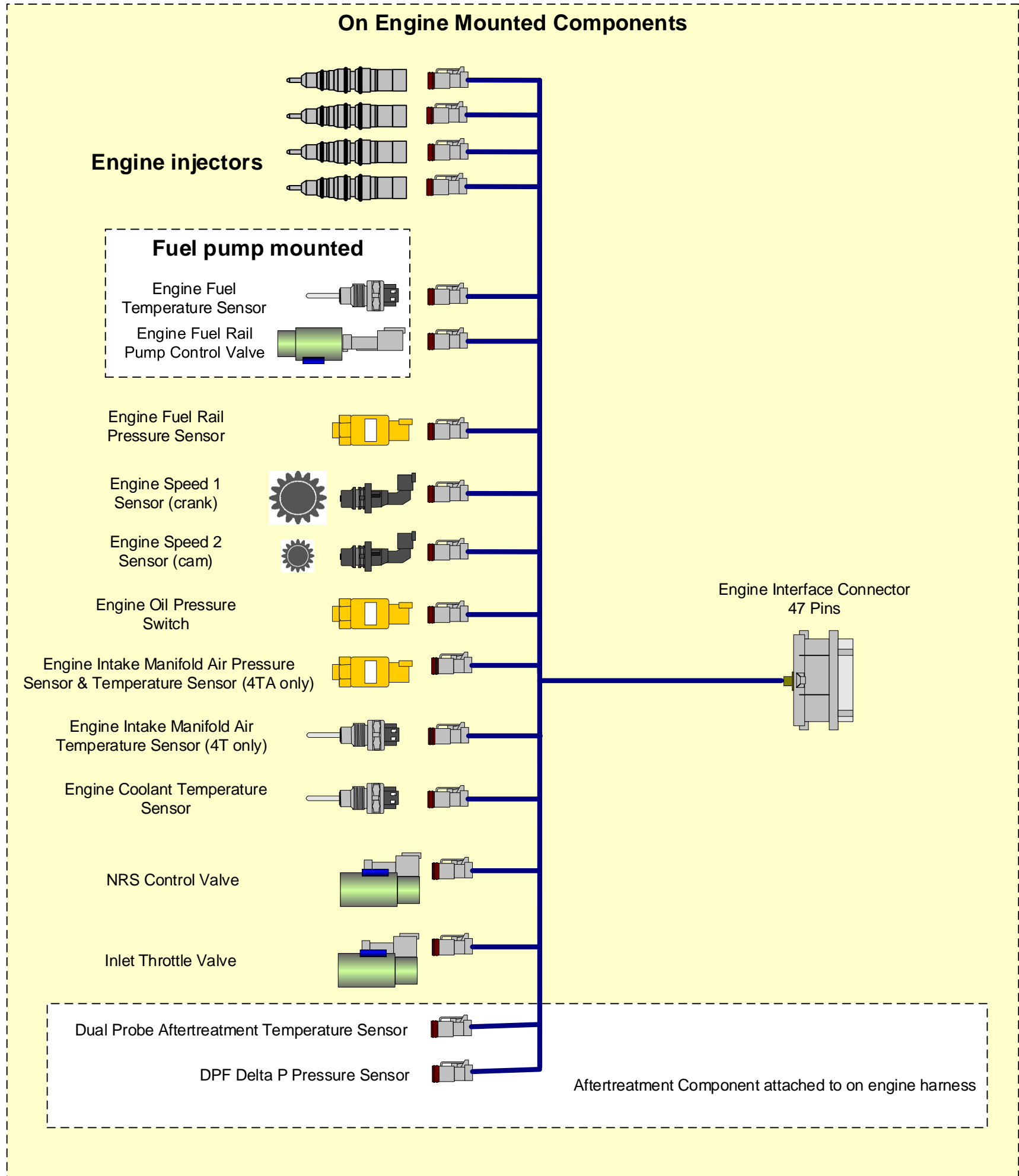


Figure 2-1

2.3.2 403 On Engine Harness layout

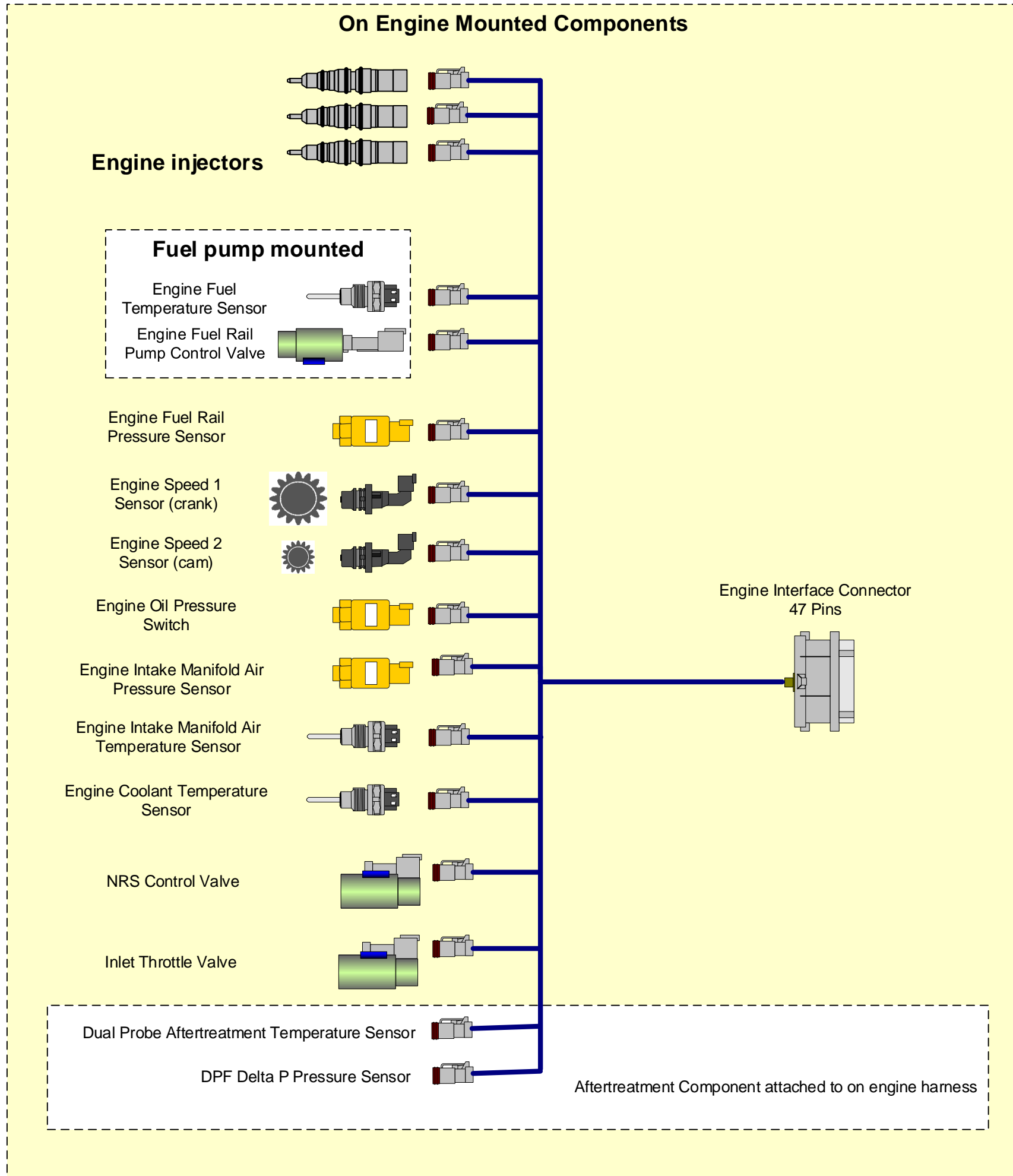


Figure 2-2

### 2.3.3 400 Series < 55kW DOC, DPF aftertreatment component and sensor Layout

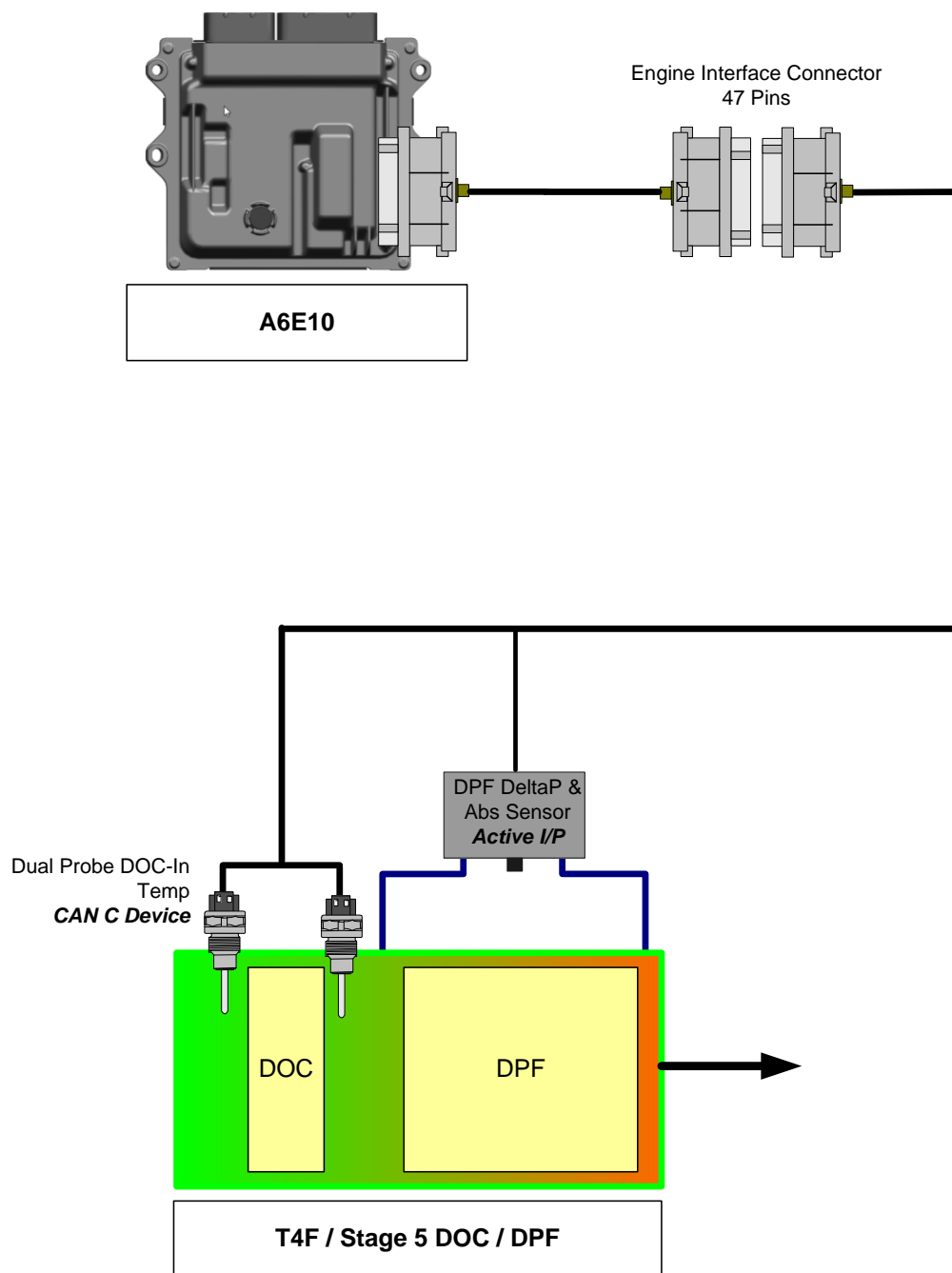


Figure 2-3

### 2.3.4 400 Series Electrical Schematic without link harness

Please refer to the 400 Series electrical schematics.

### 2.3.5 Engine and Aftertreatment I/O tables

Please refer to the 400 Series electrical schematics.

### 3.0 Customer System Overview Key Elements

The following section provides details on both the mandatory and optional system connections that need to be made as part of the customer's machine wiring harness.

#### 3.1 Aftertreatment Configurations

For an engine developing between 56kW and 560kW to be certified as Tier 4 Final compliant, it must demonstrate a particulate matter output of less than 0.025g/kWh and a NOx output of less than 0.4g/kWh.

For an engine developing between 56kW and 560kW to be certified as EU Stage V the NOx output must be less than 0.4g/kWh, Particulate Mass must be less than 0.015g/kWh and the total particulate number must be less than  $1 \times 10^{12}$ .

For an engine developing between 37kW and 56kW to be certified as EU Stage V the Particulate Mass must be less than 0.015g/kWh and the total particulate number must be less than  $1 \times 10^{12}$ .

To achieve this the engine exhaust must be treated before entering the atmosphere. The connection of the various sensing devices and actuators, which control and monitor the operation of the aftertreatment system now become a critical part of the total system installation.

The 400 Series stage V engine ranges use one aftertreatment systems that comprise the following key elements: DOC & DPF. For more information on the mechanical installation of the aftertreatment system please refer to the relevant Mechanical A&I Manual and the Starting & Charging Manual.

#### 3.2 Stage V Mandatory Install Components

| Mandatory or Required Components                         | Title                                 | 400 Series <55kW<br>DOC, DPF |
|--|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Circuit Protection                                       | Voltage Suppression Requirement       | ✓                            |
| Key Switch   | ECM Key-Off                           | ✓                            |
| Key Switch   | Engine ECM Power Supply               | ✓                            |
| ECM Case Grounding Strap                                 | System Ground                         | Optional*                    |
| Engine Warning Indicator                                 | Engine Warning Indicator              | ✓                            |
| Engine Shutdown Indicator                                | Engine Shutdown Indicator             | ✓                            |
| Engine Wait to Start Indicator                           | Engine Wait to Start Indicator        | ✓                            |
| Engine Wait to Disconnect Indicator                      | Engine Wait to Disconnect Indicator   | Optional                     |
| Emissions System Malfunction Indicator<br>(AKA MIL Lamp) | Emission System Malfunction Indicator | ✓                            |
| DPF Lamp   | DPF Lamp Indicator                    | ✓                            |
| 48 Way ECM J1  | Engine ECM J1 Connector               | ✓                            |
| 80 Way ECM J2  | Engine ECM J2 Connector               | ✓                            |

| <b>Mandatory or Required Components</b> | <b>Title</b>                                    | <b>400 Series &lt;55kW<br/>DOC, DPF</b> |
|---|---|---|
| 47 Way Engine Harness Connector (EIC)   | Engine Interface Connector 1 (EIC)              | ✓                                       |
| Glow Plug Relay                         | Control of Glow Plugs by the Engine ECM         | ✓                                       |
| Diagnostic Connector                    | Engine Diagnostic Connector                     | ✓                                       |
| Air Inlet Temperature Sensor            | Air Inlet Temperature Sensor                    | ✓                                       |
| Water In Fuel Switch                    | Water In Fuel Switch (WIF)                      | Optional                                |
| Aftertreatment Temperature Sensors      | Exhaust Gas Temperature Sensors                 | ✓                                       |
| Delta P Pressure Sensor                 | Delta P Pressure Sensor                         | ✓                                       |
| Machine Idle Safe State                 | Thermal Management Aid and Service Tool Support | ✓                                       |
| Elevated Idle Strategy                  | Thermal Management Aid                          | ✓                                       |
| Idle Hold Strategy                      | Thermal Management Aid                          | ✓                                       |

\*Mandatory if ECM ISO mounts used.

Table 3.1

### 3.3 Example of Optional Customer Installed Components

| <b>Optional Components</b>  | <b>Title</b>                    | <b>400 Series &lt;55kW<br/>DOC, DPF</b> |
|---|---------------------------------|---|
| Low Oil Pressure Lamp   | Oil Pressure Indicator          | ✓                                       |
| Engine Running Output Lamp  | Engine Running Output Indicator | ✓                                       |
| Service Maintenance Lamp  | Service Maintenance Indicator   | ✓                                       |
| Regen Inhibit Switch  | DPF Regen Inhibit Switch        | ✓                                       |
| Regen Inhibit Lamp  | DPF Regen Inhibit Lamp          | ✓                                       |
| Regen Active Lamp   | DPF Regen Active Lamp           | ✓                                       |
| User Defined Shutdown Switch  | User Defined Shutdown Switch    | ✓                                       |
| Air Filter Restriction (Inlet Depression) Switch / Sensor               | Air Filter Restriction Switch   | ✓                                       |
| Analogue Throttle Position Sensor with Idle Validation Switch (1) & (2) | Analogue Throttle Sensor        | ✓                                       |

| Optional Components              | Title                                 | 400 Series <55kW<br>DOC, DPF |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| PWM Throttle (1) & (2)           | PWM Throttle Sensor                   | ✓                            |
| Throttle Arbitration Switch      | Arbitration of Throttle Speed Demand  | ✓                            |
| Multi-Position Switch            | Multi Position Throttle Switch (MPTS) | ✓                            |
| PTO Mode                         | PTO Mode                              | ✓                            |
| Torque Speed Control (TSC1)      | Torque Speed Control                  | ✓                            |
| Engine Operating Mode            | Engine Operating Mode                 | ✓                            |
| Limp Home Speed                  | Limp Home Speed                       | ✓                            |
| Coolant Level Switch             | Coolant Level Switch                  | ✓                            |
| Alternative Low Idle Speed       | Alternative Low Idle Speed            | ✓                            |
| Configurable Governor Gains      | Configurable Governor Gains           | ✓                            |
| Programmable Governor Gains      | Programmable Governor Gains           | ✓                            |
| Engine Immobiliser               | Engine Immobiliser                    | ✓                            |
| Feed Forward Engine Torque       | Feed Forward Engine Torque            | ✓                            |
| Battery Voltage Monitoring       | Battery Voltage Monitoring            | ✓                            |
| On-OFF Fan Control               | ON-OFF Fan Control                    | ✓                            |
| Charge Air Temperature Sensor    | Charge Air Temperature Sensor         | ✓                            |
| Engine No Load Fuel Map Offset   | Engine No Load Fuel Map Offset        | ✓                            |
| Engine Overall Acceleration Rate | Engine Overall Acceleration Rate      | ✓                            |
| Low Idle Shutdown Switch         | Engine Idle Shutdown                  | ✓                            |
| Starter Control Mode             | Starter Motor Control                 | ✓                            |
| Engine Speed Output              | Engine Speed Out                      | ✓                            |

Table 3.2

## 4.0 Power & Grounding Considerations

### 4.1 System Grounding

Although the engine electronics are all directly grounded via the ECM connector, it is also necessary to ensure that the engine block, ECM power ground terminals and ECM case is properly grounded, to provide a good return path for components such as the starter motor, alternator and cold start aids.

Improper grounding results in unreliable electrical circuit paths. Stray electrical currents can damage mechanical components and make electronic systems prone to interference. These problems are often very difficult to diagnose and repair.

#### 4.1.1 Ground Stud on Starter Motor

If the Starter motor has a grounding stud then this should be used. The ground connection should be made directly back to the battery negative terminal.

The starter motor ground path must not include any flanges or joints. Painted surfaces and flexible mounts in particular must be avoided. Star washers must not be relied upon to make contact though paint.

The ground cable should be of sufficient cross sectional area to ensure that the total starter motor supply circuit resistance does not exceed 1.7mOhms for a 12V system.

Please refer to the Starting and Charging Systems Manual for further information on starter motor, alternator, battery and complete system installation guidelines.

#### 4.1.2 Engine Block Ground Connection

An engine cylinder block ground point is required on all machines in addition to the engine starter motor ground, which also requires a separate ground connection. The choice of connection point will be dependent on option but the holes detailed below should be considered. It is important to avoid system ground potential differences. The maximum potential difference between ECM switch to ground references and the cylinder block is 1V.

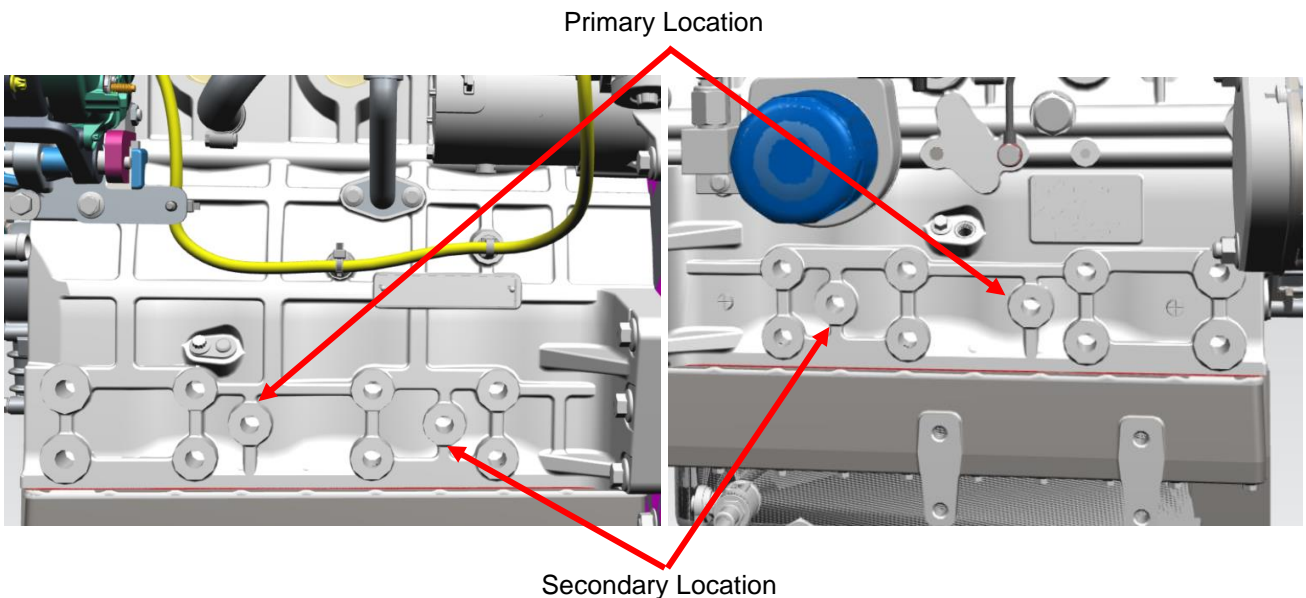


Figure 4-1 4 Cylinder Engine Block Ground Location

The 4 cylinder engine block ground thread is M14x1.5 x 23mm.

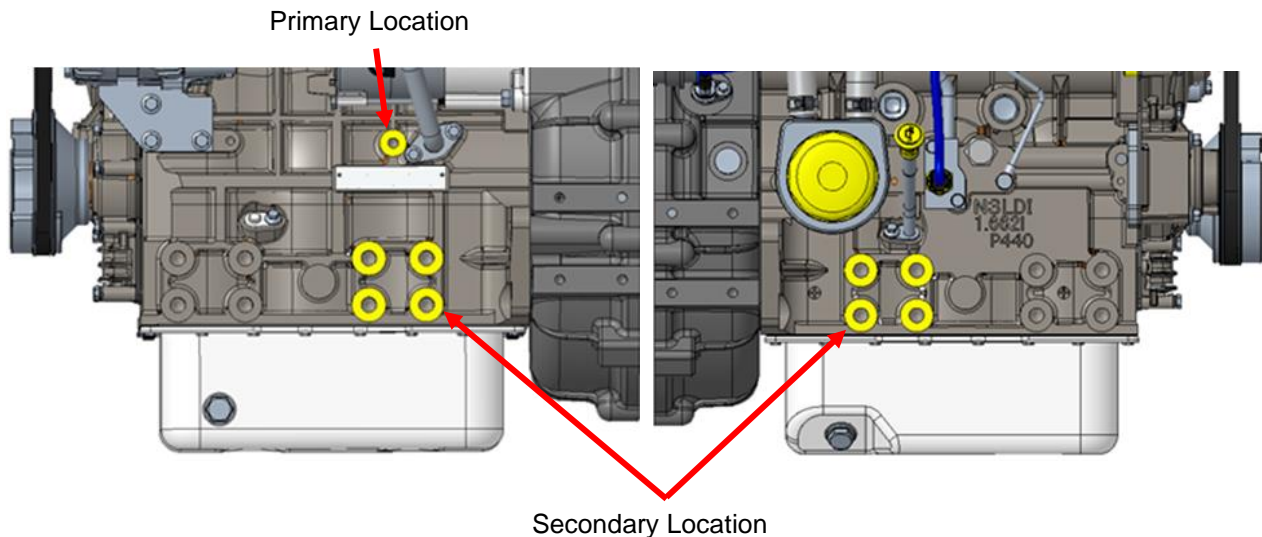


Figure 4-2 3 Cylinder Engine Block Ground Location

The 3 cylinder engine block primary ground thread is M10x1.5 x 15mm and secondary ground thread is M14x1.5 x 23mm.

### 4.1.3 ECM Body Grounding

To ensure EMC compliance the ECM Body must be grounded through the mounting feet. If the ECM is ISO mounted, a grounding strap attached to the mounting feet should be used. The strap length should be kept to a maximum length of 600mm to the chassis.

If the Factory Supplied Link Harness option is to be used then there are additional grounding considerations to ensure EMC compliance. If the following pin functions are not used for the intended feature then they must be wired to ground through a 360Ω resistor:

- Glow Plug Relay (HS)
- Starter Control Relay (LS)

Please refer to the 400 Series electrical schematics for full details.

## 4.2 Engine Electrical System Power and Grounding

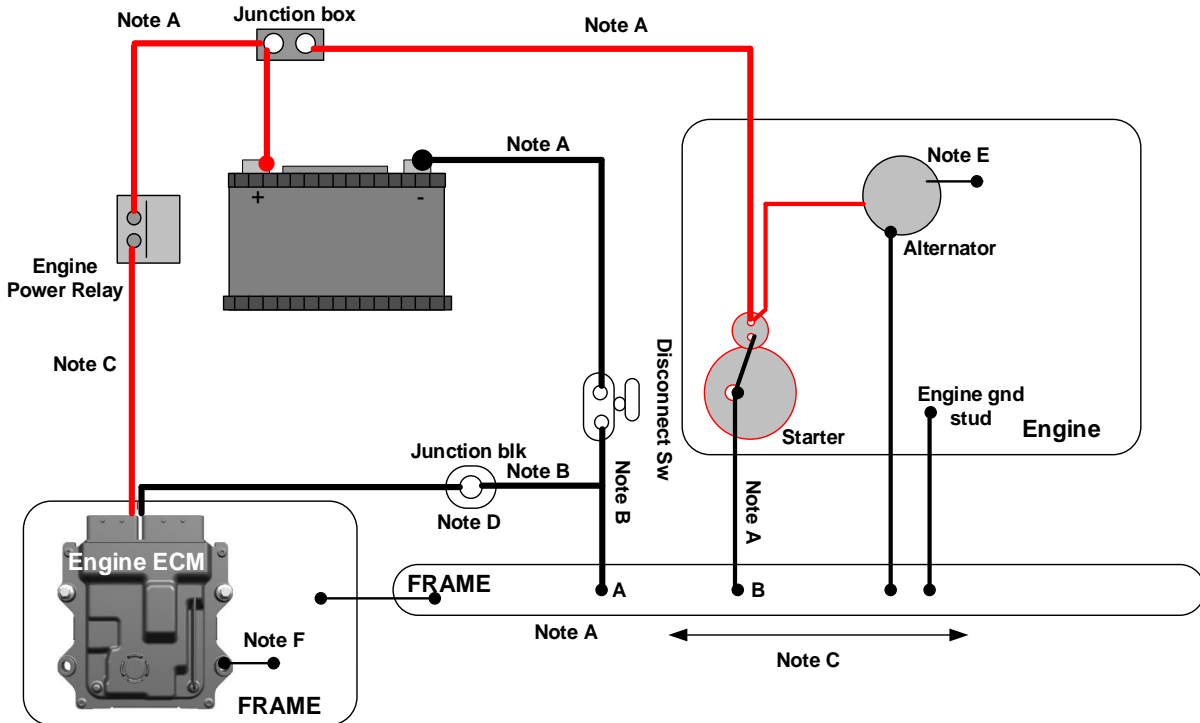
The power and grounding of the electrical system must follow best practise as shown below to avoid an unreliable electrical system.

Voltage drop seen during situations where battery demand is high or when battery charge is low may risk components falling below minimum operating voltage thresholds. As an example engine cranking exerts a high battery demand, potentially reducing the overall system voltage. The effects can be worse in cold conditions where starter motor load may increase and battery performance decreases.

To reduce the effects of voltage drop, circuit design must minimize circuit resistance; Figure 4-3 below provides good practice wiring.

- Components in the circuit must be properly assessed for their resistive properties.
- Consider the number of connections in the circuit; minimizing this number will improve overall system performance.
- Over-sizing conductors or reducing their length should be considered as a method of reducing total circuit resistance.
- Junction blocks, situated close to the battery serve as a reliable supply and ground return point for components susceptible to voltage drop, this practice avoids sharing terminals with components that add to effects of voltage drop, such as starter motor circuits during cranking.
- Ground paths must be assessed and conductive paths need to be known, if there is any doubt or design requirements can't be met, a direct copper connection must be used.

- It is recommended that the battery disconnect switch have only one connection either side of the switch, preventing the switch being bypassed if incorrectly wired.
- Circuit design must consider specific component design requirements; components may have a maximum circuit resistance or minimum operating voltage.
- After system design, circuit resistance should be tested to ensure the results fall within the specification provided.



- Note A: Keep to a minimum distance.
- Note B: Specify maximum dimensions.
- Note C: Observe maximum resistance.
- Note D: Specify maximum number of terminals and maximum load.
- Note E: Case ground or strap ground – check alternator spec.
- Note F: ECM ground strap through any of the ECM fixing points that where the frame is not painted.

This diagram is for discussion regarding 12V electrical systems. Items such as circuit protection have been removed for clarity.

Figure 4-3 Engine Power and Grounding requirements

### 4.3 System Voltage & Current Requirements

Each 400 Series Tier 4 Final / Stage V engine comes supplied with the following loose components. Each component has its own specific electrical requirements which need to be met for correct system operation. These electrical characteristics are shown in the following sections.

- Engine ECM controller
- Electric Lift / Prime Pump
- Air Inlet Temperature Sensor

#### 4.3.1 Engine ECM Controller

The engine ECM power supply requirements must be carefully considered when designing the engine power supply circuit. There are specific limitations that must be considered in the design to ensure a reliable consistent power supply to the engine electronic components. Table 4.1 provides the electrical characteristics and limitations for the A6E10 engine ECM.

| DESCRIPTION                                | 12V   |
|--|-------|
| Max Peak Current*                          | 39A   |
| Peak Current Cranking                      | 22A   |
| Max RMS Current                            | 37A   |
| Suggested fuse rating**                    | 40A   |
| Sleep Current                              | 0.5mA |
| Min Running Voltage                        | 10V   |
| Max Running Voltage                        | 16V   |
| Minimum Battery Voltage during Cranking*** | 6V    |

Table 4.1

\* All Current measurements have been taken for engine alternator sizing and are estimations only. RMS current will vary with engine speed (assuming constant voltage) no Lamp Drivers or application side components were fitted during measurement and will therefore need to be considered.

\*\* Suggested fuse rating are based on automotive blade type fuses and are for guidance only.

\*\*\* Please refer to the Starting and Charging System A&I Manual for more information regarding the engine starting system installation requirements.

### 4.3.2 Glow Plug System

| DESCRIPTION          | 12V<br>403 | 12V<br>404 |
|----------------------|------------|------------|
| Current - Initial    | 52.5A      | 70A        |
| Current after 5 sec  | 36A        | 48A        |
| Current after 10 sec | 27A        | 36A        |

Table 4.2

### 4.3.3 Electric Lift / Prime Pump

| DESCRIPTION               | 12V   |
|---------------------------|-------|
| Nominal Current Supply    | 5.5A  |
| Nominal Operating Voltage | 13.5V |

Table 4.3

### 4.3.4 System Effect on Alternator Specification

The overall system electrical current requirement for the engine and machine must be taken into account when sizing the alternator. Table 4.4 provides an indication to the total engine system current requirements.

| <b>400 Series &lt;55kW<br/>DOC, DPF</b> |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| <b>DESCRIPTION</b>                      | <b>12 Volts</b> |
| Engine Electrical Components            | ~24A            |
| Aftertreatment Components               | ~1A             |
| <b>Total Electrical Current</b>         | <b>~25A</b>     |

Table 4.4

## 4.4 Engine ECM Location – Wiring Constraints

The circuit resistance of the Injector supply cables and the engine ECM power supply cable limits the distance of the engine ECM from the engine interface connector. The resistance of both circuits must be considered to ensure correct operation of the Injectors and ECM.

## 4.5 ECM Power Supply Conductors

There are six 2.0mm<sup>2</sup> conductors allocated for the engine ECM power supply circuit, two conductors for the battery positive supply and four conductors for the battery negative supply.

All six ECM pins allocated for the power supply must be wired to the ECM. The positive supply cables must be connected to a relay controlled by the engine ECM and must be circuit protected. To prevent voltage drop, avoid sharing and feeding the engine ECM supply circuit with or via other machine component circuits. The minimum recommended conductor cross-section for each individual power supply conductor is 2.0mm<sup>2</sup>.

The maximum recommended end of life resistance for the total circuit, including positive and negative conductors is 50mOhms. When calculating the resistance of a circuit it is important to consider the resistance of the cable and connection points of the entire circuit.

## 4.6 Injector Power Supply Circuit

To ensure precise and reliable fuel delivery the injector circuit must be designed to minimise circuit resistance. The position of the ECM should be carefully considered to minimise the distance between the Injectors and ECM. The maximum recommended end of life resistance for the Injector circuit, including positive and negative conductors is **100mOhms**. Each Injector supply circuit should use twisted pairs.

## 4.7 Injector Circuit Resistance

To ensure the injector circuit resistance remains below the limits stated above for the life of the engine, Perkins recommend a design target of **80mOhms**.

## 4.8 ECM Power Supply Circuit Resistance

The recommended machine end of life total ECM power supply circuit resistance is **50mOhms**. Perkins advises a target resistance of **40mOhms**. To ensure the correct ECM functionality, the ECM power supply circuit resistance can't be higher than **50mOhms**.

**Notes:**

- Circuit resistance measured at ambient temperature 20°C.
- The minimum acceptable cranking battery voltage is 7.3V. The values provided in Table 4.1 ensure that when the battery voltage is 7.3V the Injector fuel delivery will be stable and that the ECM battery voltage is above 6V avoiding poor engine starting and ECM reset conditions.

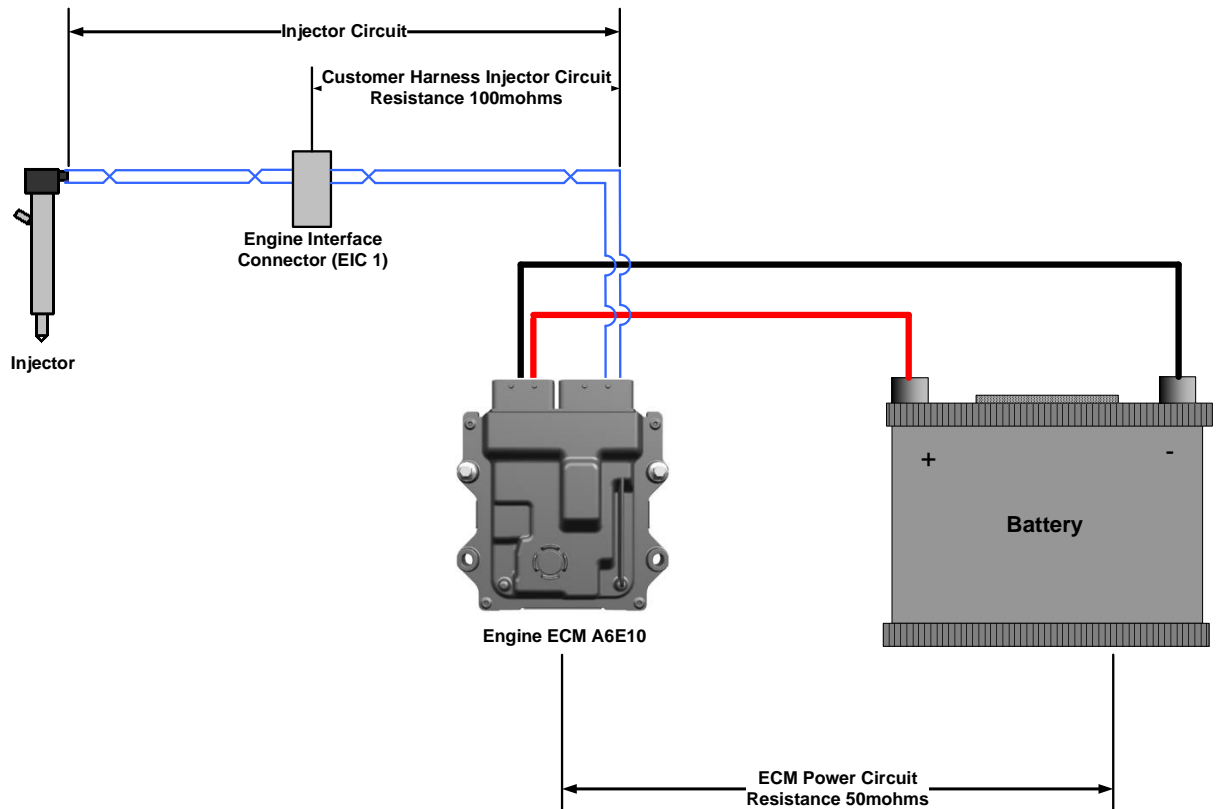


Figure 4-4

## 4.9 Injector Cables

The required cable cross section for Injector harness wiring is 1.0mm<sup>2</sup>. The minimum dielectric strength of the cable insulation for the power supply and fuel system circuits, including Injectors and fuel metering valve is 125V.

The Injectors cables must be twisted pairs with a maximum twist length of 25mm.

The Injectors cables should be separated from other signal circuits to avoid electrical disturbance, as the analogue signals are especially vulnerable to interference and must be clearly separated from the Injector circuit.

Separate analogue and speed signal circuits from Injector circuits. Bundle circuits supplying inductive loads separately to signals. If possible use separate conduit paths.

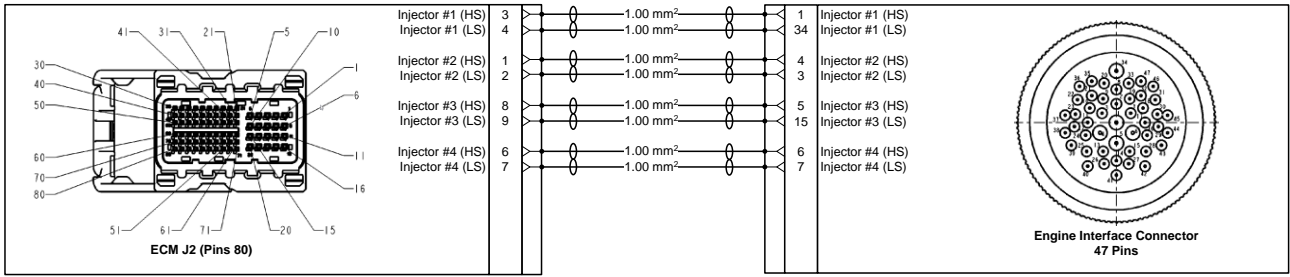


Figure 4-5 4 cylinder injector wiring

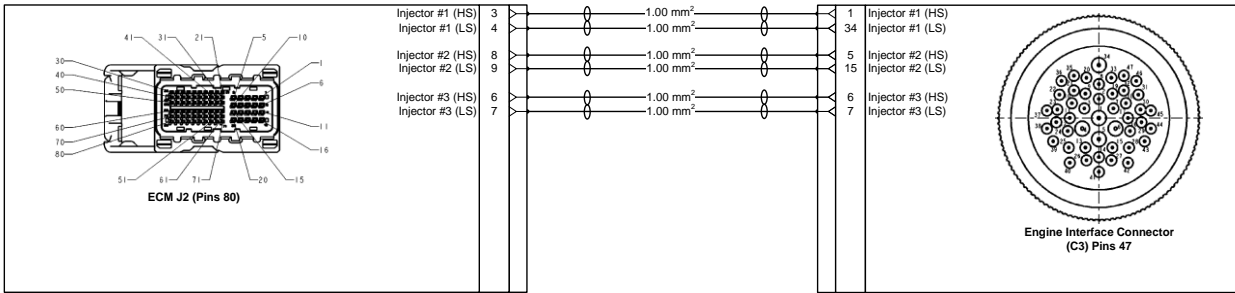


Figure 4-6 3 cylinder injector wiring

### 4.10 Fuel Metering Unit Cable

The Fuel Pump Solenoid control requires a similar waveform to the Injector control and so the same circuit resistance limit applies; maximum end of life circuit resistance is **100mOhms**. Similarly to the injector circuit to account for aging of the wiring Perkins recommend a design limit of **80mOhms**.

Given that the circuit routing for these wires is the same as the injector circuit (between ECM and EIC connectors, if the same cable gauge of 1.0mm<sup>2</sup> (or greater) is used then this circuit will have the same resistance as the Injector circuit as so does not require a specific resistance test during A&I testing.

The required cable cross section for fuel metering unit wiring is 1.00mm<sup>2</sup>, twisted pair. The minimum dielectric strength of the cable insulation for the power supply and fuel system circuits, including Injectors and fuel metering valve is 48V. The fuel metering cables must be twisted pairs with a maximum twist length of 25mm.

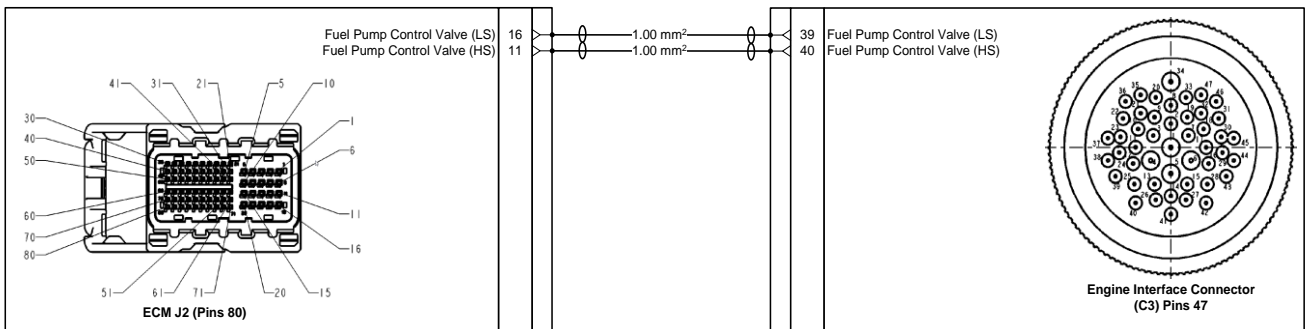


Figure 4-7 Fuel Metering

### 4.11 Engine Solenoid and Actuators

Perkins recommends that Injector cables along with solenoid and actuators cables be separated from signal cables. As a minimum, the power related cables supplying the following components should be bundled

separately to engine and Aftertreatment sensor cables, and where possible signal / sensor cables should use separate conduit channels for the machine harness.

The conductors for the following cables need to be bundled together.

- Injectors
- High Pressure Pump
- NRS
- Auxiliary PWM driver

## 4.12 Voltage Suppression Requirement

The engine ECM must be protected against high voltage spikes, also known as load dump. The factory fitted alternators are fitted with load dump protection as standard to protect the engine ECM. Load dump protection protects against high transient voltages sometimes seen when switching inductive components in the system circuit. The factory fitted alternators protect for voltages higher than 25V-30V depending on the alternator selected.

If an alternator is not used or a non-standard alternator is selected the engine electrical system must be designed to provide load dump protection for the engine ECM. The maximum permissible transient voltage measured at the ECM is 40Vdc. It is recommended that the electrical system be designed to protect against voltages higher than 35Vdc measured at the engine ECM.

## 4.13 ECM Key-Off

When the supply to the ECM key switch input (J1-9) is removed the ECM power relay will remain powered ON for up to 70 seconds. This is necessary to ensure all historical data is written to memory. Under no circumstances should the battery supply to engine ECM be removed or cut during normal engine operation or during the ECM powerdown sequence. If the battery supply needs to be removed for maintenance using the battery disconnect switch the user should allow the engine main power relay to power down after key-off before disconnecting.

## 4.14 ECM Body to Chassis Maximum Potential Difference

The measured potential difference between the ECM body and ECM battery ground should be kept to a minimum. Ideally there should be no difference and the maximum permissible difference is 1V.

## 4.15 ECM Output Driver Connection Warning

The OEM must ensure that none of the ECM Output drivers are ever directly connected to a power source e.g. battery positive feed when the ECM ignition is keyed-off. If this situation occurs there is a risk that the ECM will pull current back through the Output driver and damage the ECM circuit board, resulting in the output driver no longer functioning.

As shown in the Electrical Wiring schematic documents, any ECM pins requiring current supply should be wired up from the Main Power Relay or Keyswitch. In both instances this ensures that the ECM ignition is on before any of these circuits become live.

## 5.0 Engine Connectors & Wiring Harness Requirements

This section provides details on each of the engine ECM connectors and engine bay connectors that must be used to connect the mandatory engine and aftertreatment electrical components.

### 5.1 Engine ECM Connectors

The Tier 4 Final / Stage V engine ECM (A6E10) has two connection points. The J1 connector has 48 pins and the J2 connector has 80 pins. The ECM J1 and J2 connections are used by the customer / OEM as the main interface back to the engine control module for both the engine aftertreatment system and machine control systems.

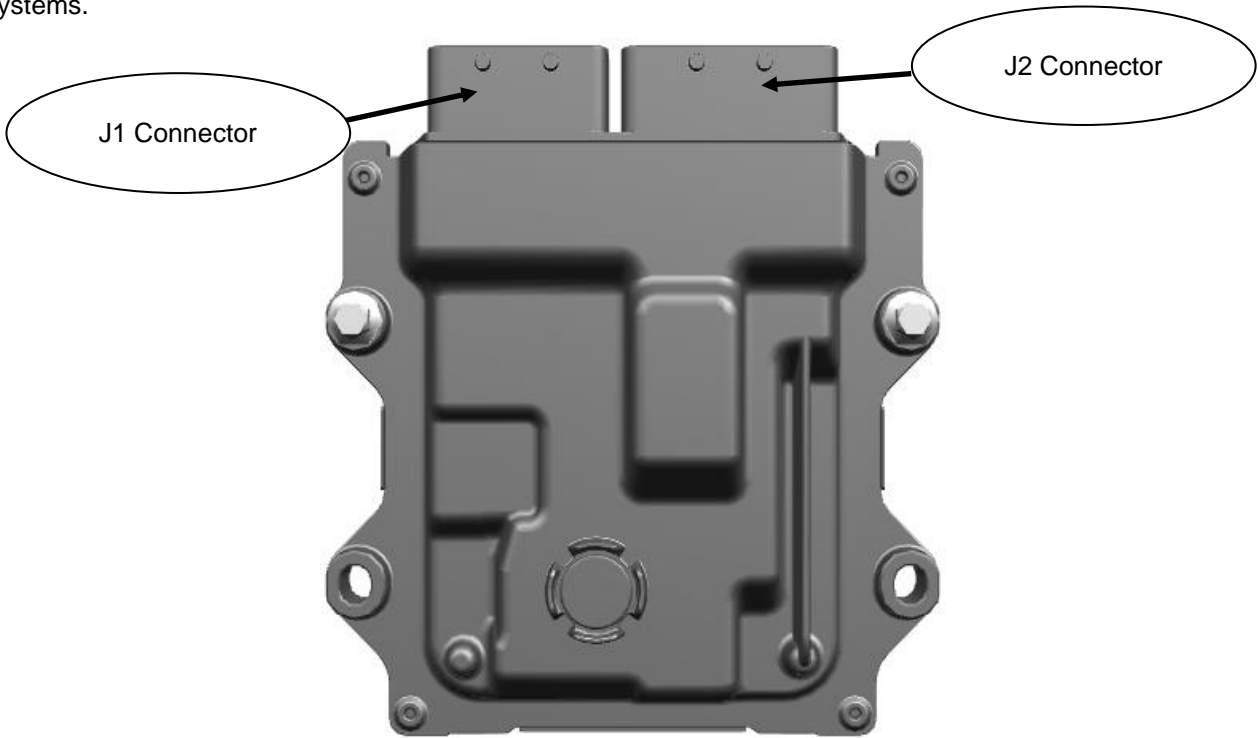


Figure 5-1

### 5.2 Engine ECM J1 Connector

#### 5.2.1 Engine ECM J1 Connector Layout

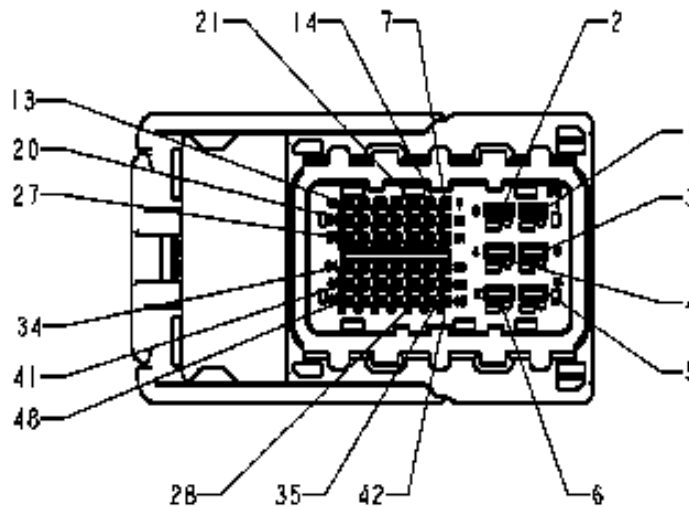


Figure 5-2

### 5.2.2 Engine ECM J1 Connector I/O

Please refer to the 400 Series electrical schematics.

### 5.2.3 Engine ECM J1 Connector Information

This connector is included in the Factory Supplied Link Harness, for more details please see Section 5.7.3.

| Engine ECU J1 Connector |                                  |                 |                  |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| QTY                     | Component Description            | Supplier Part # | Connector Family |
| 1                       | 48 Pin ECU J1 Connector (Left)   | 560151-4832     | Molex            |
|                         | 48 Pin ECU J1 Connector (Right)  | 560151-4822     | Molex            |
| 1                       | Cover Long (Left)                | 560189-0111     | Molex            |
|                         | Cover Short (Right)              | 560189-0101     | Molex            |
| 6                       | Socket - 2.8mm <sup>2</sup>      | 560122-0102     | Molex            |
| 42                      | Socket - 0.5mm <sup>2</sup>      | 560121-0102     | Molex            |
| N/A                     | Cavity Plug - 0.5mm <sup>2</sup> | 560144-0100     | Molex            |

Table 5.1

## 5.3 Engine ECM J2 Connector

### 5.3.1 Engine ECM J2 Connector Layout

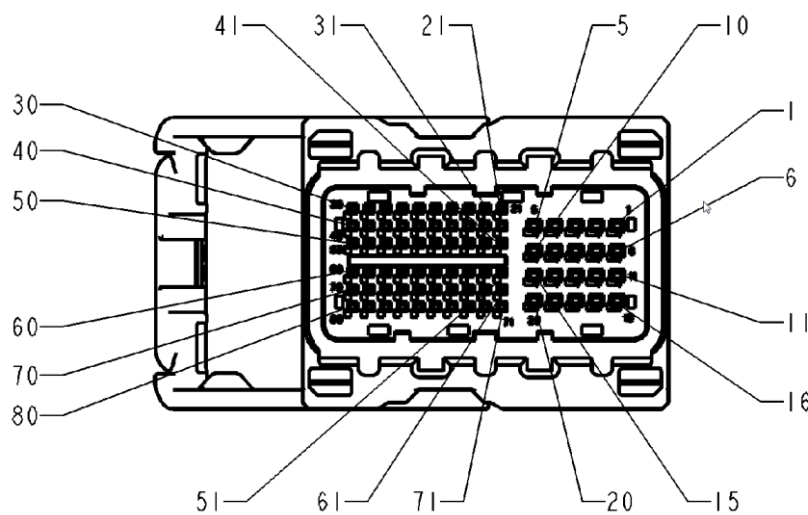


Figure 5-3

### 5.3.2 Engine ECM J2 Connector I/O

Please refer to the 400 Series electrical schematics.

### 5.3.3 Engine ECM J2 Connector Information

This connector is included in the Factory Supplied Link Harness, for more details please see Section 5.7.3.

| Engine ECU J2 Connector |                                   |                 |                  |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| QTY                     | Component Description             | Supplier Part # | Connector Family |
| 1                       | 80 Pin ECU Connector (Left)       | 560154-8032     | Molex            |
|                         | 80 Pin ECU Connector (Right)      | 560154-8022     | Molex            |
| 1                       | Cover Short (Left)                | 560190-0101     | Molex            |
|                         | Cover Long (Right)                | 560190-0111     | Molex            |
| 20                      | Socket - 1.0mm <sup>2</sup>       | 560205-0101     | Molex            |
| 60                      | Socket - 0.5mm <sup>2</sup>       | 560121-0102     | Molex            |
| N/A                     | Cavity Plug - 1.0 mm <sup>2</sup> | 503131-0151     | Molex            |
| N/A                     | Cavity Plug - 0.5 mm <sup>2</sup> | 560144-0100     | Molex            |

Table 5.2

### 5.4 Engine ECM Harness Strain Relief

Harness strain relief components must be positioned within 200mm of each ECM connector. The strain relief component must be mounted to the same surface as the ECM. The purpose of each strain relief is to prevent excessive movement between the connector, harness and engine ECM.

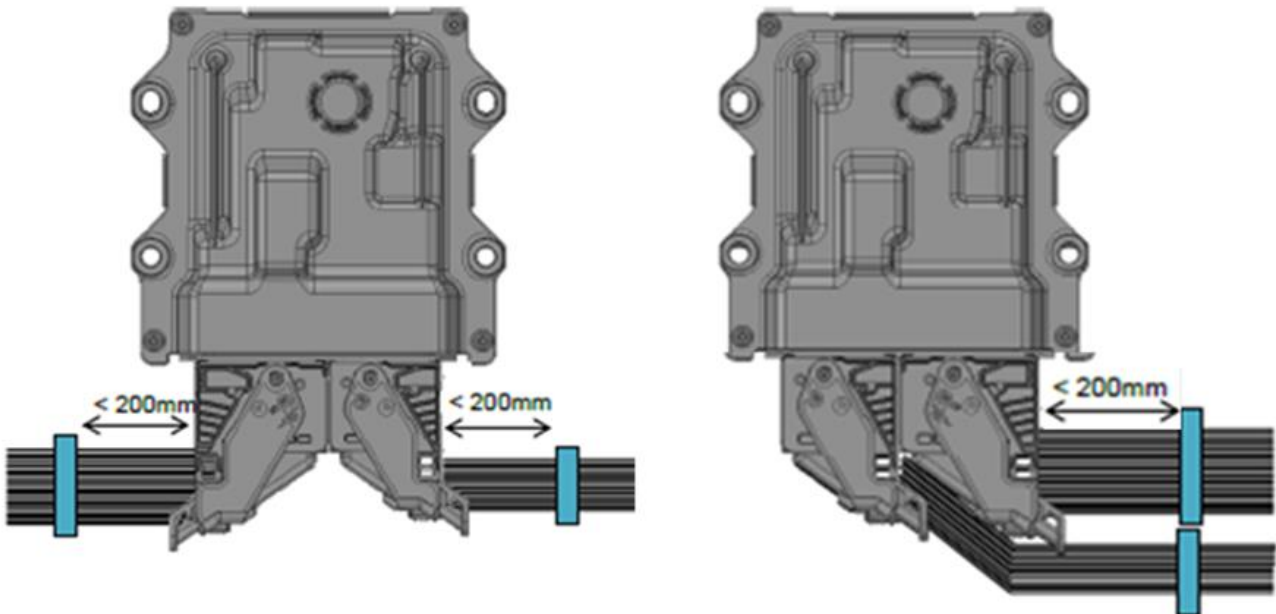


Figure 5-4

## 5.5 Engine Interface Connector (EIC) (47 pin)

### 5.5.1 EIC Summary (47 Pin)

The wiring between Engine ECM and EIC connector is mandatory to ensure all the sensors are correctly linked to the Engine ECM. Specific resistance limit applies to the injector circuit.

### 5.5.2 EIC Layout

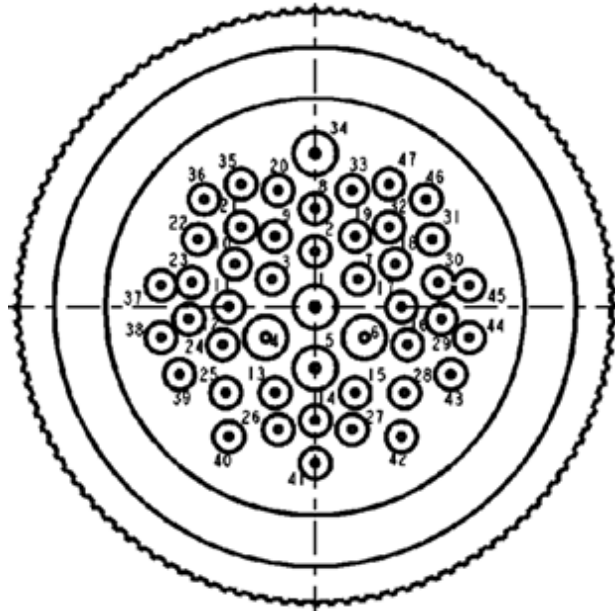


Figure 5-5

### 5.5.3 EIC I/O

Please refer to the 400 Series electrical schematics.

### 5.5.4 EIC Information

This connector is included in the Factory Supplied Link Harness, for more details please see Section 5.7.3.

| Engine Interface Connector (C3) |          |                    |
|---------------------------------|----------|--------------------|
| Component Description           | Supplier | Supplier Part #    |
| 47 Pin EIC Connector (Black)    | Deutsch  | HDP26-24-47SE-L017 |
| Terminal (Tin)                  | Deutsch  | 1062-16-0622       |
|                                 | Deutsch  | 1062-20-0222       |

Table 5.3

### 5.5.5 EIC Strain Relief

Harness strain relief is required for the engine interface connector. The harness must be supported with brackets to prevent the mass of the harness straining the connectors. Mounting holes have been provided to allow a bracket that would mount the EIC on the engine harness to the engine. Figure 5-6 shows the mounting holes for the EIC bracket available with the left image showing an Engine Mounted Aftertreatment arrangement and the right image showing a Remote Mounted Aftertreatment.

These holes are available to attach a bracket to mount the EIC and are optional. If these holes are used to mount the EIC, full validation is required on the bracket and the EIC to confirm it meets all A&I requirements.

Release 10.0

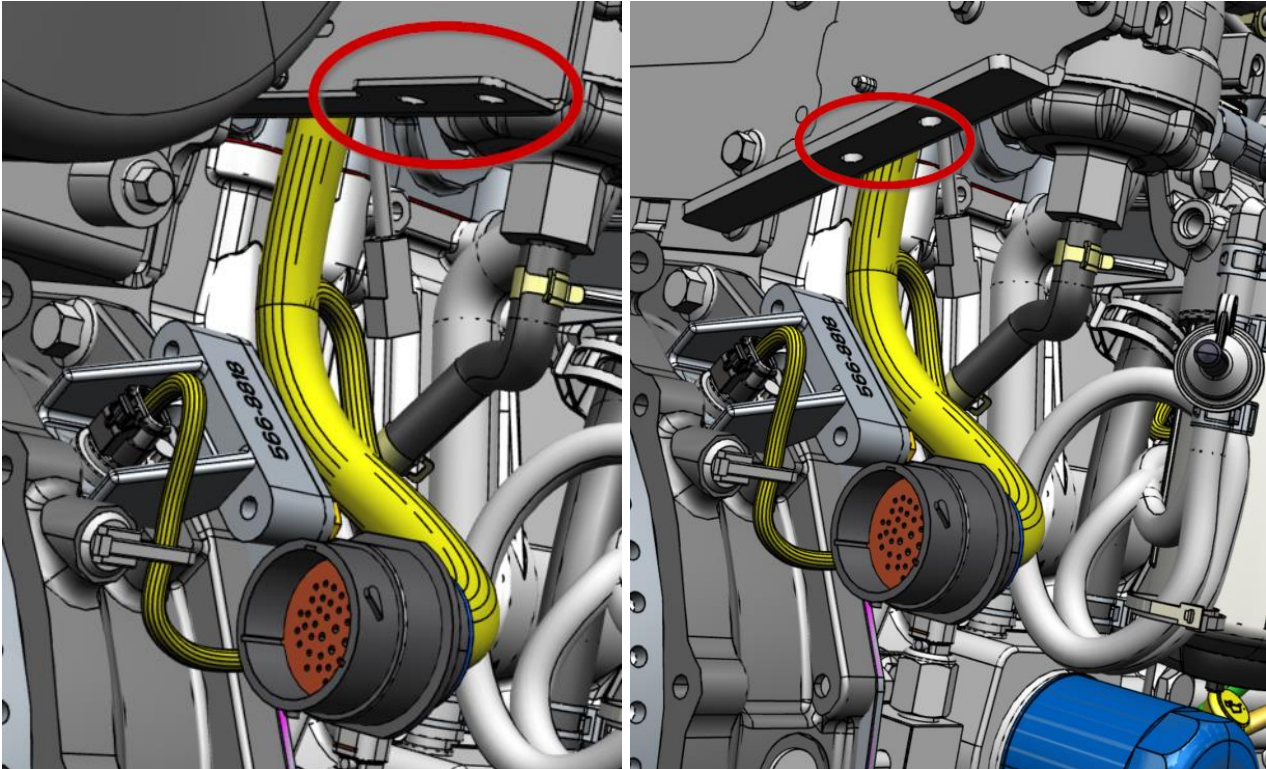


Figure 5-6

The EIC harness branch on the customer harness must be mounted to the machine chassis within 150mm to 175mm of the EIC. If significant vibration is seen on customer harness at the EIC, then the first strain relief point should be mounted to the engine, with the second strain relief point mounted on the machine chassis at a distance between 250mm to 450mm from the first strain relief point.

To fit the EIC to the bracket, first the protective cap needs to be removed from the connector and assemble to the customer designed interface bracket, an example of an interface bracket can be seen in Figure 5-7. Once the connector is in the bracket, the washer and the plastic receptacle nut needs to be fitted over the end of the connector and torqued to 8Nm +/- 0.5Nm, then replace the protective cap over the connector end as seen in Figure 5-7.

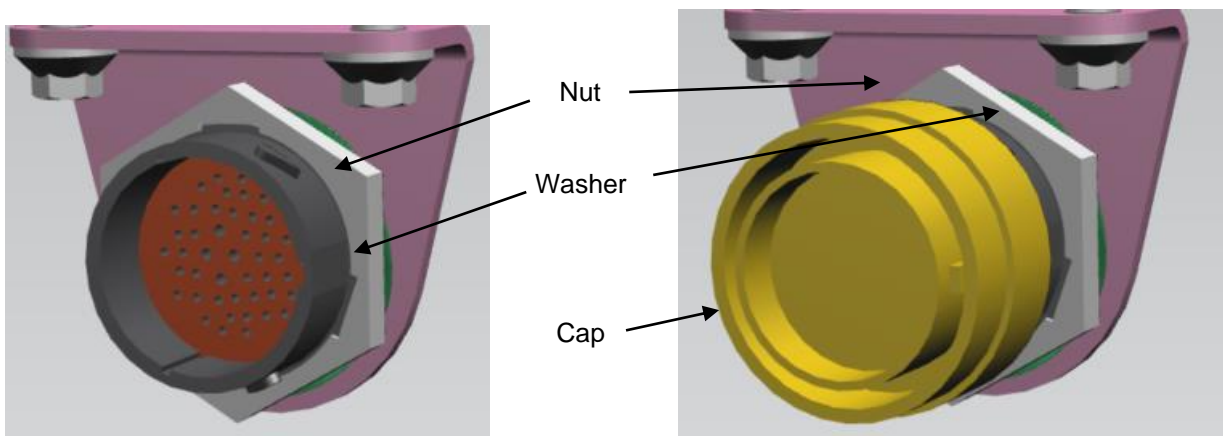


Figure 5-7

## 5.6 All connector Sealing Plug Installation guidelines

All unused cavities must be filled with sealing plugs in order to ensure that the connector is sealed.

**Note that while the sealing plugs will protect the cavities from dirt and dust ingress they will not protect against direct pressure washing, which may damage the ECM. For pressure washing requirements please see section Error! Reference source not found..**

## 5.7 Wire Specification Requirements

The engine ECM connector system is designed to accept cables that comply with cable standard **ISO6722 Thin Wall Insulation**.

All connectors, seals and terminals shown throughout this document have been specified to comply with ISO6722 Thin Wall Insulation. If other wiring standards are to be used the following points must be considered.

- Cable Insulation Outside Diameter
- Cable Conductor Cross Sectional Area (CSA)
- Temperature Exposure
- Abrasion Risk.

To ensure all of the above points are taken into consideration, please consult the manufacturer's cable specification.

Only ISO6722 Thin wall wire may be used with the connector system used on this product. The following tables highlight the reasons why it is not possible to use wire that conforms to other international standards.

### 5.7.1 Wire Thickness Overview

The following sections provide some guidance on the differences in min/min cable thickness for some of the most popular wiring standards.

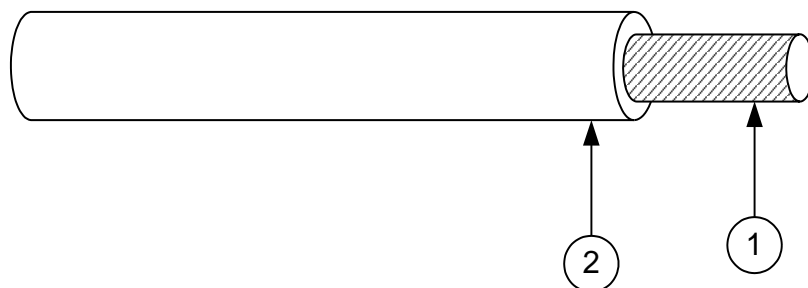


Figure 5-8

- 1 Wire Size – Cross Sectional Area (mm<sup>2</sup>)
- 2 Cable – Insulation Diameter (mm).

### 5.7.2 ISO6722 – Thin Wall

ISO6722 thin wall wire is the required wire standard for the engine connector system. Using this classification of wire ensures correct sealing and terminal compatibility.

| CSA mm2 | Closest Wire Gauge Equivalent | Dia. | Max Outside Dia. mm | Wall Thickness Nom. mm | Wall Thickness Min. mm |
|---------|-------------------------------|------|---------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| 0.5     | 20                            | 1.1  | 1.60                | 0.28                   | 0.22                   |
| 0.75    | 18                            | 1.3  | 1.90                | 0.3                    | 0.24                   |
| 1.0     | 16                            | 1.5  | 2.10                | 0.3                    | 0.24                   |
| 1.5     | *                             | 1.8  | 2.40                | 0.3                    | 0.24                   |
| 2.0     | 14                            | 2.0  | 2.80                | 0.35                   | 0.28                   |
| 2.5     | *                             | 2.2  | 3.00                | 0.35                   | 0.28                   |
| 3.0     | 12                            | 2.4  | 3.40                | 0.4                    | 0.32                   |

Table 5.4

### 5.7.3 Factory Supplied Link Harness

The 400 Series engine can be supplied with the addition of two link harnesses to aid the installation of the off engine ECM and provide interface connectors for machine specific wiring.

The link harness options come in two options from the factory:

- Engine Interface Connector & 1.5m Flying Lead with Diagnostic connector (Sales option code ZN002)
- Engine Interface Connector & 2.5m Flying Lead with Diagnostic connector (Sales option code ZN003)

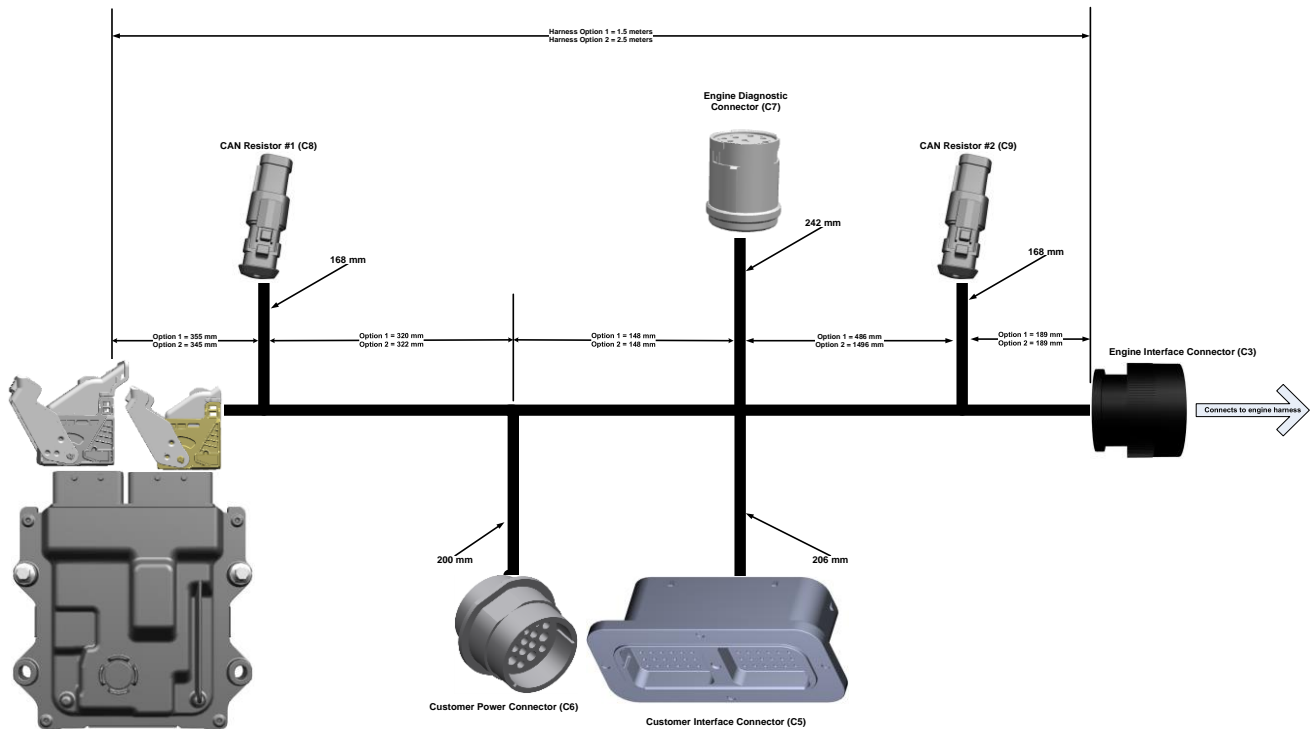


Figure 5-9 Factory Supply Link harness

The benefit of this link harness is that the engine ECM connectors are provided assembled on the harness and supporting connectors on the harness can support GXL or TXL wiring.

### 5.7.4 Harness wiring installation standard

The following are general “good practice” guidelines for wire harness design and installation. It is the responsibility of the machine designer to follow standards appropriate to the application type and to the geographical territory where the machine will be operated. These recommendations do not replace in any way any industrial standards or legal requirements. Please be aware however that any customer installed components, which are integral to the engine or aftertreatment system, are governed by mandatory requirements to ensure the correct operation of the complete system installation.

Do not connect or support other components to the engine wiring harness. Avoid risks of abrasion. The standard maximum operating temperature of the engine wire harness assembly is **125DegC**.

### 5.7.5 Connector Installation Standard

Connectors should be horizontally mounted rather than vertically mounted to prevent ingress of water/chemicals or mounted to the requirement listed in this manual. Whenever possible, connectors should be mounted such that they are protected from direct exposure to extreme cold. Connectors can be damaged by frost if water does penetrate the seals.

Cables should not bend close to the connector seals, as the seal quality can be compromised.

The correct wire seal must be selected for the diameter of wire used.

Cables should be selected of an appropriate cross section for the current and voltage drop requirements.

Where large numbers of wires go to the same connector, it is essential that no single wire is significantly shorter than the others, such that it placed under exceptional strain.

**Note: All electrical components and connectors are not designed to withstand direct exposure to high-pressure water.**

### 5.7.6 Harness bends near connectors

Harness bends within 25mm of the engine interface connector should be avoided. Bending a harness too close to the connector causes the connector seal to be stretched away from the wire, reducing its sealing capability to dirt and moisture. To avoid this the wires should exit perpendicular to the connector before curving as necessary for routing as shown in Figure 5-10.

Bends near to other sensor or actuator connectors should be no less than twice the wire harness diameter. Special consideration should be made to connectors with large wire counts. Stresses placed upon the retention system of the connector can cause retention failures and wire pull-out failures. To avoid these problems preform the harness to the required bend radius.

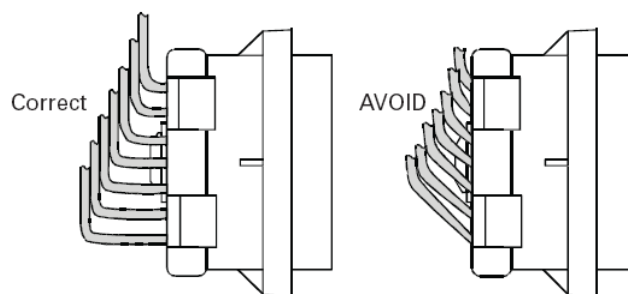


Figure 5-10 ECM J1 Harness Routing

### 5.7.7 Cable Routing

Cables should be routed such that bend radii are not too tight. A cable should not be either in compression or tension, nor should it be excessively long or loose, such that sections may become caught or trapped. Clips should be used at regular intervals to support cables. These clips should be of the correct diameter to grip the cable firmly without crushing it.

Ideally, to protect against damage and to ensure reliability throughout the life of the product the harness routing should provide protection from the following;

- Chafing / rubbing / vibrating against other parts
- Routed away from sharp edges
- Use as handholds or as support for personal equipment
- Damage by personnel moving within or servicing the vehicle
- Damage by impact
- Damage by battery acid fumes, engine and hydraulic oil, fuel and coolant
- Abrasion or damage when exposed to rocks, ice, mud etc
- Damage by moving parts
- Harsh environments such as nitrite mines, high temperatures, or areas susceptible to significant fluid or fume concentration

Conductors carrying high currents or voltages, particularly when these are alternating or switched, should be physically separated from conductors carrying small signal currents. In particular, high current and signal wires should not run parallel in the same harness bundle for any significant distance. Ideally, if high current wires must be in proximity to signal wires then they should cross at right angles.

The engine wire harness should not be used by the installer as a support for any components that are not supplied as part of the engine system. For example, external hoses and wires should not be tied to the engine harness.

Care should be taken during design to ensure that components are accessible for repair and possible replacement in the field. Poor maintenance access may lead to poor quality repairs in the field.

### 5.7.8 Twisted cable pairs

Mandatory requirement to twist the following electrical circuits.

| Description             | ECM Pin Twisted Pair      |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| CAN Connection A        | J1-8                      | J1-7                      |
| CAN Connection C        | J2-76                     | J2-75                     |
| Injectors 1             | J2-3 (4cyl & 3 cyl)       | J2-4 (4cyl & 3 cyl)       |
| Injectors 2             | J2-1 (4cyl) / J2-8 (3cyl) | J2-2 (4cyl) / J2-9 (3cyl) |
| Injectors 3             | J2-8 (4cyl) / J2-6 (3cyl) | J2-9 (4cyl) / J2-7 (3cyl) |
| Injectors 4             | J2-6 (4cyl)               | J2-7 (4cyl)               |
| Fuel Pump Control Valve | J2-11                     | J2-16                     |
| Inlet Throttle Valve    | J2-17                     | J2-18                     |
| NRS Valve               | J2-19                     | J2-20                     |

Table 5.5

### 5.7.9 Electromagnetic Compliance (EMC)

Special measures should be taken to shield cables if the application is to be used in extreme electromagnetic environments – e.g. aluminum smelting plants.

If screened cables are used, the screens should be connected to ground at one point only. That point should be central if possible. Please consult your applications engineering team for further information on EMC compatibility.

### **5.7.10 Insulation Selection and Thermal Protection**

Care must be taken when routing the under hood electrical cabling to ensure that it is routed away from any hot objects such as the engine turbo and exhaust as well as the engine aftertreatment. In some cases this may not be possible in which case care must be taken to ensure that the cable insulation used is rated to the areas in which it is routed. In some cases, specialist insulation may be required such as Teflon etc.

It should also be noted that high temperature cables do in many cases have a reduced overall diameter when compared to ISO cable. If this is the case then an analysis of the connector sealing capabilities must be undertaken to ensure that each connector seal maintains its sealing capabilities.

## 6.0 Customer Connection of Engine Components

The Stage V 400 Series product range requires the customer to install some engine performance critical electrical sensors / components and some optional components. Details of these components are shown below.

| Component                     | Mandatory | 400 Series <55kW<br>DOC, DPF |
|-------------------------------|-----------|------------------------------|
| A6E10 Engine ECM              | Yes       | ✓                            |
| EIC1 Wiring Connection        | Yes       | ✓                            |
| Water In Fuel Switch          | No        | ✓                            |
| Air Inlet Temperature Sensor  | Yes       | ✓                            |
| Engine Diagnostic Connector   | Yes       | ✓                            |
| Electric lift / Prime Pump    | No        | ✓                            |
| Air Filter Restriction Switch | No        | ✓                            |
| Glow Plugs Relay              | Yes       | ✓                            |

Table 6.1

For the components above that are mandatory, the correct installation will be verified during the engine installation audit.

### 6.1 Engine ECM Installation Requirements

The engine ECM should be mounted off the engine following the guidelines in the 400J Mechanical A&I Manual.

#### 6.1.1 Engine ECM Power Supply

##### 6.1.1.1 Engine ECM Keyswitch circuit

A low current key switch input activates the engine ECM. Upon activation the engine ECM will energise the Main power control relay to enable its power pins. The engine ECM must control the power control relay and direct power feed is not permitted. Reverse battery polarity protection is only provided when the main power control relay is used.

It is recommended that the key switch signal connected to pins J1-9 is not shared with other circuits to avoid interference or problems associated to voltage decay or stray system charge. Separating the circuit eliminates the risk of holding the key switch input high in a desired key off state. In some instances it may be necessary to add a blocking diode to separate the circuit.

The voltage thresholds to activate or de-activate the key switch input are given below. Pin J1-9 is protected against reverse polarity up to a maximum of -14Vdc (12-volt system). The ECM battery connections are polarity protected by the main power relay.

The keyswitch must not be powered without the main power relay being able to power the ECM through its main power pins.

| Characteristic     | Minimum | Maximum | Unit |
|--------------------|---------|---------|------|
| V_In_High (Key On) | 4.0     |         | V    |
| V_In_Low (Key Off) |         | 2.1     | V    |

Table 6.2

**6.1.1.2 Engine ECM Switch Battery Positive circuit**

When the Engine ECM receives the Keyswitch signal on the pin J1-9, it will then control the ECM Main Power relay to maintain the ECM power during Engine operation and post-run activities.

The Engine ECM uses pin J1-11 to control the ECM Main Power Relay through a Low Side Driver. The positive side of the relay needs to be powered through the Battery positive.

When the Main Power Relay is activated the Engine ECM will be powered through the pins J1-1 and J1-2.

The selected relay must be capable of a continuous current of 40A and a pulse current of **150A for 1ms**.

**6.1.1.3 Engine ECM Battery Negative circuit**

The Engine ECM is grounded through 4 pins, J1-3, J1-4, J1-5 and J1-6. Those pins needs to be wired to the Battery negative.

The potential difference between Machine ground and ECM ground must not exceed 1V.

**6.1.1.4 Engine ECM powering schematic**

The below schematic resumes the requirements of the Engine ECM Powering circuits.

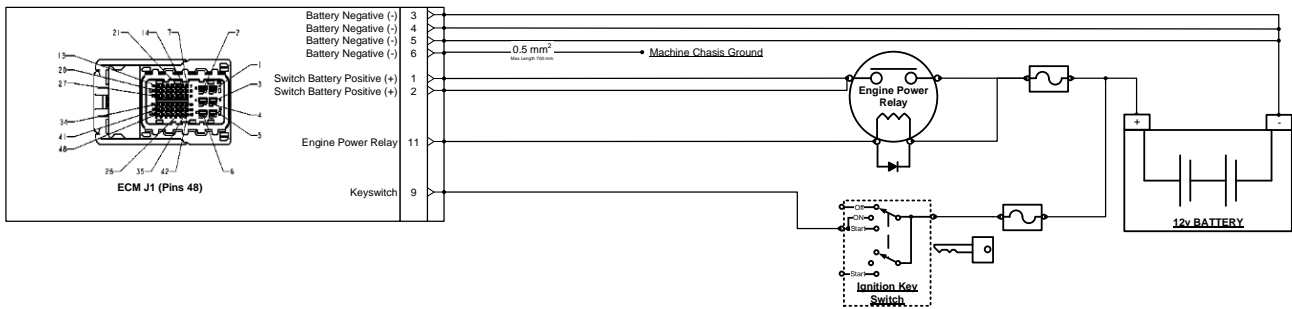


Figure 6-1 ECM Powering wiring

The ECM must power the low side of the Engine Power relay coil, as to allow the ECM powering circuit to know when to power the rest of the ECM circuitry.

**6.1.2 Engine ECM Geometry**

The overall space claim of the ECM is provided below.

Clearance must be given to allow connection and removal of the hinged ECM connector system.

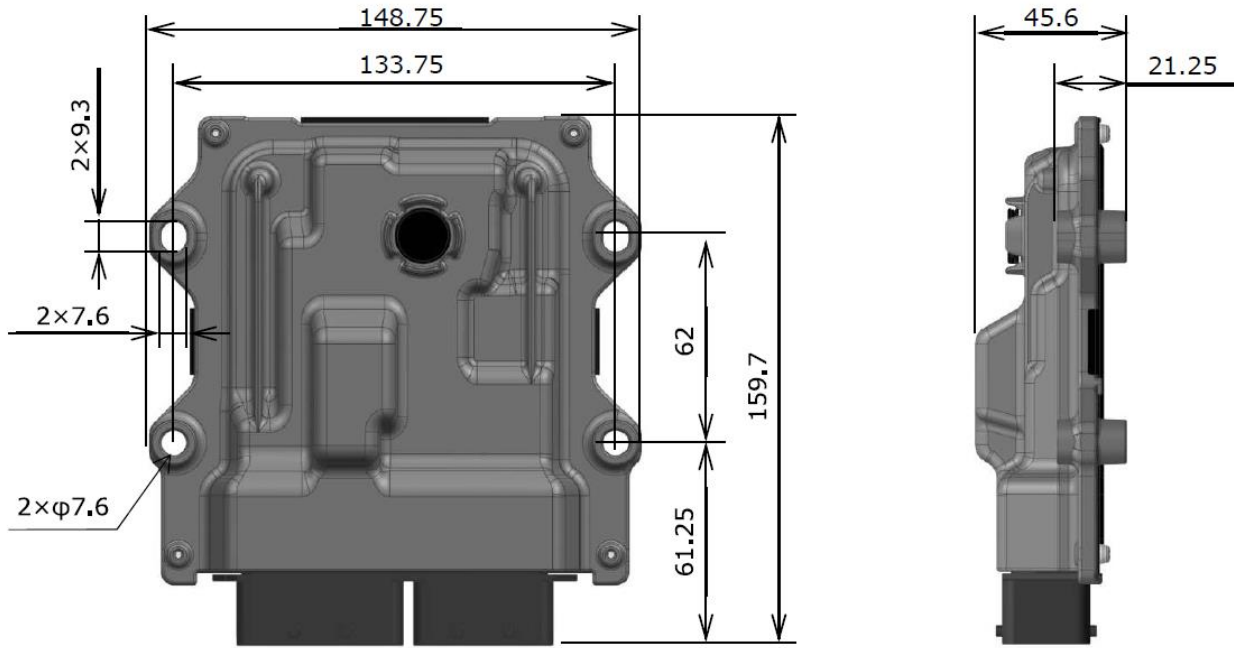


Figure 6-2

### 6.1.3 Engine ECM Mounting

The ECM should be mounted to a metallic surface, using 4 x M6 screws without washers.

The mounting feet are used to transfer heat from the ECM to the chassis and therefore must not be isolated from the mounting material.

The ECM mounting pads need to be raised by 10mm, to ensure the connector mechanism does not interfere with the mounting surface.

| Feature                     | Value          |
|-----------------------------|----------------|
| Fastening Screw Torque (M6) | 9 ~12 Nm       |
| ECM Hole Pitch x            | 62 mm +/- 1 mm |
| ECM Hole Pitch y            | 193mm +/- 1mm  |
| ECM hole diameter           | 7.6mm +/- 0.3  |
| Surface Flatness            | <1 mm          |
| Boss flatness               | <0.5 mm        |

Table 6.3

The ECM should be fixed by flat face screws / bolts, see Figure 6-3.



Figure 6-3

The ECM should not use any of the following screws / bolts, see Figure 6-4.



Figure 6-4

### 6.1.4 Engine ECM Mounting Orientation

The engine ECM must be positioned to minimize exposure to fluids and debris. The position of the ECM should be carefully considered to prevent foreign object damage and clogging of the air-cooling fins and connector mechanisms. The location design should incorporate measures to prevent fluids channeling towards the ECM through conduit or wiring. The ECM fasteners must not be used for secondary retention of pipe or wire clips. The ECM must not come into contact with other machine or engine components.

The ECM must not be submersed. The pressure compensation valve and integral barometric sensor will not operate correctly if submersed in fluids.

The mounting orientations shown in Figure 6-5 should not be used if there's a risk of fluids standing on the ECM surfaces. If it is necessary to mount the ECM in positions shown in Figure 6-5 measures must be taken to prevent standing water. Consider placing the ECM at an angle to allow fluid run-off.

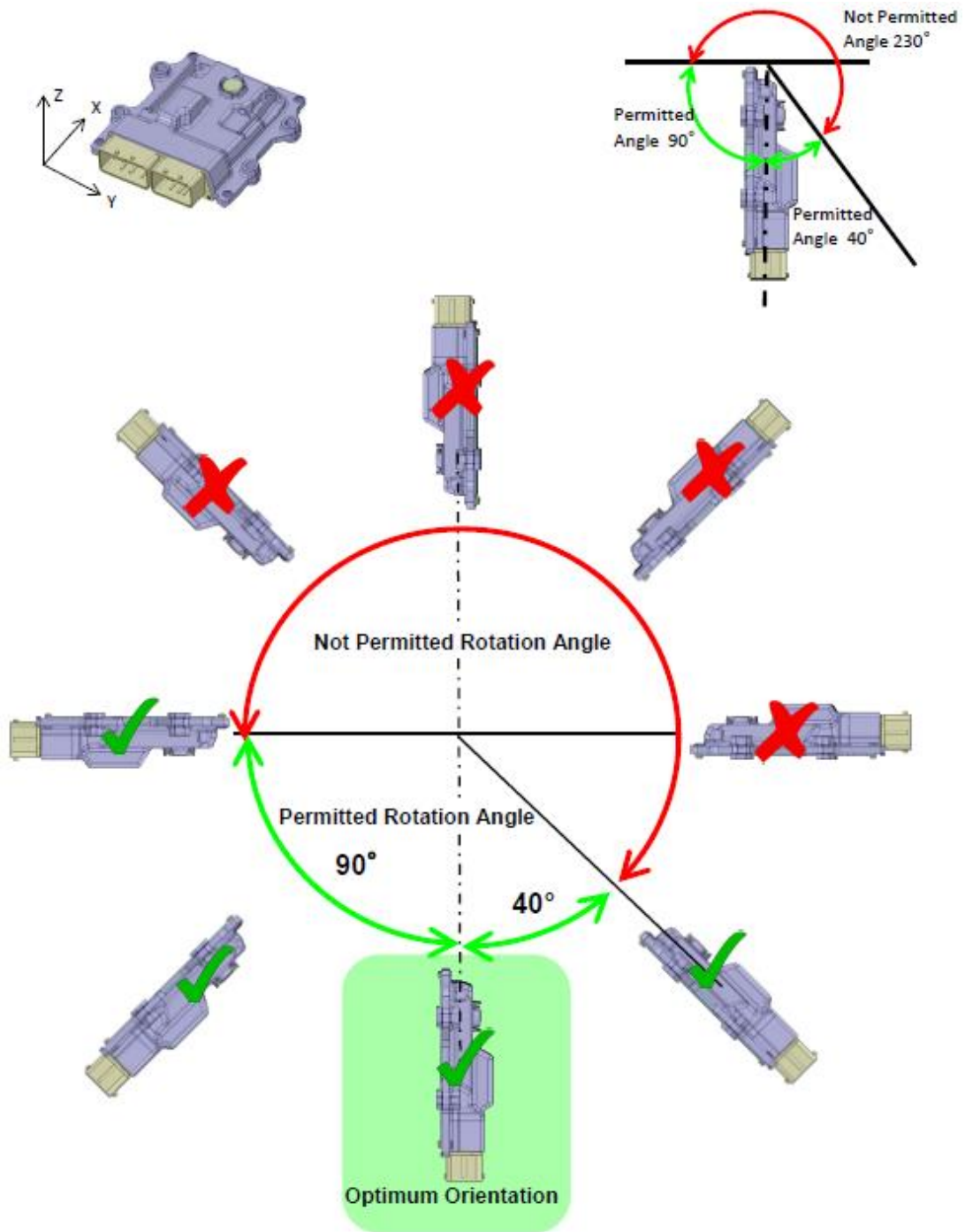


Figure 6-5

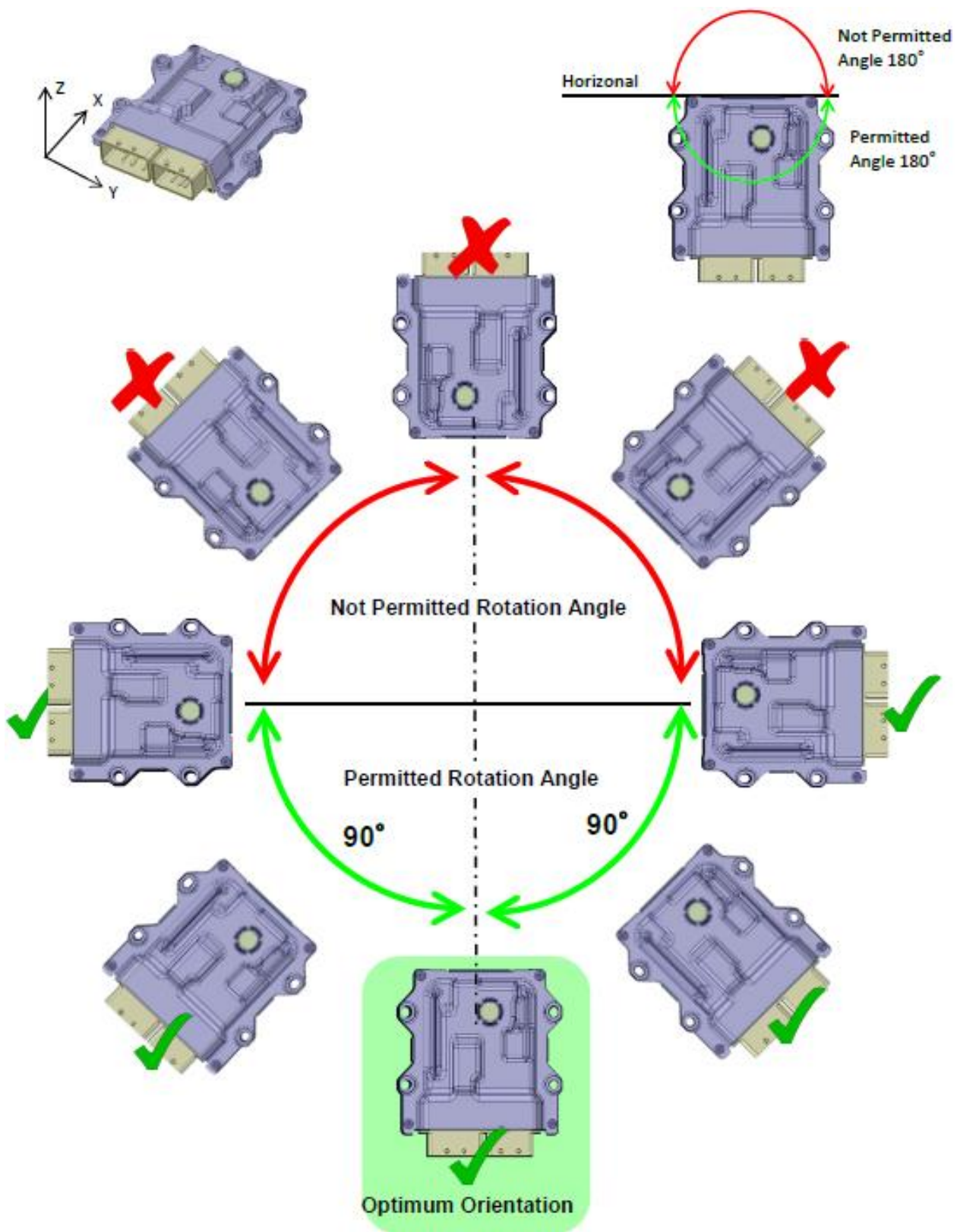


Figure 6-6

The wire harness should be directed downwards to prevent water from collecting at the ECM connector.

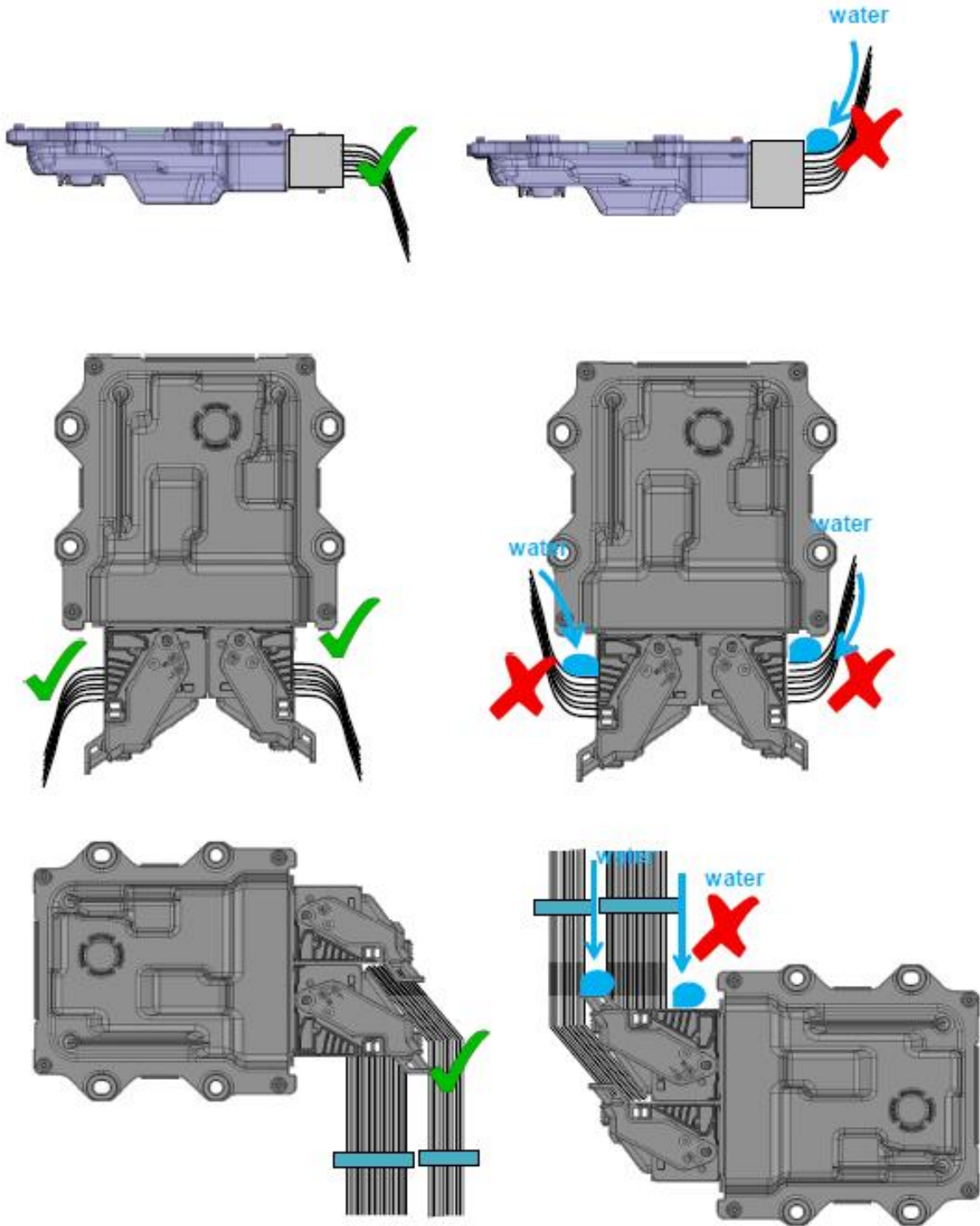


Figure 6-7

### 6.1.5 Engine ECM Vibration Requirements

The engine ECM is designed for chassis or frame mounting. The vibration levels produced by the engine exceed the limits of the ECM design, therefore, the ECM must be mounted off-engine. Under no circumstances should the ECM be mounted to the engine or associated components with the same vibration profile.

The engine ECM vibration limits can be found in the mechanical A&I guide.

**6.1.5.1 Hard Mounting Recommendation**

Hard mounting the ECM is the preferred method, providing the vibration environment is suitable. Mounting on the engine side of isolation mounts is not recommended. If there is an existing isolated structure in the application such as a cab or operator platform, it may provide the ideal vibration environment for the ECM. Where possible mounting brackets should be avoided, direct mounting to stiff structures is recommended. If this is not possible the bracket should be of a stiff design. Avoid mounting on large flat panels such as fuel tanks or engine covers, particularly in the centre, to avoid any panel resonances.

**6.1.5.2 Isolation Mounting Recommendation**

If a suitable hard mounting location cannot be found, isolation (ISO) mounts may be considered to reduce the vibration input to the ECM. However, the development of a suitable isolation system may be more difficult. The ISO mounts must be optimized to the mass and mounting orientation of the ECM, and the application inputs. There may also be thermal considerations from the loss of heat dissipation capability through hard mounting.

When the ECM is ISO mounted, it still needs to be mounted onto a plate to ensure the heat dissipation of the ECM.

**6.1.5.3 Engine ECM Free Fall Tests**

The engine ECM is not capable of withstanding any free fall onto any type of flooring. Any dropped ECMs will have to be replaced.

**6.1.6 Engine ECM Temperature Limitations**

To avoid engine ECM overheating the component location must be considered carefully. The maximum allowable ambient temperature is dependent on the following parameters:

- Ambient Air Temperature
- Ambient Air Flow
- Mounting method (The ECM dissipates heat through the mounting feet)
- Chassis Temperature
- ECM power dissipation.

The ECM feet are used to dissipate heat away from the ECM. The thermal resistance of the mounting surface and material influences the final temperature of the ECM; therefore, a suitable location and mounting material must be selected.

It is critical that the ECM mounting surface is kept below 70DegC to ensure the ECM internal temperature is kept to a minimum.

The use of dampers should be carefully considered, dampers should not be used if there is no airflow.

**6.1.6.1 Engine ECM Temperature Test Points**

There are two different test points depending on the condition, these are:

- Condition 1 – When the ECM is fitted to thermally conductive surface
- Condition 2 – When the ECM is fitted to a non-thermally conductive surface.




| Measurement Point   | Description          | Condition 1 | Condition 2 |
|---|----------------------|-------------|-------------|
|  | Ambient Temperature  | <105°C      | <75°C       |
|  | Case Temperature     | <70°C       | <100°C      |
|  | Mounting Temperature | <70°C       | <70°C       |

Table 6.4

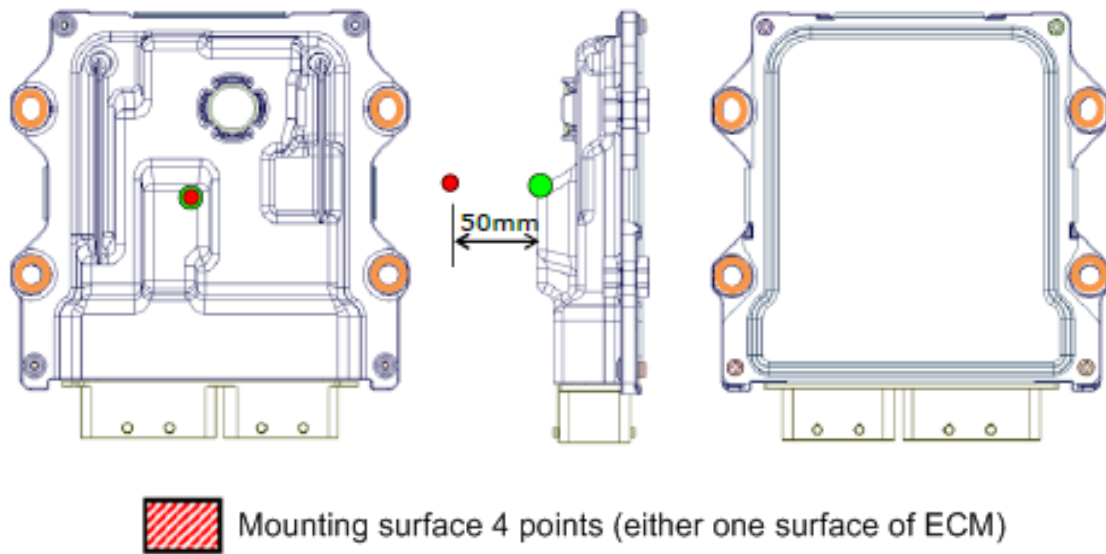


Figure 6-8

### 6.1.6.2 Engine ECM Elevated Temperatures – Hot Shutdown

The maximum non-operational ECM temperature is 120DegC.

## 6.2 Water in Fuel Switch (WIF)

### 6.2.1 WIF Switch Operation

The water in fuel switch indicates that the fuel filter bowl is full. During normal engine operation the switch is immersed in diesel fuel. As water collects and reaches the maximum level the water enables a conductive path between electrodes (normally open switch), and triggers appropriate diagnostic codes when required. The WIF switch is optional and is supplied assembled to the fuel filter when selected. The electrical connection of the switch to the engine ECM is the responsibility of the customer and should form part of the machine wiring harness connection to the Engine ECM.

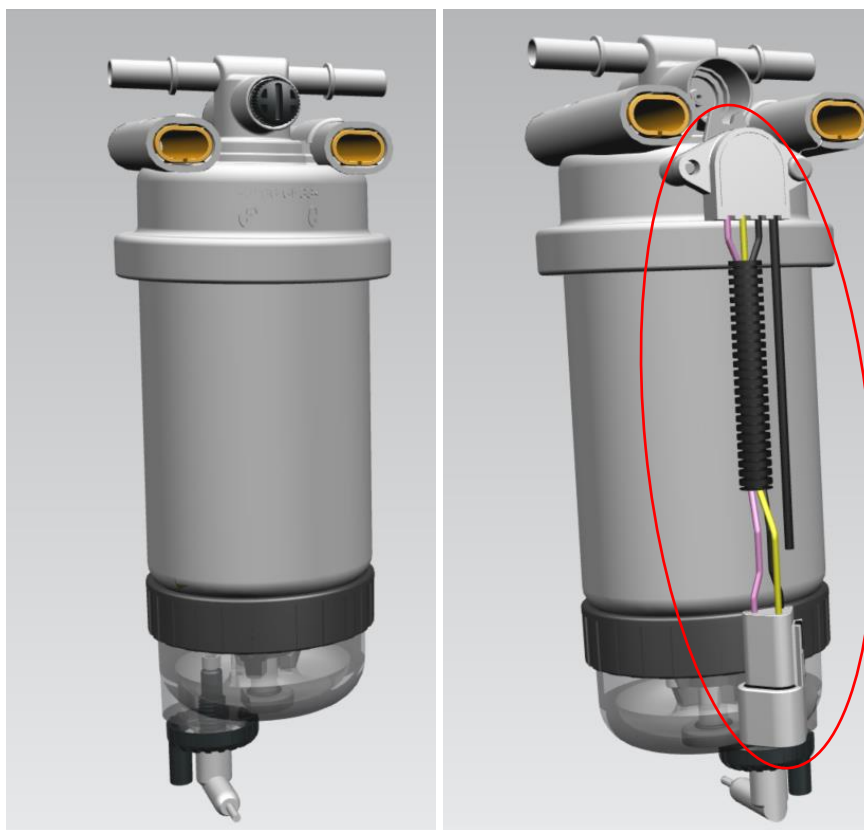


Figure 6-9 WIF switch highlighted in red.

| Service Tool Description | J1939 description       | Status      | SPN (J1939) | FMI (J1939) | Engine Action (If enabled) |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|----------------------------|
| Water in Fuel switch     | Water In Fuel Indicator | Severity L1 | 97          | 15          | Warning Lamp Only          |
|                          |                         | Severity L2 | 97          | 16          | Warning and Derate         |
|                          |                         | Severity L3 | N/A         | N/A         | N/A                        |

Table 6.5 WIF switch Monitoring

Note: For more detail on WIF switch diagnostic codes, refer to latest trouble shooting guide, which can be viewed from SPI2.

### 6.2.2 WIF Switch Configuration

The WIF switch is an optional item, which customers can use the one shown in Figure 6-9 or use a customer selected switch.

The configuration is required via Perkins Electronic Service Tool (Perkins EST).

### 6.2.3 WIF Switch Installation

The WIF switch is supplied connected to the bottom of the primary fuel filter. The switch is supplied with a flying lead connection, which provides the connection point for the customer to connect the switch to the Application Interface Connector.

A connection between the switch, engine ECM and switch battery positive is required. The below schematic provides the requirements for the WIF sensor connections:

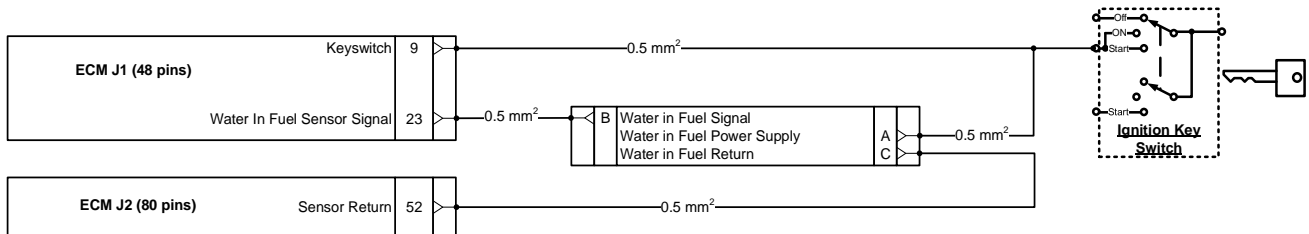


Figure 6-10 WIF Switch wiring

**Note: The switch is located in a vulnerable position, so every care should be taken to prevent accidental damage occurring to it or the flying lead attached to it.**

It is the OEM’s responsibility to route the water in fuel switch flying lead harness and its connector plug and mount appropriately. To ensure that the wires entering the back of the switch are adequately protected against over stress and damage during filter and/or engine installation and machine operation, the switch can be supplied with a circular backshell to help control the orientation of the cabling and prevent direct side pull. This sleeve engages with the grooves at the end of the switch body and electrical wire conduit corrugations.



Figure 6-11

A backshell is recommended and is available in both 180° and 90° designs and is easily retrofitted by the clasp mechanism. It is not designed for frequent removal, as the latching tangs can become distorted and break, so once fitted it is intended to remain in place.



Figure 6-12

| Backshell Type | Supplier        | Supplier P/N | Part # |
|----------------|-----------------|--------------|--------|
| 90°            | TE Connectivity | 185793-1     | TBC    |
| 180°           | TE Connectivity | 185792-1     | TBC    |

Table 6.6

In all cases (with or without a backshell), the WIF installation should follow the guidance set out in the harness wiring installation standard in sections 5.7.4, 5.7.5, 5.7.6, 5.7.7 and 5.7.10

### 6.2.4 WIF Connector Information

| Water in Fuel Sensor          |          |                 |     |          |            |
|-------------------------------|----------|-----------------|-----|----------|------------|
| Component Description         | Supplier | Supplier Part # | Qty | Part #   | Kit Part # |
| 3 Pin Water in Fuel Connector | Deutsch  | DT06-3S         | 1   | 28170056 | T432692    |
| Small Terminal (Nickel)       | Deutsch  | 1062-16-0122    | 3   | T402651  |            |

Table 6.7

### 6.2.5 WIF Component I/O

| Water in Fuel Sensor |               |
|----------------------|---------------|
| Pin                  | Function      |
| A                    | Sensor Supply |
| B                    | Signal        |
| C                    | Sensor Ground |

Table 6.8

## 6.3 Air Inlet Temperature Sensor

### 6.3.1 Air Inlet Temperature Sensor Operation

The air inlet temperature sensor is a passive sensor used to measure the ambient air temperature. This temperature is used to regulate the engine NRS system during a number of scenarios. This sensor is a mandatory fit item, as the performance of the engine will be severely affected if it is not installed. The air inlet temperature sensor must not be exposed to temperatures in excess of 125°C, as temperatures above the limit will exceed the temperature rating of the sensor connector.

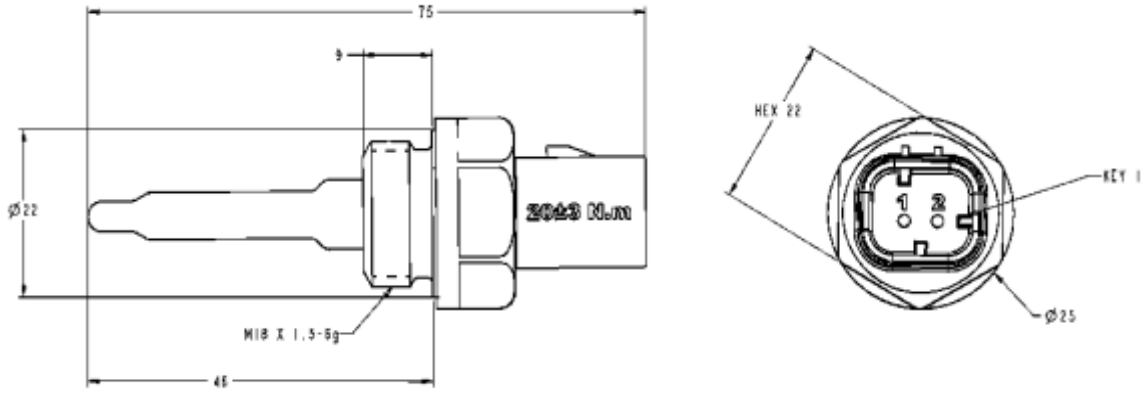


Figure 6-13

### 6.3.2 Air Inlet Temperature Sensor Configuration

The Air Inlet Temperature Sensor is a mandatory item, which is always installed. No configuration is required via Perkins Electronic Service Tool (Perkins EST).

All engines are supplied programmed with a standard 5°C air inlet temperature sensor offset to calculate the local ambient air temperature being breathed by the engine. This offset value is fixed and requires no in application calibration. For further information on the installation requirements for the engine air intake system please refer to the Mechanical A&I manual.

### 6.3.3 Air Inlet Temperature Sensor Installation

The Air Inlet Temperature sensor should be installed after the air cleaner and tightened to a maximum permissible torque of 20 Nm +/-3 Nm. The sensor requires a M18 x 1.5 (metric) thread and sealing is an integral part of the sensor, therefore an o-ring is supplied with the sensor. The sensor should be positioned as close to centre of the inlet pipe as possible. It is recommended that the sensor is positioned in the upper half of the pipe to prevent any fluids pooling around the probe.

### 6.3.4 Air Inlet Temperature Sensor Schematic

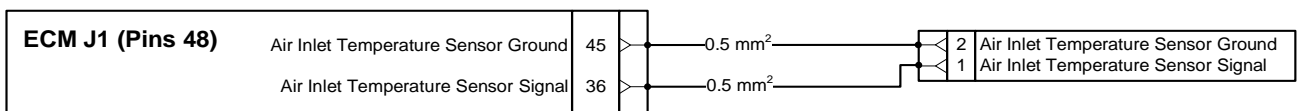


Figure 6-14

### 6.3.5 Air Inlet Temperature Sensor Connector Information

| Air Inlet Temperature Sensor             |          |                 |     |          |            |
|--|----------|-----------------|-----|----------|------------|
| Component Description                    | Supplier | Supplier Part # | Qty | Part #   | Kit Part # |
| 2 Pin Air Inlet Temperature (Red) (Key1) | AMP      | 776522-1        | 1   | T405217  | T432693    |
| Terminal (Gold)                          | AMP      | 1924464-1       | 2   | 2900A016 |            |

Table 6.9

### 6.3.6 Air Inlet Temperature Sensor Component I/O

| Air Inlet Temperature Sensor |               |
|------------------------------|---------------|
| Pin                          | Function      |
| 1                            | Sensor Signal |
| 2                            | Sensor Ground |

Table 6.10

## 6.4 Engine Diagnostic Connector

### 6.4.1 Engine Diagnostic Connector Operation

A 9-pin engine diagnostic connector must be fitted on all industrial installations. The diagnostic connector enables connection to the data link via Perkins EST service tool, and the J1939 data link that can be accessed by most third-party diagnostic tools.

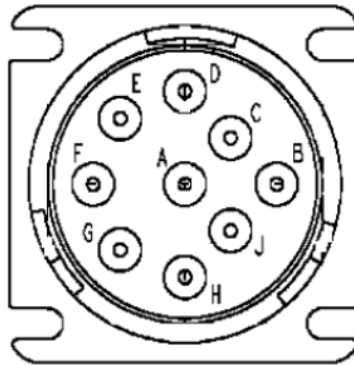


Figure 6-15

### 6.4.2 Engine Diagnostic Connector Configuration

The engine diagnostic connector is a mandatory item, which is always installed. No configuration is required via Perkins Electronic Service Tool (Perkins EST).

### 6.4.3 Engine Diagnostic Connector Installation

It is recommended that a diagnostic connector be wired in a location that can easily be accessed, free from possible water / dirt ingress and impact damage. A preferred location would be the machine cab on the basis of protection, convenience and safety. The engine wire harness must not be changed or modified. To wire a diagnostic connection use the data link pins available on the engine ECM J1 connector

It should be noted that the diagnostic connector is intended solely for diagnostic purposes and must not be used as means of connecting machine controllers or displays to the J1939 datalink. Dedicated I/O has been provided for this function via the engine ECM J1 connector.

All cables supplying the diagnostic connector are required to be no smaller than 0.5mm<sup>2</sup> and should conform to the ISO67222 insulation specification. Larger cables for the diagnostic power supply are not required, as diagnostic hardware should draw no more than 1 amp total.

### 6.4.4 Engine Diagnostic Connector Schematic

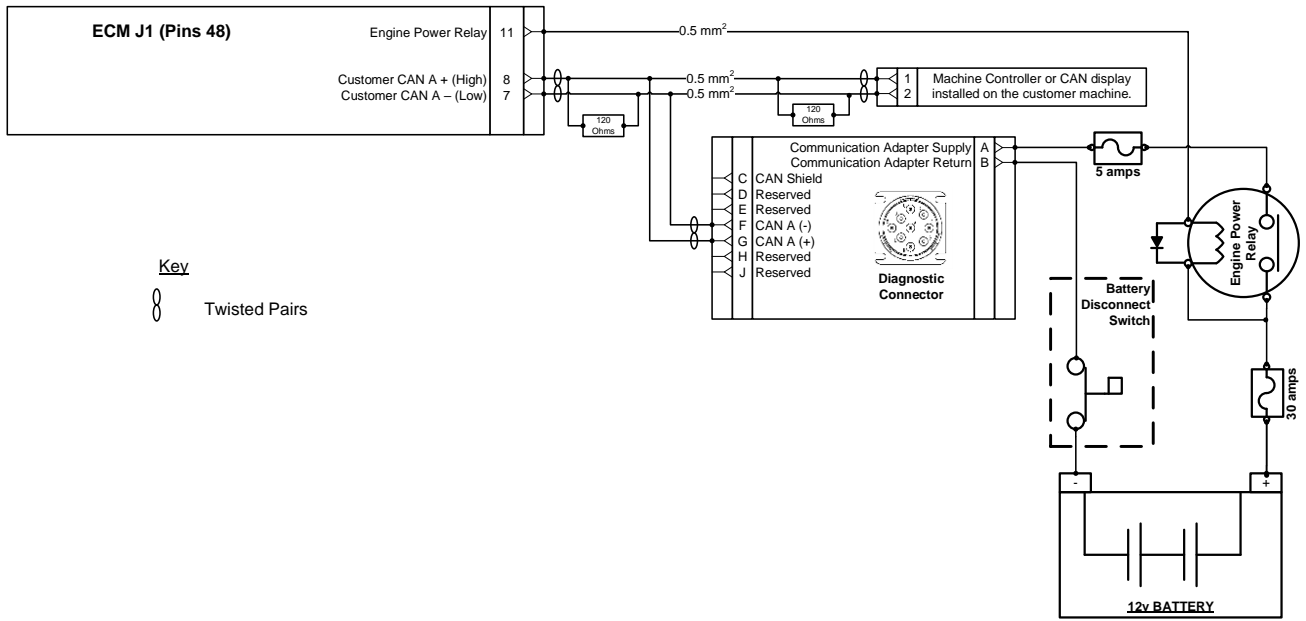


Figure 6-16

### 6.4.5 Engine Diagnostic Connector Information

This connector is included in the Factory Supplied Link Harness, for more details please see Section 5.7.3.

| Engine diagnostic Connector                            |          |                 |     |
|--|----------|-----------------|-----|
| Component Description                                  | Supplier | Supplier Part # | Qty |
| 9 Pin Engine Diagnostic Connector (Grey)               | Deutsch  | HD14-9-96PE     | 1   |
| 9 Pin Engine Diagnostic Connector (Grey) (With flange) | Deutsch  | HD10-9-96P      |     |
| Terminal (Nickel)                                      | Deutsch  | 0460-202-16141  | 4   |
| End Cap (Grey)   | Deutsch  | HDC-16-9        | 1   |
| Blanking Plugs (White)                                 | Deutsch  | 114017          | 5   |

Table 6.11

### 6.4.6 Engine Diagnostic Connector Component I/O

| Engine Diagnostic Connector I/O |                       |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Pin                             | Function              |
| A                               | Switched Power Supply |
| B                               | Ground                |
| F                               | CAN A (-)             |
| G                               | CAN A (+)             |

Table 6.12

## 6.5 Air Filter Restriction Switch

### 6.5.1 Air Filter Restriction Switch Operation

The air filter restriction switch indicates that the air intake circuit is restricted. The switch is installed or piped to the air filter housing or air induction pipe so that it is monitoring clean air (between the air filter and the engine). A normally closed Air filter restriction switch is available within the Perkins Parts system for order where required.

To enable the use of third party components this input is configurable from normally open to normally closed depending upon the type of switch selected.

During engine running the ECM shall continuously monitor the state of an air filter restriction switch via a hard wired SWB input on pin J1-31. When the filter restriction input has changed state, the software shall raise an event code and transmit this on the CAN link via the DM1 message frame and turn the amber warning lamp on. The software will also derate the engine after a calibrated time (in seconds) after the event code is raised, the amount of derate applied shall be determined by a calibration value.

| Service Tool Description      | J1939 description                         | Status      | SPN (J1939) | FMI (J1939) | Engine Action (If enabled)                     |
|-------------------------------|---|-------------|-------------|-------------|--|
| Air Filter Restriction Switch | Engine Air Filter 1 Differential Pressure | Severity L1 | 107         | 15          | Warning lamp only                              |
|                               |   | Severity L2 | 107         | 16          | Warning lamp will flash and engine is derated. |
|                               |   | Severity L3 | N/A         | N/A         | N/A  |

Table 6.13 Air Filter Restriction Monitoring

Note: For more detail on Air Filter Restriction Switch diagnostic codes, refer to latest trouble shooting guide, which can be viewed from SPI2.

### 6.5.2 Air Filter Restriction Switch Configuration

The Air Filter Restriction Switch is not a mandatory item and therefore not always activated.

To enable the operation of this switch, the configuration of the air filter restriction switch must be altered within Perkins EST, see Table 6.14.

Note: All air filter restriction switches supplied by Perkins are normally closed.

| Configuration field Names                         | Configurable Options             | Default Configuration |
|---|----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Air Filter Restriction Switch Installation Status | Installed<br>Not Installed       | Not Installed         |
| Air Filter Restriction Switch Configuration       | Normally Closed<br>Normally Open | Normally Closed       |

Table 6.14

### 6.5.3 Air Filter Restriction Switch Installation

The air intake restriction switch is a two-wire switch which requires connection to switched battery. The switch is installed in the air induction pipe.

To validate the correct switch is chosen the application engineer will complete the Air Filter Restriction test procedure.

While it is possible for the customer to source their own air filter restriction switch, Perkins recommends and supplies a range of switches as shown in Table 6.15.

| Part #  | Description                   | Trip Point |
|---------|-------------------------------|------------|
| T400039 | Air Filter Restriction Switch | 6.5 kPa    |
| T432658 | Air Filter Restriction Switch | 7.5 kPa    |

Table 6.15

### 6.5.4 Air Filter Restriction Switch Schematic

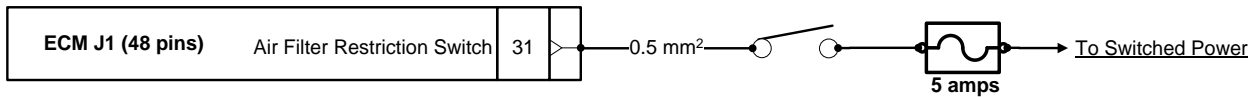


Figure 6-17

### 6.5.5 Air Filter Restriction Switch Connector Information

Find below the required connector for Perkins components T400039 and T432658:

| Air Filter Switch Connector                   |          |                 |     |         |            |
|---|----------|-----------------|-----|---------|------------|
| Component Description                         | Supplier | Supplier Part # | Qty | Part #  | Kit Part # |
| 2 Pin Air Filter Restriction Switch Connector | Amp      | 776428-1        | 1   | T406690 | T432694    |
| Terminal (Nickel)                             | Tyco     | 638112-1        | 2   | T432659 |            |

Table 6.16

### 6.5.6 Air Filter Restriction Switch Component I/O

Find below the connector pinout for Perkins components T400039 and T432658.

| Air Inlet Temperature Sensor |                       |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Pin                          | Function              |
| 1                            | Switch Switched Power |
| 2                            | Switch Contact NC     |

Table 6.17

## 6.6 Engine Electric Fuel Prime / Lift Pump

### 6.6.1 Engine Electric Fuel Prime / Lift Pump Operation

The 400 Series engine offers the possibility to control the Low-pressure fuel system.

When the Lift Pump is controlled by the Engine ECM, it will be powered after Key ON, if the Engine is not running it will be powered OFF after 120 seconds. The Lift Pump will stay powered when Engine is running.

### 6.6.2 Engine Electric Fuel Prime / Lift Pump Installation

The low pressure fuel lift pump requires a fused battery positive and battery negative connection. The control of the lift pump is provided by the engine ECM via the ECM J1 connector and a fuel pump supply control relay which requires machine mounting by the customer.

Supply of the low pressure lift pump control relay is the responsibility of the OEM. An example relay specification is shown in Figure 6-18. When mounting the relay, the following must be considered;

- Mounting location of the relay does not exceed the temperature and vibration limits of the chosen component.
- The relay must not be mounted under any circumstances to the engine.
- The relay should be positioned such that direct exposure to fluids and dirt/dust are minimised.

| Parameter            | Specification Requirements |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| Temperature Limit    | -40°C To +85°C             |
| Vibration Limit      | 10Grms                     |
| Coil Hold In current | < 300mA                    |
| Suppression          | Diode                      |

Table 6.18

In the event of a third-party relay being selected for low pressure fuel pump control care must be taken to ensure that the relay coil demands less than 300mA during activation and that the relay contacts are specified to meet the maximum current demand from the electric lift / prime pump as shown in Table 6.19.

| Component             | Max Current Draw | Recommended Cable Size |
|-----------------------|------------------|------------------------|
| 12V Lift / Prime Pump | 10A              | 18AWG                  |

Table 6.19

### 6.6.3 Engine Electric Fuel Prime / Lift Pump Schematic

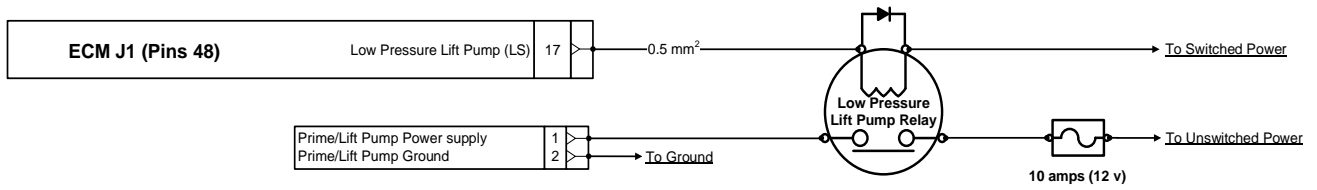


Figure 6-18

### 6.6.4 Engine Electric Fuel Prime / Lift Pump Connector Information

| Electric Fuel Prime / Lift Pump      |          |                 |     |          |            |
|--------------------------------------|----------|-----------------|-----|----------|------------|
| Component Description                | Supplier | Supplier Part # | Qty | Part #   | Kit Part # |
| 2 Pin Lift/Prime Fuel Pump Connector | Deutsch  | DT06-2P         | 1   | 28170051 | T432695    |
| Terminal (Nickel)                    | Deutsch  | 1062-16-0122    | 2   | T402651  |            |

Table 6.20

### 6.6.5 Engine Electric Fuel Prime / Lift Pump Component I/O

| Electric Prime/Lift Pump |                  |
|--------------------------|------------------|
| Pin                      | Function         |
| 1                        | Lift Pump Supply |
| 2                        | Lift Pump Ground |

Table 6.21

## 7.0 Connecting Engine to Aftertreatment

### 7.1 Aftertreatment system

The 400 Series Tier 4 Final / Stage V engine range is supplied with an aftertreatment system.

The following section provides guidance on the electrical installation of the DOC, DPF Aftertreatment system

#### 7.1.1 Aftertreatment System Architecture Overview

Table 7.1 demonstrates the aftertreatment components fitted to each aftertreatment type.

| Component Reference | Component Description   | 400 Series <55kW DOC, DPF |
|---------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1                   | Dual Temperature Probe  | ✓                         |
| 2                   | Delta P Pressure Sensor | ✓                         |

Table 7.1

This sections below provides the individual emissions system components installation requirements.

### 7.2 Exhaust Gas Temperature Sensors

#### 7.2.1 Exhaust Gas Temperature Sensor Operation

There is an exhaust gas temperature sensor, this sensor is required for accurate control / monitoring of the engine aftertreatment system.

The exhaust gas temperature sensor is supplied with engine fitted. The probe length should fit the majority of the application even when using remote aftertreatment.

In case this option doesn't fit the machine requirements, please refer to your A&I Engineer.

Dual Probe Exhaust Temperature Sensor



Figure 7-1

The temperature sensors above consist of the following components;

1. Temperature Sensor Probe
2. Temperature Sensor Module
3. Electrical Connector

The aftertreatment system configuration is supplied from the factory in the following configuration;

1. Full EMAT – Full Engine Mounted Aftertreatment
2. Full Remote – Full Remote Aftertreatment System

In case of a remote aftertreatment, the exhaust temperature sensor will be utilized and customers must certify that the length provided by the temperature sensor will fit their application.

| Aftertreatment Configuration | 400 Series <55kW DOC, DPF        |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Full EMAT                    | Factory fitted Dual Probe sensor |
| Full Remote                  | Dual Probe Sensor                |

Table 7.2

There is one standard cable length between the sensor probe and electrical control module, length 1270 mm.

### 7.2.2 Exhaust Gas Temperature Sensor Configuration

No configuration via Perkins Electronic Technician (Perkins EST) service tool is required for these two exhaust gas temperature sensors.

### 7.2.3 Exhaust Gas Temperature Sensor wiring schematic

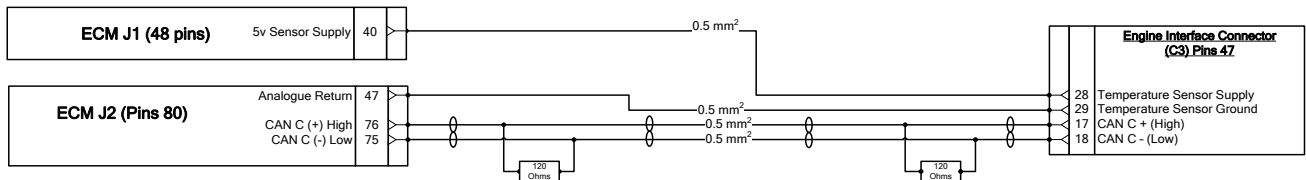


Figure 7-2

No extra wiring is required if the ECU link lead harness is used.

### 7.2.4 Exhaust Gas Temperature Sensor connector information

All the aftertreatment temperature sensors use the same connector, find the connector information in Table 7.3:

| AT Temperature Sensor   |          |                 |     |  |
|---|----------|-----------------|-----|--|
| Component Description   | Supplier | Supplier Part # | Qty |  |
| 4 Pin Temperature Sensor Connector - Code 1 Red - Connector Black | AMP      | 776524-1        | 1   |  |
| Small Terminal (Gold)   | AMP      | 1924464-1       | 4   |  |

Table 7.3

## 7.2.5 Exhaust Gas Temperature component I/O

| AT Temperature Sensor I/O |                              |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| Pin                       | Function                     |
| 1                         | AT Temperature Sensor Supply |
| 2                         | AT Temperature Sensor Ground |
| 3                         | CAN + (High)                 |
| 4                         | CAN – (Low)                  |

Table 7.4

## 7.3 Delta P Pressure Sensor

### 7.3.1 Delta P Pressure Sensor Operation

The DPF Differential Pressure Sensor is used to measure the difference in exhaust gas pressure between the DPF inlet (before the filter) and DPF outlet (after the filter). The maximum permissible operating temperature is 125DegC skin temperature.

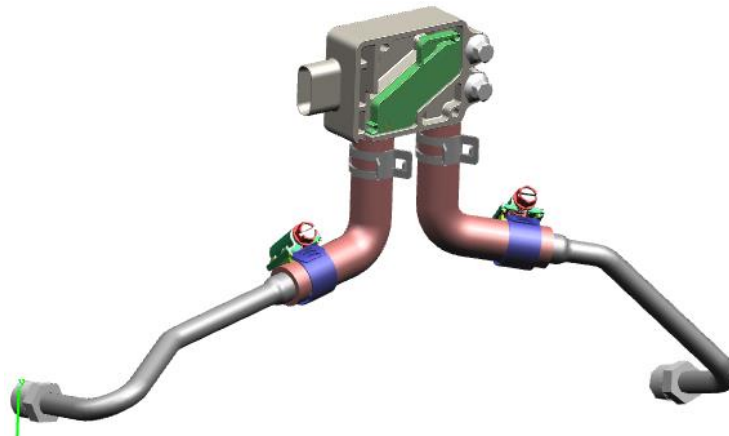


Figure 7-3

### 7.3.2 Delta P Pressure Sensor Configuration

No configuration via Perkins Electronic Technician (Perkins EST) service tool is required for the Delta P Pressure Sensor.

### 7.3.3 Delta P Pressure Sensor Installation

The sensor is installed at the factory for full and partial aftertreatment configuration.

For full remote aftertreatment configuration the sensor should be located remotely from the engine and engine exhaust system and should avoid locations susceptible to freezing during engine operation. The sensor pipe ports should point downwards and must not exceed +/-15degrees from the vertical. Use an M6 screw with a 10mm washer to attach the sensor to the mounting surface. The first wiring harness clipping position must be within 200mm of the sensor socket.

When a remote AT is selected, a link harness may be required to connect the DPF Delta P sensor to the On-Engine connector.

### 7.3.4 Delta P Pressure Sensor Schematic

For all the aftertreatment options, the DPF Delta P sensor is connected through the 47 pins Engine interface connector, as shown below:

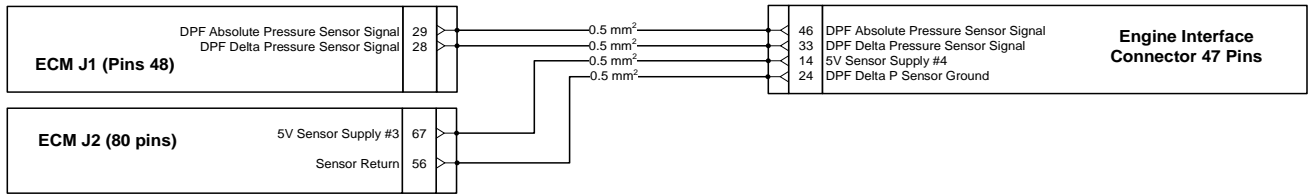


Figure 7-4

No wiring is required if the ECU link lead harness is used.

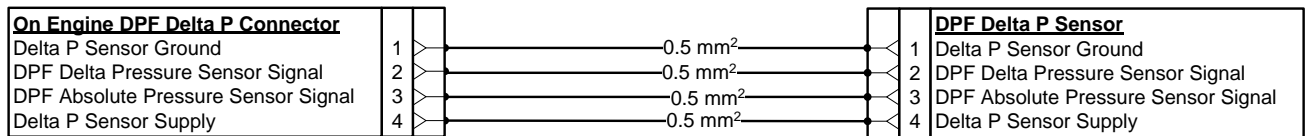


Figure 7-5

For Remote aftertreatment configuration, an additional link harness is required to connect the DPF Delta P sensor to the On-Engine connector.

### 7.3.5 DPF Delta P Connector Information

This information is only needed, when using a Full Remote Aftertreatment requiring an additional link harness between the DPF Delta P sensor and the On-Engine Connector.

| On-Engine Delta Pressure Connector (For remote AT Only)   |          |                 |     |         |            |
|---|----------|-----------------|-----|---------|------------|
| Component Description                                     | Supplier | Supplier Part # | Qty | Part #  | Kit Part # |
| 4 Pin Delta P Sensor Connector - Code A - Connector Black | Tyco     | 1-1564559-1     | 1   | T431930 | T432696    |
| Pin (Silver)  | Tyco     | 1718760-3       | 4   | T432660 |            |
| Wire Seal (Green)   | AMP      | 967067-1        | 4   | T432661 |            |

Table 7.5

| Delta Pressure Sensor Connector (For remote AT Only)      |          |                 |     |         |            |
|---|----------|-----------------|-----|---------|------------|
| Component Description                                     | Supplier | Supplier Part # | Qty | Part #  | Kit Part # |
| 4 Pin Delta P Sensor Connector - Code A - Connector Black | Tyco     | 1-1718645-1     | 1   | T431531 | T432697    |
| Socket (Silver)   | Tyco     | 1452668-3       | 4   | T432662 |            |
| Wire Seal (Green)   | AMP      | 967067-1        | 4   | T432661 |            |

Table 7.6

### 7.3.6 DPF Delta P component I/O

| Delta Pressure Sensor I/O |                                     |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Pin                       | Function                            |
| 1                         | DPF Delta P Ground                  |
| 2                         | DPF Delta Pressure Sensor Signal    |
| 3                         | DPF Absolute Pressure Sensor Signal |
| 4                         | DPF Delta P Sensor Supply           |

Table 7.7

## 8.0 Starting and Stopping the Engine

### 8.1 Starting the Engine

Unlike mechanically controlled fuel systems, no customer connection to the fuel pump solenoid is necessary. To activate the engine ECM switched battery voltage needs to be constantly supplied to pin J1-9. When the ECM is active the engine crankshaft needs to be rotated above a minimum cranking speed, a typical cranking speed is 180rpm (this will differ dependent on the application). Once the ECM has determined engine cranking speed and engine position, fuel pressure and delivery will be controlled. The engine must achieve at least 100rpm during cranking to enable fuel injection.

The most popular way to control engine starting is by a specifically designed 3 position key switch. The key switch controls battery voltage to the key switch input and the starter motor circuit. Some applications may require a 4-position switch to run auxiliary equipment when the engine is not running.

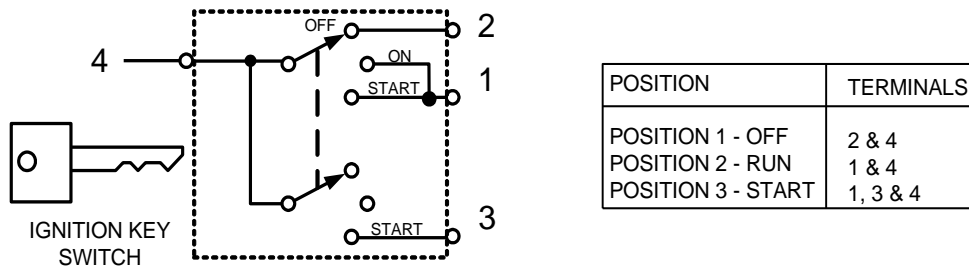


Figure 8-1

Automatic Starting – Some applications need to be started automatically. There is no automatic start feature available on this product. If an automatic start sequence is required the following points must be considered:

- Start Aid - Wait to Start Control
- Starter Cranking Duration
- Starter Abutment Detection
- Number of Start Attempts
- Starter Disengagement Speed
- Warm Up Period
- Cool Down Period
- ECM power down sequence

The ECM software considers the engine running when the engine speed is 100rpm below the desired engine speed or has reached 400rpm, at this point after a predetermined period of time the engine will switch from cranking fuel maps to running fuel maps. It is important to note that starter motors must be disengaged earlier to prevent the starter motor being driven by the engine. The engine is considered stalled when the engine has dropped below 300rpm.

For more information regarding the correct specification and installation of a starting and charging system please refer to the Starting and Charging System A&I Manual.

#### 8.1.1 Starter Motor Control

##### 8.1.1.1 ECM controlled Starter Motor Feature

This feature will enable the configuration of the following starter motor conditions; activation input type, Crank terminate speed, maximum cranking time and maximum cranking cool down time.

The starter motor feature will help to prevent the following scenarios:

- **Starter Overrun**  
 The starter relay will be turned off when the maximum crank speed is exceeded for a continuous period of >0.5 seconds.  
 The maximum crank speed is configurable via the electronic service tool.  
 The debounce time period will be hardcoded in the engine software.
- **Rapid re-engagement delay**  
 The starter relay shall be turned Off, it shall remain off for a duration of 4 seconds (rest interval). After the rest interval of 4 second the starter relay can be turned on again.  
 The rest interval is configurable via the electronic service tool
- **Starter Overheat Protection**  
 After 30 seconds of continuous cranking the operator shall be notified by a level 2 diagnostic code and the starter relay shall be disengaged to cool down.  
 The minimum cool down interval between starts is set to 120 seconds  
 To override the cool down period the customer can key cycle the engine ECM and continue to start the engine.  
 To override the cool down period the customer can hold down the start request for 5 seconds and the start relay will be activated.
- **Click No crank (tooth abutment)**  
 If no engine speed is measured within 2 seconds of a start command, The starter relay will disengaged. After a rest interval of 2 seconds the starter relay can be turned on again.
- **Engage into a running engine**  
 When measured engine speed is greater than zero the starter relay must not be transitioning from Off to ON. When engine speed is measured at < 0 rpm the starter relay may be engaged.

**8.1.1.2 Starter Motor Control Operation**

The engine ECM may be configured to control and interlock the engine starter motor operation. When configured in the engine software a relay may be connected to the engine ECM to interrupt the electrical supply to the engine starter motor solenoid (T50). The engine ECM will monitor specific inputs to determine when to engage or disengage the starter motor.

**8.1.1.3 Starter Motor Control Configuration**

If the engine ECM is to control any part of the starter motor relay, then the Starter Motor Control feature must be enabled within the engine ECM using Perkins Electronic Service Tool (Perkins EST). You can access this feature in the configuration screen of Perkins EST. ECM control is set as default, shown as “Electrical”, if the machine control or wiring is to control the starter relay, then this setting must be changed.

| Configuration Field Name | Configurable Options        | Default Configuration |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| Starting System Type     | Electrical<br>Not Installed | Electrical            |

Table 8.1

If the engine ECM is to control the starter motor then the ECM must be configured to be setup to the correct input type to the ECM for the cranking control, either hardwired switch input or J1939 message, sections 8.1.1.4 and 8.1.1.5 respectively. Table shows the input configuration set in the engine ECM accessed by Perkins EST.

| Configuration Field Name                   | Configurable Options         | Default Configuration |
|--|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Engine Starter Control Input Configuration | Hardwired Input<br>CAN Input | Hardwired Input       |

Table 8.2

**8.1.1.4 Starter Motor Hardwired Control Installation**

When the engine ECM is switched on the software will monitor input J1-32. When battery voltage is detected on input J1-32 the relay connected to output J1-18 will be switched on. The relay will not be switched on if the engine speed is greater than 0 rpm or if there are engine stop/shutdown requests.

The engine ECM will switch off the outputs controlling the relay once the engine speed reaches a specific threshold based on engine temperature. The maximum period that the relay will be switched on is 30 seconds. The relay will be switched off immediately if a shutdown request is received, or if the battery voltage is removed from input J1-32.

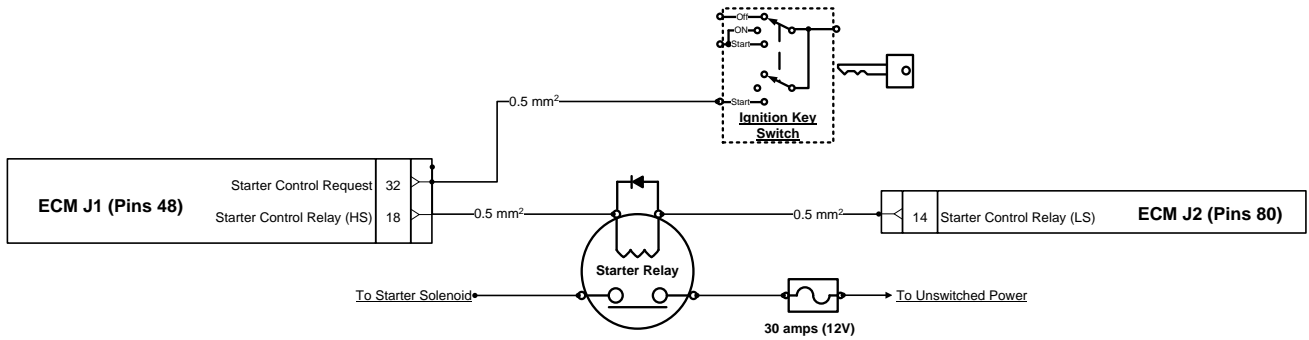


Figure 8-2 Starter Motor Control Hardwired Installation

**8.1.1.5 Starter Motor J1939 Control Installation**

When the engine ECM is switched on the software will monitor the J1939 Network for the Start Request message (SPN 7745). When the Start Request Message is detected on the J1939 Network, the ECM will wait for the Start Consent message (SPN 7746). When both messages are active the relay connected to output J1-18 will be switched on. The relay will not be switched on if the engine speed is greater than 0 rpm or if there are engine stop/shutdown requests (SPN 970).

The engine ECM will switch off the outputs controlling the relay once the engine speed reaches a specific threshold based on engine temperature. The maximum period that the relay will be switched on is 30 seconds. The relay will be switched off immediately if a shutdown request is received (Hardwired or J1939), or if a Start Abort Request message (SPN 7747) is received.

The Engine ECM will not switch off the outputs controlling the relay after the Start Consent and the Start Request messages are received. This is to avoid the stop of cranking when the J1939 message is lost.

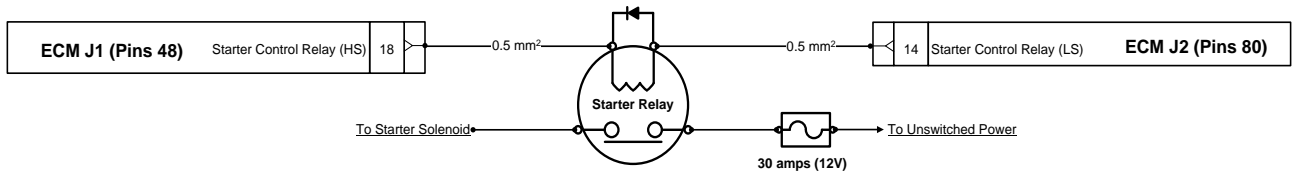


Figure 8-3 Starter Motor Control J1939 Installation

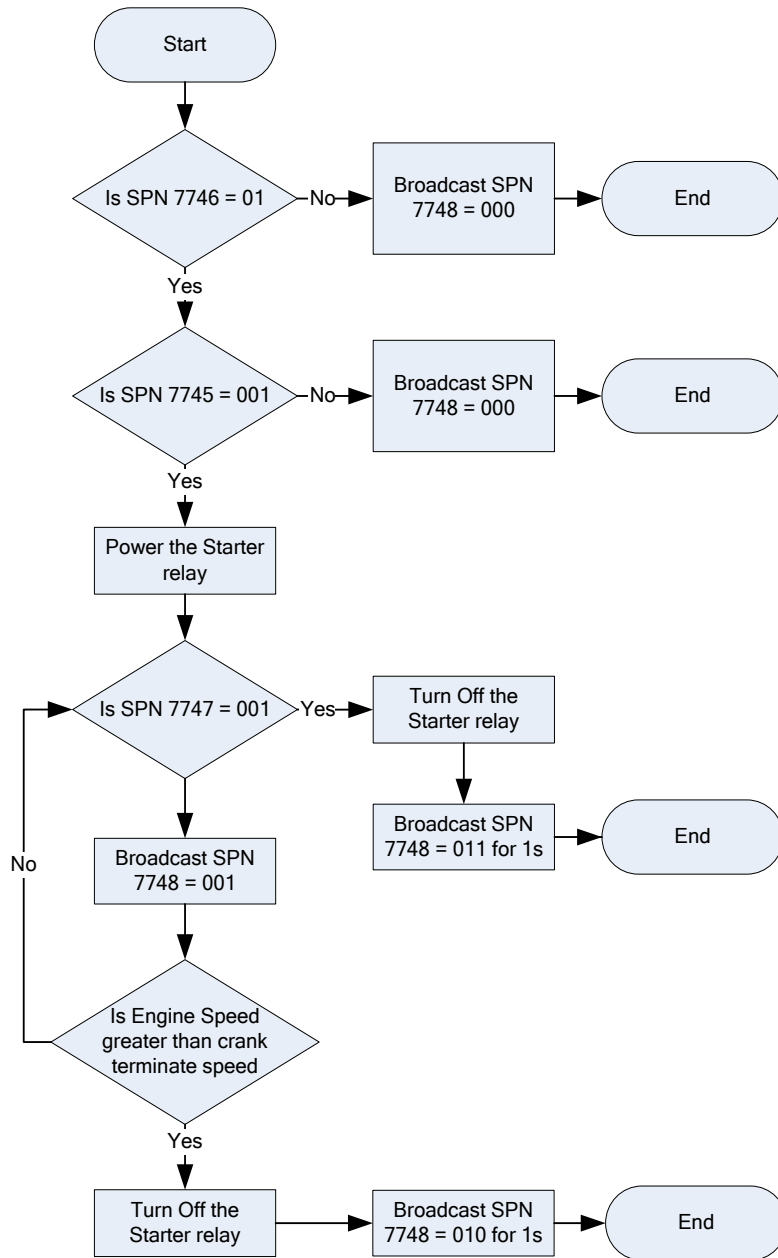


Figure 8-4 J1939 Start Logic

**8.1.1.6 Starter Motor J1939 Messages**

| PGN #         | PGN Description              | SPN # | SPN Description  |
|---------------|------------------------------|-------|--|
| 61677<br>F0ED | Engine Start Control (ENGSC) | 7745  | Engine Start Request   |
|               |                              |       | Bit State 00 = Start not requested<br>Bit State 01 = Start requested, operator type<br>Bit State 10 = Start requested, automatic type  |
|               |                              | 7746  | Engine Start Consent   |
|               |                              |       | Bit State 000 = No consent<br>Bit State 001 = Consent to operator requested start only<br>Bit State 010 = Consent to automatic start only<br>Bit State 011 = Consent to both   |
|               |                              | 7747  | Engine Start Abort Request   |
|               |                              |       | Bit State 00 = Abort not requested<br>Bit State 01 = Abort Requested   |
|               |                              | 7748  | Engine Starter 1 Feedback  |
|               |                              |       | Bit State 000 = Starter not commanded<br>Bit State 001 = Starter command latched, starter active<br>Bit State 010 = Starter command unlatched, start completed<br>Bit State 011 = Starter command unlatched, start abort command<br>Bit State 100 = Starter command unlatched, start aborted by starter controller |

Table 8.3

**8.2 Stopping the Engine (and Preventing Restart)**

There is often some confusion about the different methods and devices used to either stop the engine or to prevent it from starting. These devices may be divided into the following categories:

- Ignition Keyswitch
- Battery disconnect Switch (also known as a battery Isolation Switch)
- Remote Stop Button
- Engine Auxilairy Shutdown Switch (J1939 Datalink stop switch)

Each of these devices is described below to assist the OEM in selecting the method that is most suitable for machine and market. It remains the responsibility of the OEM to ensure compliance of the machine with any specific legislation for the territories into which it is sold.

It is recommended that the OEM perform a risk assessment such as a Failure Mode Effects Analysis (FMEA) on the application to determine the most appropriate method of stopping the engine and/or preventing it from being restarted.

**Note:** Only the ignition key switch and the Engine Auxiliary Shutdown Switch should be used as primary engine shutdown methods, to prevent damage under prolonged use of secondary shutdown devices.

It should be noted that under all circumstances the engine ECM will remain active i.e. electrically active post ignition key power off. This is required for a number of engine calibration activities to take place. For this reason the main ECM supply power (unswitched battery) must not be removed during normal engine stopping. Removing the ECM unswitched battery supply will cause these calibrations to be interrupted and the values measured on the previous key cycle will be used. If the engine ECM is operated for long periods without performing these calibrations, engine performance may be affected and a diagnostic code will be raised. During this period the engine ECM will also require a certain level of current from the system batteries for a short period of time. For this reason care must be taken when working on the engine post ignition key off.

## 8.2.1 Ignition Key switch

It is a Perkins requirement that all machines have a simple intuitive and accessible method of stopping the engine. This will normally be a directly wired Ignition Key switch. When the key switch is turned to the off position or when the key is removed, power **must** be removed from the ignition key switch pin J1-9 of the ECM J1 connector.

Activation of the key switch must only affect the power supplied to pin J1-9 of the engine ECM J1 connector. All un-switched battery supply connections must remain connected via the engine ECM relay for a minimum of ~20 seconds.

## 8.2.2 Battery Disconnect Switches (also known Battery Isolation Switches)

Battery disconnect switches are usually fitted near the battery or the engine compartment of a machine. On some machines there may be a small number of low current devices which are not switched off by this device e.g. clocks or anti-theft tracking devices.

The function of a battery disconnect switch is as follows:

- Prevent battery discharge during vehicle shipping or storage
- Prevent service technician from danger caused by in advertent engine crank or start. To offer good protection of service personnel it is possible to provide a switch which can be locked in the open position (e.g. with a padlock) and the key removed and given to the service engineer who is working on the dangerous components.

The battery isolation switch is not a suitable method for stopping an engine, as it is not guaranteed to stop the engine as the ECM may continue to operate with power generated by the alternator.

It is also possible that opening the battery disconnect switch when the engine is running will cause an "alternator load dump". This is a kind of electrical transient that can cause damage to electronic components on the engine and machine.

Perkins recommends the battery disconnect switch is fitted in the negative path, as close as possible to the battery.

## 8.2.3 User Defined Shutdown (Remote Shutdown)

### 8.2.3.1 User defined Shutdown Switch Operation

Remote stop is intended to provide a convenient method of stopping the engine. It is not designed to be fail safe and so should not be used to assure the protection of either personnel or equipment.

Remote stop buttons may be used on large machines, which can be operated from ground level and where the operator wants to stop the machine without climbing into the cab.

There are a number of variations on remote stop button circuits. The engine uses a single normally open contact, which must be closed to stop the engine.

**Please be aware that if this feature is installed with a Hardwired switch the engine may shut down if the switch malfunctions or if the ECM pin is accidentally grounded through some other means.**

The remote stop button will function as follows:

- When the switched is closed then the engine will stop. The ECM will remain ON, so it will continue to communicate over J1939 and with the service tool. Note however that it will continue to draw power from the battery so if it is left in this state it will eventually result in a flat battery.
- The engine may be restarted by opening the switch and activating the starter motor, no Key cycle is required.
- The red “mushroom” emergency stop buttons must not be used for remote stop functions as they may be mistaken for emergency stop buttons.

**8.2.3.2 User Defined Shutdown Switch Configuration**

The user defined shutdown feature must be enabled within the engine ECM using Perkins Electronic Service Tool (Perkins EST).

| Configuration field Name            | Configurable Options | Default Configuration |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| User Defined Shutdown Enable Status | Disabled<br>Enabled  | Disabled              |

Table 8.4

**8.2.3.3 User Defined Shutdown Switch Installation**

A single switch to ground input on pin J2-45 of the ECM J2 Connector (Several stop buttons can therefore be connected in parallel).

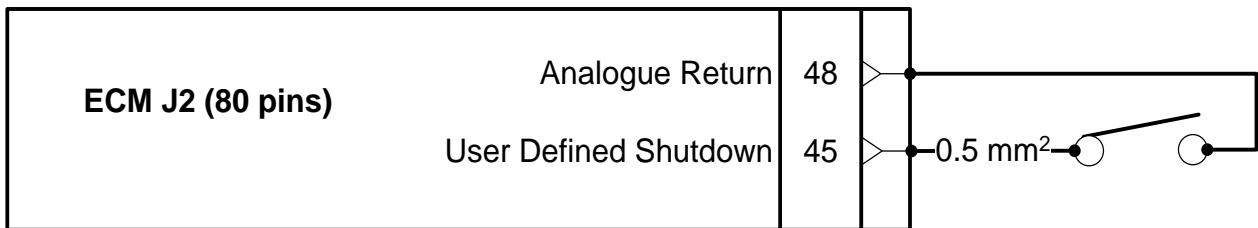


Figure 8-5 Remote Shutdown Feature Installation Wiring

**8.2.3.4 Engine Auxilairy Shutdown Switch**

As with the remote shutdown stop button, the Engine Auxilairy Shutdown Switch is not a fail safe option and does not meet the requirements of emergency stop legislation, so should not be relied on to assure the safety of machine operators or other personnel.

Engine Auxilairy Shutdown Switch may be used in the following circumstances;

- Immobilisers.
- Machine protection strategies.
- Automatic machine features (e.g. idle shutdown timer).
- Stopping machines by radio control or other telemetry devices.
- Geo-fencing is a particular application, where a machine will not operate outside defined map coordinates.

It is recommended that if such features are implemented, then they are clearly documented and communicated to the final users and owners of the machine. If this is not done then there may be complaints that the engine is stopping unexpectedly.

**8.2.3.5 Engine Auxiliary Shutdown Switch Message**

| PGN # | PGN Description                      | SPN # | SPN Description                        |
|-------|--------------------------------------|-------|--|
| 61441 | Electronic Brake Controller 1 (EBC1) | 970   | Engine Auxiliary Shutdown Switch       |
|       |                                      |       | Bit State 00 = Off (Injection Enabled) |
|       |                                      |       | Bit State 01 = ON (Injection Disabled) |

Table 8.5

**8.2.4 Engine Emergency Stops**

It is the customer responsibility to complete a risk assessment on their product when considering the use and function of an emergency stop device. If residual risks remain on the product that the customer wants to mitigate by use of an emergency stop function, the following methods of emergency stopping the engine may be considered. The most appropriate method of emergency stop will depend on the application and appropriate regulations. Using a combination of the methods below may provide a more robust emergency stop solution. Using the emergency stop in situations other than an emergency could result in engine damage. In the event of an injector failure, cutting electrical power on electronic common rail engines may not stop the engine. For detailed information on how to implement the following methods of emergency stop, consult your application lead.

**Cut electrical power to engine – Unswitched positive** - Power should be isolated between the battery positive terminal, ignition key switch and the battery positive pins on the engine ECM.

**Cut electrical power to engine – Un-switched positive and negative** - Power should be isolated between the battery positive terminal, ignition key switch and the battery positive pins on the engine ECM. Cutting negative return - A double pole/double throw switch should be placed in a position on machine that will ensure main negative power and main positive power are disconnected upon switch activation.

**Cut air supply to engine** - Slicer valve placed after the turbocharger compressor.

**8.2.5 Common problems with the application of stop devices**

It is possible, although extremely rare, that diesel engines continue to run even if all electrical power is removed. This can happen when high quantities of oil vapour or other inflammable gases are present in the air into the engine. The only way to prevent this is to provide an air inlet shut-off valve (slicer valve). It is not common practice to fit such devices to all engines, but they should be considered where there is a risk of flammable gases (e.g. in petroleum applications), or where the application demands high engine grade ability (slopes).

Some hazards are present when the engine is being cranked by the starter motor, as well as when it is running. For example, components will still rotate, hydraulic pressure will still be present, and fuel may still be pumped to high pressures.

If an emergency stop button is pressed, to cut power to ECM and ignition, but is released while the engine is still turning, it is possible for the engine to continue to run.

**8.2.6 Engine Idle Shutdown**

**8.2.6.1 Engine Idle Shutdown Operation**

This feature allows the user to configure the engine to shutdown (disable Injection) after a set period of time.

The engine speed and engine ECM input (J1-37) / SPN 7579 status will be monitored. The engine shutdown timer will start accumulating when the engine is at low idle and switch input J1-37 is closed / SPN 7579 is set to "01". If the engine shutdown timer exceeds the low idle delay time configured in the engine software, the engine will shut down.

- When the engine is about to be shut down the following event will be broadcasted by the engine software;
  - 594-31 – Engine idle shutdown driver alert mode.
- When the engine has shut down the following event will be broadcasted by the engine software;
  - 593-31 – Engine idle shutdown has shutdown engine.

The engine software can be configured to provide a warning lamp on prior to the engine shutdown.

The engine idle shutdown will only work if the engine has been running, if the engine coolant temperature is below 70°C then the feature will be disabled until engine coolant is above 70°C.

The timer will reset if the switch input is opened / SPN 7579 set to “00” or if the key switch is cycled. It is recommended that where possible this feature is used to prevent extended periods at low idle.

**Note: The Thermal management strategy will always have the priority over the Low Idle Shutdown. The Low Idle Shutdown timer will be stopped during the Thermal Management strategy.**

**8.2.6.2 Engine Idle Shutdown Configuration**

The engine idle shutdown feature must be enabled within the engine ECM using Perkins Electronic Service Tool (Perkins EST). You can access this feature in the configuration screen of Perkins EST.

| Configuration field names                                       | Configuration Options | Default Configuration |
|---|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Engine Idle Shutdown Enable Status                              | Enabled<br>Disabled   | Disabled              |
| Engine Idle Shutdown Delay Time                                 | 1 – 1440 minutes      | 5 minutes             |
| Engine Idle Shutdown Ambient Temperature Override enable status | Enabled<br>Disabled   | Disabled              |
| Engine Idle Shutdown Minimum Ambient Air Temperature            | -40 – 99°C            | 0°C                   |
| Engine Idle Shutdown Maximum Ambient Air Temperature            | -39°C – 100°C         | 100°C                 |

Table 8.6

### 8.2.6.3 Engine Idle Shutdown Installation

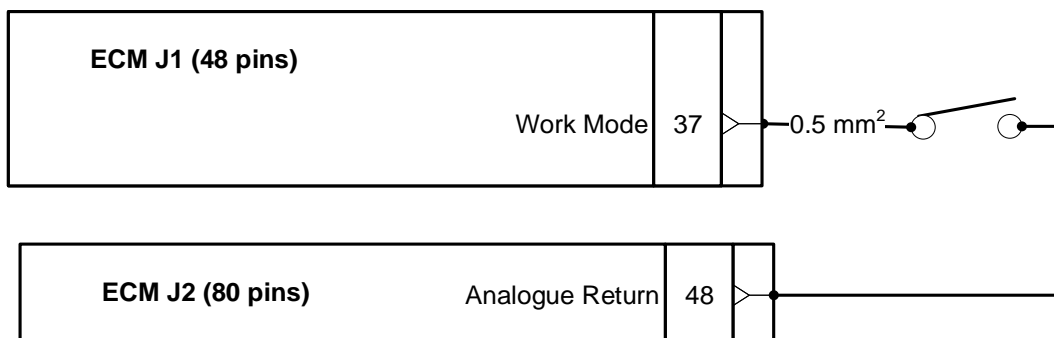


Figure 8-6

### 8.2.6.4 Engine Idle Shutdown Message

It is also possible to allow the Low Idle Shutdown feature by sending the following J1939 message to the ECM which gives permission for the ECM to shut the engine down, once the conditions in the table above have been met.

| J1939 PGN                | Parameter Number | SPN reference                                 | State  |
|--------------------------|------------------|---|--|
| 8500 CAB Message 2 (CM2) | 34048            | Elevated Engine Speed Allowed Switch SPN 7579 | 00 Not Allowed<br>01 Allowed<br>10 Error<br>11 Not Available |

Table 8.7

## 9.0 Engine Speed Demand

It is necessary to select a device that converts the speed requirements of the engine operator or controller to an electrical signal recognized by the engine ECM. There are eight types of speed demand inputs available on the 400 Series engine;

- Analogue Throttle speed control 1
- Analogue Throttle speed control 2
- PWM Throttle Speed control 1
- PWM Throttle Speed control 2
- PTO Mode
- Multi-Position Switch (MPTS)
- Torque Speed Control (TSC1) – Temporary Powertrain Control purpose
- Torque Speed Control (TSC1) – Accelerator Pedal Control purpose

The speed demand type must be carefully considered and appropriate for the application.

There are two dedicated software input channels that can be configured to accept specific types of speed demand inputs. The valid combinations and throttle logic are given in Figure 9-1. PTO mode can be used with Analogue combinations; it cannot be used with multi position switch. The J1939 TSC1 parameter will override any speed demand input when broadcast. Droop is applied to the requested desired engine speed only when All Speed governing is selected.

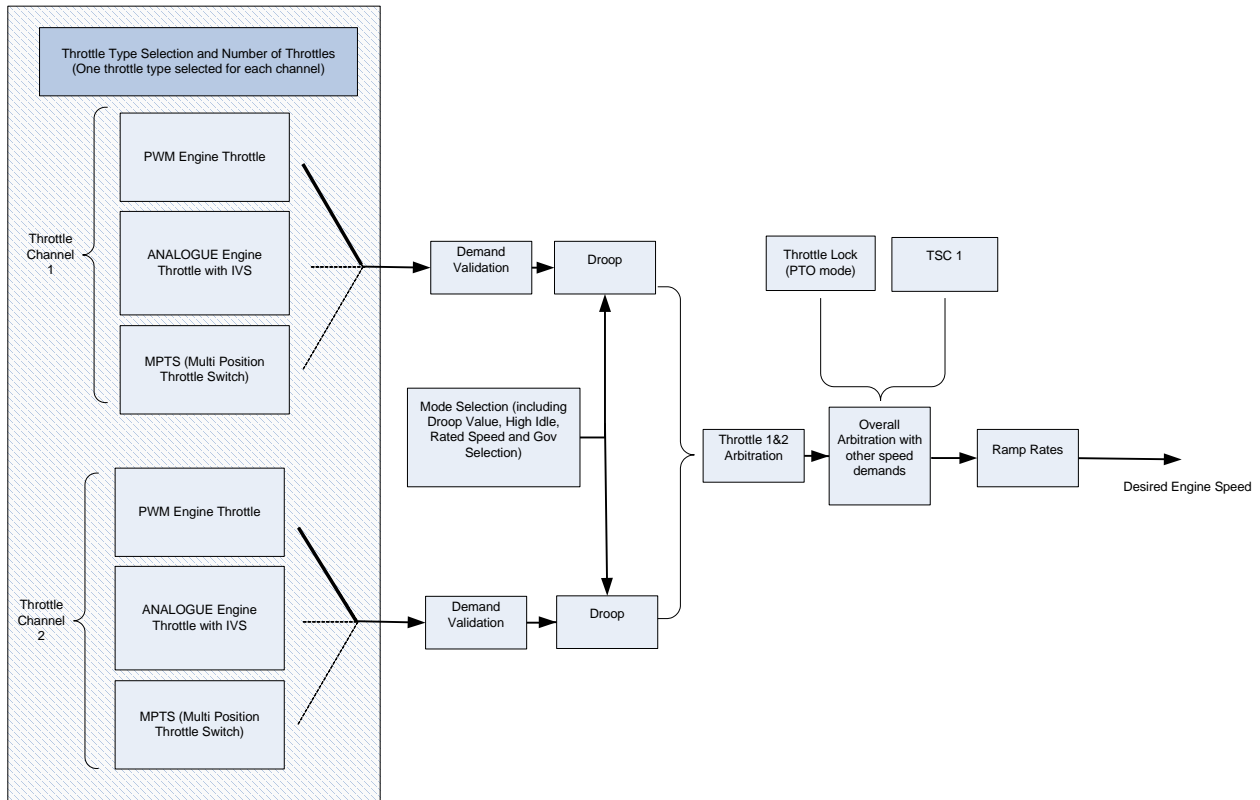
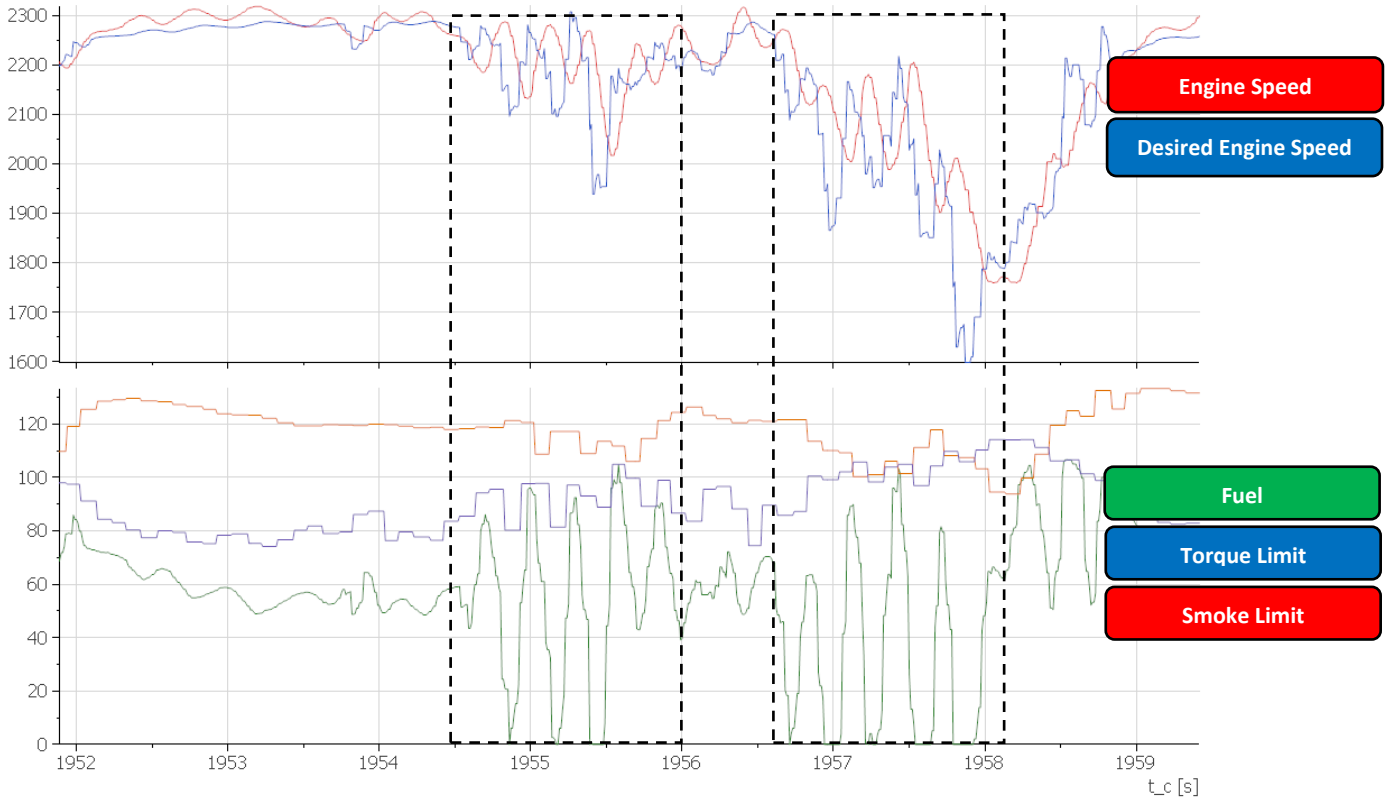


Figure 9-1

For machines with TSC1, Analogue or PWM throttle types, unstable machine throttle input / fast transient response for demanded speed can result in an erratic fuelling command, which can cause aftertreatment regen to abort by restricting the use of engine thermal management mode.

The graphs below show how abrupt changes to the desired engine speed may affect engine fuelling.



A way to address the 'noisy' desired engine speed signal is to apply a low pass filter to the machine desired speed demand. Depending on the throttle type this can be achieved either by filtering the desired speed in the machine controller or by damping the actual throttle. After filtering, some oscillations might still remain which can be further improved by tuning the fuel governor gains.

## 9.1 Analogue Throttle Sensor

### 9.1.1 Analogue Throttle Sensor Operation

Two inputs are available for Analogue throttle devices, which may be pedal, lever or cable operated. The Analogue sensor gives a DC Analog output in the range 0.6 to 4.0 volts, when connected to the engine ECM. The engine ECM provides a regulated 5V 200mA power supply to support Analogue Throttle sensor 1 and a second regulated 5V 200mA power supply for Analogue Sensor 2.

The Analogue throttle sensor should use non-contact Hall Effect technology. Robust potentiometer contact sensors designed for use in vehicles may be considered, **and under no circumstances should ordinary carbon track or wire wound potentiometers be used, as they will not be reliable.**

For all mobile applications, and those where a rapid change in engine speed could cause a hazard, an idle validation switch is required. The idle validation switch closes to ground when the sensor is in the minimum position.

Off idle switches and kick down switches are not monitored by the engine ECM.

This Analogue input must only be used to control engine speed from a direct operator input, and is not suitable as the mechanism for speed control by another electronic controller.

There is no special requirement for a relationship between angular movement of the pedal and output voltage.

This document does not measure component acceptability in terms of:

- Temperature
- Vibration
- Electromagnetic Compatibility
- Design Life
- Supply voltage requirements (min, max, stability)
- Legal Compliance

It is the responsibility of the OEM and the throttle device manufacturer to ensure that the component is suitable for the application in which it is to be used.

### 9.1.2 Analogue Throttle Sensor Configuration

Before an analogue throttle can be used the configurable parameters must be programmed into the ECM via the service tool. These parameters are selectable in the main throttle configuration screen.

### 9.1.3 Evaluating Component Compatibility (Testing)

Before using an analogue throttle on the 400 Series it is the responsibility of the OEM to check the throttle is compatible. If the results of the voltage outputs from the sensor are not in the ranges specified in Table 9.1, then the device will not be compatible with the default settings in the ECM. You can contact your Perkins Application Engineering Department to determine whether it will be possible to configure the input of the throttle to be compatible with engine ECM.

| Test | Parameter   | Unit   | Min  | Nominal | Max  |
|------|---|--------|------|---------|------|
| 1    | Output at min position                                  | Volts  | 0.45 | 0.6     | 0.7  |
| 2    | Output at min position: forced                          | Volts  | 0.4  | 0.6     | -    |
| 3    | Output at max position                                  | Volts  | 3.8  | 4.0     | -    |
| 4    | Output at max position: forced                          | Volts  | -    | 4.0     | 4.5  |
| 5    | IVS switch closed voltage                               | Volts  | -    | -       | 1.2  |
| 6    | IVS switch open voltage                                 | Volts  | 4    | 10      | 24   |
| 7    | IVS target switch point against analogue throttle input | Volts  | 1.08 | 1.15    | 1.22 |
| 8    | Potenriometer Track Resistance                          | K Ohms | 1    | 2.5     | 3    |

Table 9.1

### 9.1.4 Analogue Throttle Sensor Installation

Figure 9-2 demonstrates how a customer should provide the electrical connections to the ECM for each analogue throttle sensor.

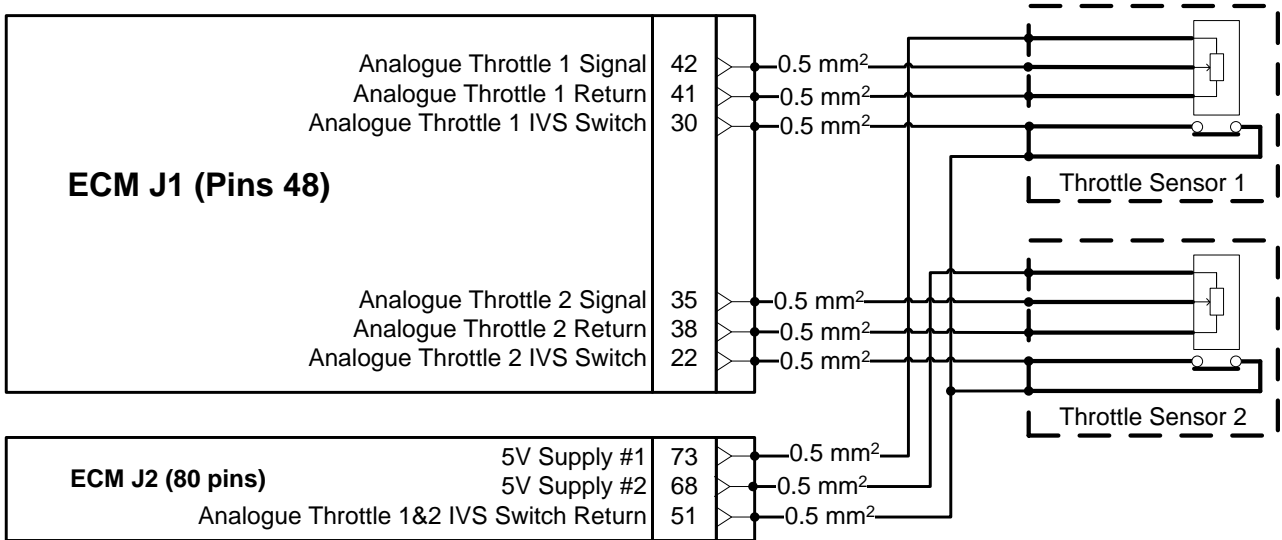


Figure 9-2

### 9.1.5 Idle Validation Switch Compatibility Test

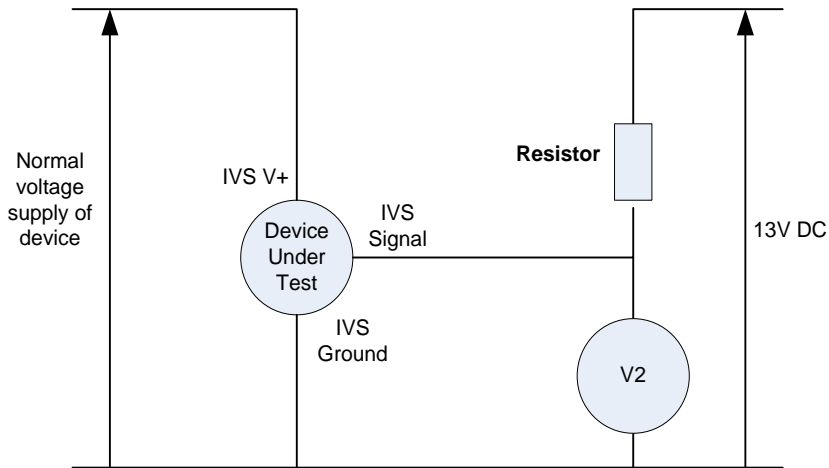


Figure 9-3

**Resistor** value should be **2k4** for the A6E10 ECM.

The above test circuit replicates the internal circuit of the ECM to allow the bench testing of the IVS on an analogue throttle.

## 9.2 PWM Throttle Sensor

### 9.2.1 PWM Throttle Sensor Operation

Two inputs are available for PWM throttle devices, which may be pedal, lever or cable operated. The PWM sensor gives a Squared wave output of a 5 volts amplitude, which the duty cycle varies from 20% to 80%, when connected to the engine ECM. The engine ECM provides a regulated 5V 200mA power supply to support Analogue Throttle sensor 1 and a second regulated 5V 200mA power supply for Analogue Sensor 2.

A pulse width modulated signal is a signal whose voltage is either at a maximum or a minimum. The duration of the on time as opposed to the off time determines the strength of the outputted signal. This means that the outputted PWM signal takes the form of a square wave as shown in Figure 9-4.

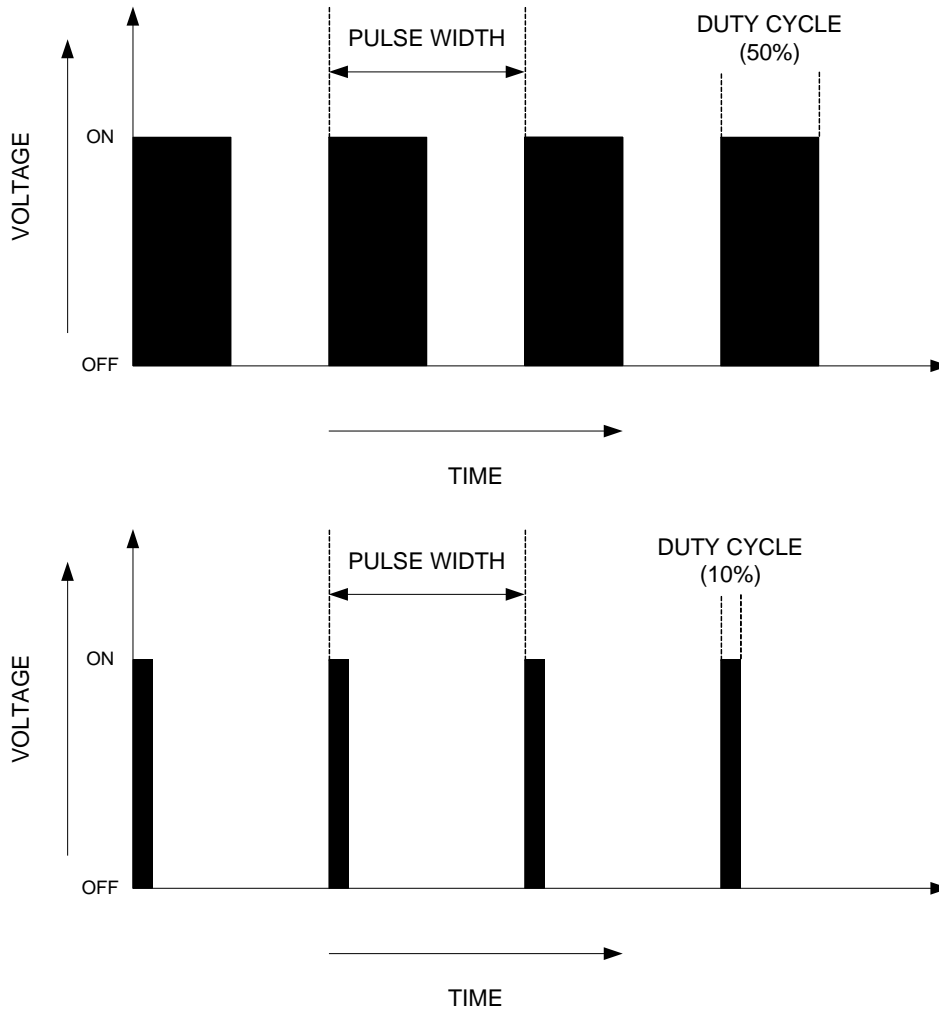


Figure 9-4 Pulse Width Modulation Waveform

Figure 9-4 shows that the square wave voltage is either fully on or fully off, the only parameter, which changes is the duration of the on time compared to the off time. The time between one pulses rising edge and the next is classed as the pulse width and the ratio within this pulse width of the ON time compared to the OFF time is defined as the duty cycle. In the case of the Perkins PWM drivers the larger the duty cycle the stronger the signal.

This PWM Throttle input must only be used to control engine speed from a direct operator input, and is not suitable as the mechanism for speed control by another electronic controller.

There is no special requirement for a relationship between angular movement of the pedal and output voltage.

This document does not measure component acceptability in terms of:

- Temperature
- Vibration
- Electromagnetic Compatibility
- Design Life
- Supply voltage requirements (min, max, stability)
- Legal Compliance

It is the responsibility of the OEM and the throttle device manufacturer to ensure that the component is suitable for the application in which it is to be used.

### 9.2.2 PWM Throttle Sensor Configuration

Before a PWM throttle can be used the configurable parameters must be programmed into the ECM via the service tool. These parameters are selectable in the main throttle configuration screen.

### 9.2.3 Evaluating Component Compatibility (Testing)

Before using a PWM throttle on the 400 Series it is the responsibility of the OEM to check the throttle is compatible. If the results of the outputs from the sensor are not in the ranges specified in Table 9.2, then the device will not be compatible with the default settings in the ECM. You can contact your Perkins Application Engineering Department to determine whether it will be possible to configure the input of the throttle to be compatible with engine ECM.

| Test | Parameter                      | Unit  | Min | Nominal | Max |
|------|--------------------------------|-------|-----|---------|-----|
| 1    | Output at min position         | %     | 10  | 16      | 22  |
| 2    | Output at max position: forced | %     | 75  | 82      | 90  |
| 3    | Driver frequency               | Hz    | 450 | 500     | 550 |
| 4    | Driver Amplitude               | Volts |     | 8       |     |

Table 9.2

**Note: If a 5V powered PWM sensor cannot be sourced it is possible to use a 8-32V PWM sensor instead. Power for this sensor can be battery voltage supply from the Main Power Relay instead of the %v power supply from the ECM.**

### 9.2.4 PWM Throttle Sensor Installation

Figure 9-5 demonstrates how a customer should provide the electrical connections to the ECM for each PWM throttle sensor.

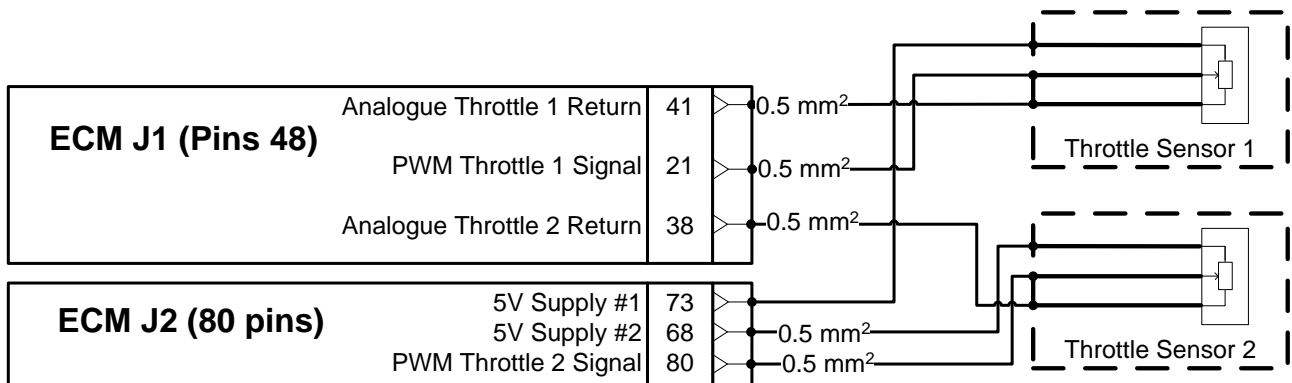


Figure 9-5

## 9.3 PTO mode

### 9.3.1 PTO Mode Operation

Throttle Lock mode is also referred to as “PTO Mode”, “engine speed cruise control” or “set speed control”

Throttle Lock mode is a cost effective way to control engine speed as it only requires switched inputs.

Another benefit is that it can be used in an application where it is necessary to control the engine speed from several different points on the machine.

The disadvantage of controlling engine speed via Throttle Lock mode is that it takes some time to ramp up or down to the required speed.

**To improve diagnostic detection and to make this feature safer, new logic has been introduced for 904 software. The following 3 pins mentioned below will be monitored and will not activate any functionality until they have seen a state change from OFF to ON.**

- PTO Mode ON/OFF
- PTO Set or Lower
- PTO Raise or Resume

**This means that if the ECM is keyed ON with one of the switches in the ON position (caused either by operator depressing the button or a Short circuit), the pin will not perform its function until the individual pin has been cycled OFF, then ON again. This effectively detects a short circuit at start-up.**

The feature is operated by 5 switches / pushbutton and an optional second speed switch, which are shown in Table 9.3.

| Throttle Lock Mode Configuration |                |  |  |
|----------------------------------|----------------|--|--|
| Switch Description               | ECM Pin Number | Raise / Lower mode                                   | Set / Resume mode  |
| On / Off Switch                  | J1-16          | Enables and disables the Throttle Lock mode function | Enables and disables the Throttle Lock mode function                                     |
| Raise / Resume                   | J1-26          | Raise only Function                                  | Raises the desired engine speed and functions as a resume when set speeds are stored     |
| Lower / Set                      | J1-22          | Lower only Function                                  | Lowers the desired engine speed and functions as a set or memorize current speed demand. |
| Disengage                        | J1-15          | N/A  | Disengages the current Throttle Lock mode.   |

Table 9.3 Throttle Lock Mode Configuration

Table 9.3 also shows that the Throttle Lock mode can be configured to operate in one of two ways and these are described below

- Ramp up / ramp down only mode. This mode uses three of the 5 available Throttle Lock functions, therefore providing a simpler Throttle Lock operation. In this mode with the On / off switch set to On the engine speed can be raised using the raised switched input. Applying a signal to this input will force the engine speed to accelerate at a rate defined by the Throttle Lock engine acceleration rate until it meets High idle. If the signal is removed at any point the engine will remain at the ACTUAL engine speed.
- Set / Resume mode. This mode provides the full Throttle Lock mode functionality and uses all 5 available functions. This is the standard Throttle Lock format.

The following sections describe the operation of each of the mode switches and configurable settings.

#### **9.3.1.1 ON/OFF switch**

When the switch input is open the PTO mode cannot be engaged, and none of the other buttons will have any effect. When the switch is turned off, any adjusted speeds will be lost.

Important note – To activate the PTO mode feature the customer must configure “Throttle Lock Feature Installation Status” to “Raise / Lower Switch”

#### **9.3.1.2 Raise Switch**

When the PTO mode is activated a momentary press of the raise switch will increment the engine speed by the configured increment value. If the button is held down the engine speed will ramp at the configured PTO ramp rate.

#### **9.3.1.3 Lower Switch**

When the PTO mode is activated a momentary press of the lower switch will decrement the engine speed by the configured decrement value. If the button is held down the engine speed will ramp down at the configured PTO ramp rate.

#### **9.3.1.4 Resume Switch**

When the PTO mode is activated pressing the resume button will set the PTO desired speed to the configured PTO engine speed setting.

#### **9.3.1.5 Preset Speed (Throttle Lock Engine Set Speed #1)**

The preset speed can be programmed via the Perkins Electronic Service Tool (Perkins EST). A speed may be selected such that if the resume button is pressed, then the engine speed will jump straight to this speed.

#### **9.3.1.6 PTO Mode Speed Ramp Rate (Throttle Lock Increment / Decrement Speed Ramp Rate)**

The ramp rate function provides the ability to configure independently the rate at which the engine speed increases (accelerate) when the raise function is selected and the speed decreases (decelerate) when the lower function is selected. These ramp rates are independent of the main throttle ramp rate configurations.

The ramp rates can be programmed via Perkins Electronic Service Tool (Perkins EST). This function is operated when holding down the raise or lower buttons.

#### **9.3.1.7 Example of PTO Mode Operation**

It is recognized that the precise function of the PTO mode is difficult to understand from a written text document.

|                               |  |      |      |      |      |      |             |             |             |             |      |      |             |
|-------------------------------|--|------|------|------|------|------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|------|------|-------------|
| <b>On/Off Switch</b>          | 0  | 1    | 1    | 1    | 1    | 1    | 1           | 1           | 1           | 1           | 1    | 0    | 0           |
| <b>Resume Switch</b>          | 0  | 0    | 1    | 0    | 0    | 0    | 0           | 0           | 0           | 0           | 1    | 0    | 0           |
| <b>Raise Switch</b>           | 0  | 0    | 0    | 0    | 0    | 0    | Quick Close | Hold Closed | 0           | 0           | 0    | 0    | Quick Close |
| <b>Lower Switch</b>           | 0  | 0    | 0    | 0    | 0    | 0    | 0           | 0           | Quick Close | Hold Closed | 0    | 0    | Quick Close |
| <b>Throttle Pedal Demand</b>  | 1200   | 1200 | 1200 | 1200 | 1900 | 1200 | 1200        | 1200        | 1200        | 1200        | 1200 | 1200 | 1200        |
| <b>Memorised Speed</b>        | 1800   | 1800 | 1800 | 1800 | 1800 | 1800 | 1800        | 1800        | 1800        | 1800        | 1800 | 1800 | 1800        |
| <b>Resulting engine speed</b> | 1200   | 1200 | 1800 | 1800 | 1900 | 1800 | 1850        | 2050        | 2000        | 1200        | 1800 | 1200 | 1200        |
| <b>Comments</b>               | <p>PTO Mode in neutral state</p> <p>PTO Mode ON</p> <p>PTO jumps to memorised speed</p> <p>Pedal overrides PTO (max wins)</p> <p>Speed raised by 50 rpm</p> <p>Speed ramps up</p> <p>Lowered by 50rpm</p> <p>Speed ramps down</p> <p>Resumes to set speed</p> <p>PTO Mode Off</p> <p>No effect if both buttons are pressed at once</p> |      |      |      |      |      |             |             |             |             |      |      |             |

Table 9.4 illustrates the operation of the PTO mode feature. In this example the preset speed has been set on the service tool to 1800rpm, the step size to 50 rpm and the ramp rate is set to 200 rpm/sec.

|                               |                                  |                    |                                     |                                       |                               |                       |                         |                         |                             |                     |  |      |             |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|--|------|-------------|
| <b>On/Off Switch</b>          | 0                                | 1                  | 1                                   | 1                                     | 1                             | 1                     | 1                       | 1                       | 1                           | 1                   | 1  | 0    | 0           |
| <b>Resume Switch</b>          | 0                                | 0                  | 1                                   | 0                                     | 0                             | 0                     | 0                       | 0                       | 0                           | 0                   | 1  | 0    | 0           |
| <b>Raise Switch</b>           | 0                                | 0                  | 0                                   | 0                                     | 0                             | 0                     | Quick Close             | Hold Closed             | 0                           | 0                   | 0  | 0    | Quick Close |
| <b>Lower Switch</b>           | 0                                | 0                  | 0                                   | 0                                     | 0                             | 0                     | 0                       | 0                       | Quick Close                 | Hold Closed         | 0  | 0    | Quick Close |
| <b>Throttle Pedal Demand</b>  | 1200                             | 1200               | 1200                                | 1200                                  | 1900                          | 1200                  | 1200                    | 1200                    | 1200                        | 1200                | 1200   | 1200 | 1200        |
| <b>Memorised Speed</b>        | 1800                             | 1800               | 1800                                | 1800                                  | 1800                          | 1800                  | 1800                    | 1800                    | 1800                        | 1800                | 1800   | 1800 | 1800        |
| <b>Resulting engine speed</b> | 1200                             | 1200               | 1800                                | 1800                                  | 1900                          | 1800                  | 1850                    | 2050                    | 2000                        | 1200                | 1800   | 1200 | 1200        |
| <b>Comments</b>               | <b>PTO Mode in neutral state</b> | <b>PTO Mode ON</b> | <b>PTO jumps to memorised speed</b> | <b>Pedal overrides PTO (max wins)</b> | <b>Speed raised by 50 rpm</b> | <b>Speed ramps up</b> | <b>Lowered by 50rpm</b> | <b>Speed ramps down</b> | <b>Resumes to set speed</b> | <b>PTO Mode Off</b> | <b>No effect if both buttons are pressed at once</b> |      |             |

Table 9.4

### 9.3.2 PTO Mode Configuration

Five parameters must be configured using Perkins Electronic Service Tool (Perkins EST) prior to using the PTO mode feature. The parameters are listed in the main configuration of the service tool.

| Configuration Field Names                 | Configurable Options   | Default Configuration   | Description  |
|---|--|-------------------------|--|
| Throttle Lock Feature Installation Status | None<br>Multi Position Throttle Switch<br>Raise / Lower Switch | None                    | Used to activate the PTO Mode feature. Engineer must select "Raise / Lower Switch".                      |
| Throttle Lock Engine Set Speed #1         | 800 to 3000 rpm  | 800 rpm                 | The memorised speed used as the initial resume speed.  |
| Throttle Lock Increment Speed Ramp Rate   | 0 to 500 rpm/sec   | 400 rpm / s             | Speed at which the engine will accelerate when holding the raise button down.                            |
| Throttle Lock Decrement Speed Ramp Rate   | 0 to 500 rpm/sec   | 400 rpm / s             | The Speed at which the engine will decelerate when holding the lower button down.                        |
| Throttle Lock Engine Set Speed Increment  | 0 - 50 rpm/sec   | 10 rpm / step           | Speed at which the engine will increment or decrement when the raise or lower button is pressed quickly. |
| Throttle Lock Maximum Engine Speed        | 1500 – 2800 rpm  | Depended on rated speed | Allows the maximum speed used during PTO mode to be configured separately from the high idle setting     |

Table 9.5

### 9.3.3 PTO Mode Installation

Figure 9-6 below shows the installation wiring required to implement the full PTO mode function.

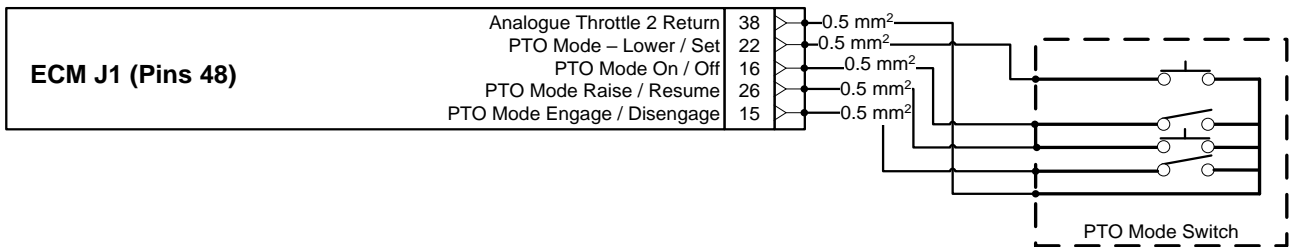


Figure 9-6

## 9.4 Multi Position Throttle Switch (MPTS)

### 9.4.1 MPTS Operation

The MPTS feature enables the user to select up to 16 pre-configured speeds settings by combining 4 ECM digital inputs.

This is a very powerful and flexible feature that may be used in a number of ways. For example:

- Principal speed control method for hydrostatic machines where engine speed is selected and then not required to be frequently changed by the operator. It is in this respect a good alternative to a hand throttle as the speeds selected on the switch can be designed to correspond to the optimum operating speeds of hydraulic pumps.
- Elevated idle. For example the OEM could increase the idle speed when work lights are switched ON and the alternator will provide sufficient current to recharge the battery.

Note: This feature cannot be used in conjunction with the PTO mode feature.

If a switch combination is detected which has been configured as “Physical Position Enabled = No” then a fault code will be raised (91-2 or 774-2) and the ECM will ignore the MPTS for the rest of the key cycle as this switch combination has been configured as a fault status.

**Due to the powerful nature of this feature for mobile applications it is strongly recommended that not all 16 settings are used. Instead mobile applications should be limited to paired switch positions, as shown in the table below. This will ensure that if one switch input state is changed in error the speed setting will not change, since two switches must change state if the paired configuration is followed.**

## 9.4.2 MPTS Configuration

Some parameters must be configured using Perkins Electronic Service Tool (Perkins EST) prior to using the MPTS feature. The parameters are listed in the configuration screen of the service tool and are shown below. The configurable engine speeds 1 through 16 have to be greater than the configured low idle engine speed and less than the configured high idle speed.

The MPTS feature is activated by setting “Throttle Lock Feature Installation Status” to “Multi Position Throttle Switch” and setting “Multi State Input Switch Enable Status” to “Enabled”.

It is important that the engine be capable of running at both the low and high idle settings so the default position 0 should be set to the configured Low idle Speed. One of the other switch positions should be set to the configured High Idle speed e.g. position 15.

| Physical Position | Switch 4 | Switch 3 | Switch 2 | Switch 1 | Physical Position Enabled | Suitable for Mobile applications? | Engine Speed |
|-------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------|
| 0                 | Open     | Open     | Open     | Open     | Yes / No                  | Yes                               | LI rpm       |
| 1                 | Open     | Open     | Open     | Closed   | Yes / No                  |                                   | LI – HI rpm  |
| 2                 | Open     | Open     | Closed   | Open     | Yes / No                  |                                   | LI – HI rpm  |
| 3                 | Open     | Open     | Closed   | Closed   | Yes / No                  | Yes                               | LI – HI rpm  |
| 4                 | Open     | Closed   | Open     | Open     | Yes / No                  |                                   | LI – HI rpm  |
| 5                 | Open     | Closed   | Open     | Closed   | Yes / No                  | Yes                               | LI – HI rpm  |
| 6                 | Open     | Closed   | Closed   | Open     | Yes / No                  | Yes                               | LI – HI rpm  |
| 7                 | Open     | Closed   | Closed   | Closed   | Yes / No                  |                                   | LI – HI rpm  |
| 8                 | Closed   | Open     | Open     | Open     | Yes / No                  |                                   | LI – HI rpm  |
| 9                 | Closed   | Open     | Open     | Closed   | Yes / No                  | Yes                               | LI – HI rpm  |
| 10                | Closed   | Open     | Closed   | Open     | Yes / No                  | Yes                               | LI – HI rpm  |
| 11                | Closed   | Open     | Closed   | Closed   | Yes / No                  |                                   | LI – HI rpm  |
| 12                | Closed   | Closed   | Open     | Open     | Yes / No                  | Yes                               | LI – HI rpm  |
| 13                | Closed   | Closed   | Open     | Closed   | Yes / No                  |                                   | LI – HI rpm  |
| 14                | Closed   | Closed   | Closed   | Open     | Yes / No                  |                                   | LI – HI rpm  |
| 15                | Closed   | Closed   | Closed   | Closed   | Yes / No                  | Yes                               | HI rpm       |

Table 9.6

When configuring the MPTS the first position should be set to Low Idle (LI) and the last configured position should be High Idle (HI) to allow the engine to run at these speeds. This is to ensure the installation can run at the minimum and maximum engine speeds to satisfy constrained operation requirements.

### 9.4.3 MPTS Installation

The recommended switch arrangement is shown in Figure 9-7.

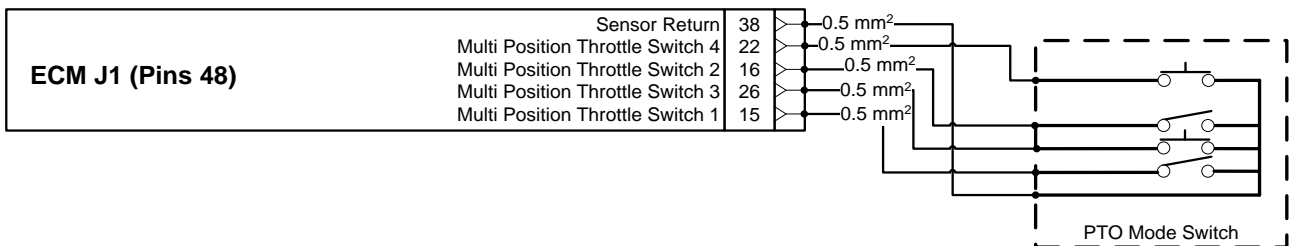


Figure 9-7

## 9.5 Torque Speed Control TSC1 (Speed Control Over CAN)

A special J1939 message called Torque/Speed Control #1 (TSC1) allows other electronic devices to control or to limit the engine speed. This message is explained in detail in section 16.4.2 of this application and installation guide.

## 9.6 Arbitration of Throttle speed demand

When two throttles are configured in the engine software different selection options may be configured to control and select a final speed demand. The engine software will monitor both speed demand inputs during engine operation, and there are four methods of arbitration;

1. **Manual Selection** - A switch is configured to select the required throttle
2. **Manual Selection with return to Idle** - A switch is configured to select the required throttle, throttle selection will only occur at low idle.
3. **Largest Wins** – The highest speed demand will be used (Default configuration in engine software).
4. **Lowest Wins** – The lowest speed demand will be used.

### 9.6.1 Throttle Arbitration Configuration

To select the appropriate option above, the chosen feature must be enabled in the configuration screen of Perkins Electronic Service Tool (Perkins EST). If the feature is not enabled the engine software will assume a default setting of “Largest Wins”.

| Configuration field Names             | Configurable Options                  | Default Configuration |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Throttle Arbitration                  | Largest Wins<br>Lowest Wins<br>Manual | Largest Wins          |
| Manual Arbitration Precondition Check | Disabled<br>Enabled                   | Enabled               |

Table 9.7

### 9.6.2 Manual Throttle Selection Switch

An engine ECM input is available that can be configured to allow manual selection between throttle 1 & throttle 2. The switch in its open state will select throttle 1, and when closed will select throttle 2. Switching throttles at any speed demand is dependent on how the “Manual Arbitration Precondition Check” is set in the engine software. This setting will dictate if throttle switching will happen at any speed demand or engine must be at low idle for the throttle switching to occur.

### 9.6.3 Manual Throttle Selection with Return to Idle Operation

“Manual Arbitration Precondition Check” is set to “Enabled” as default in the engine software. This means that both throttles must be in the low idle position to allow the throttle selection to complete and engine speed demand to come from that throttle selection.

### 9.6.4 Manual Arbitration Installation

Manual selection and manual selection with return to idle requires one switched to ground input (SWG) connected to ECM J2-46.

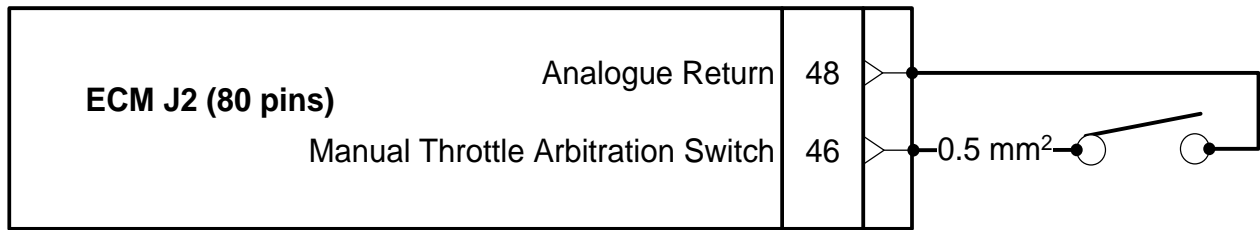


Figure 9-8

### 9.6.5 Largest Wins selection (Default)

When two throttles are connected and configured the engine ECM will monitor each input. The highest speed demand will be used to control engine speed.

### 9.6.6 Lowest Wins selection

When two throttles are connected and configured the engine ECM will monitor each input. The lowest speed demand will be used to control engine speed.

## 9.7 Throttle Calibration

The majority of throttle components have mechanical and electrical tolerances that affect the final output of a device, for example two components of the same design and part number may produce a different voltage output in the open position. Also after a period of time throttle components can mechanically wear, affecting/changing the output of a device. To accommodate these differences and changes the engine ECM may be configured to automatically calibrate to differing input values at the upper and lower positions. Figure 9-9 gives an example pedal design where the open and closed position of the throttle pedal are set by adjusting the manufacturing adjustment screws. With this type of arrangement the mechanical accuracy is limited and therefore auto calibration may be used. The calibration control logic needs a number of parameters specific to the chosen device to allow auto calibration.

This feature is configurable for Analogue and PWM inputs. The algorithm treats either a PWM or analogue input as a 'raw signal' in the range 0 to 100% for example the analogue voltage range is 5V therefore 0.05V is treated as 1%.

Several parameters are used to:

- Define the boundaries for calibration in the open and closed positions
- Define the amount of 'deadzone /play' from the open and closed positions
- Define the upper and lower diagnostic boundaries

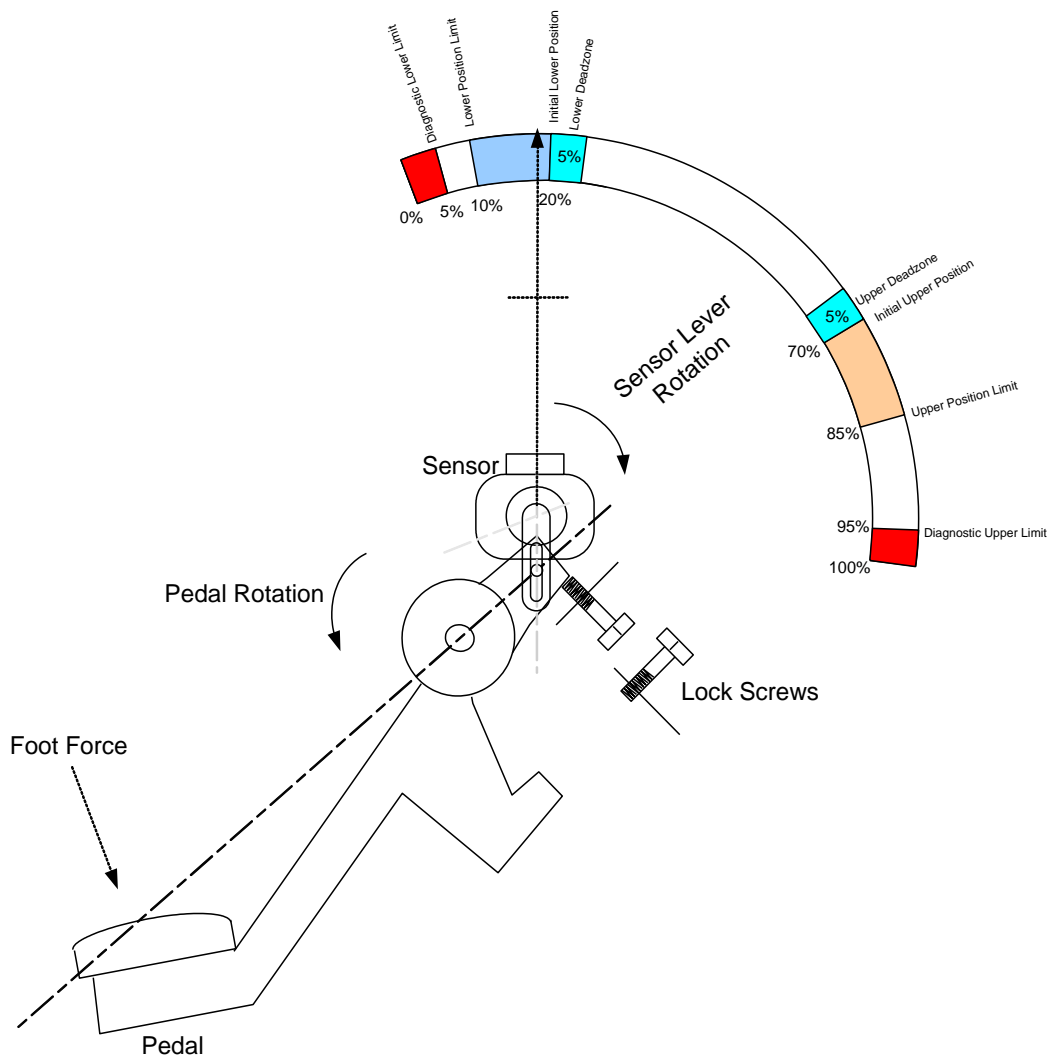


Figure 9-9 Analogue Throttle Setup Example

Figure 9-9 is a simplified representation of a throttle pedal assembly; a small lever attaches the pedal to a throttle position sensor. Two lock screws limit the open and closed pedal movement, one for each position. The lever movement is directly proportional to the electrical output signal of the throttle sensor. The electrical raw signal is shown as a percentage of the total permissible input range.

Eight parameters are shown on Figure 9-9, each parameter has a purpose; these parameters are required for correct calibration. The parameters are expressed as a percentage of raw signal, the parameters may be changed/configured to match the chosen device:

### 9.7.1 Throttle Parameter Description

#### Diagnostic Lower Limit

The lower diagnostic limit is the absolute minimum raw value accepted as a valid signal by the engine ECM. Any values below this point will flag appropriate diagnostics and invoke the limp-home strategy. Most analogue devices are classed as faulted with a voltage of 0.25V and below (5%) this is to prevent a possible open or short circuit being mistaken for a valid signal, for similar reasons a PWM duty cycle should not fall below 5% duty cycle.

#### Lower Position limit

This is the minimum point of the lower calibration boundary

### **Initial Lower Position limit**

This is the maximum point of the lower calibration boundary. This value is also used as the initial lower position when no calibration has been applied.

### **Lower Deadzone**

This position is given as a discrete raw signal percentage value. The lower dead zone effectively gives some play at the lower position. This dead band is expressed in terms of a raw signal percentage, such that the initial lower position plus the lower dead zone will give the 0% throttle position.

### **Initial Upper Position limit**

This is the minimum point of the upper calibration boundary. This value is also used as the initial upper position when no calibration has been applied.

### **Upper Position Limit**

This is the maximum point of the upper calibration boundary

### **Upper Deadzone**

This position is given as a discrete raw signal percentage value. The upper dead zone effectively gives some play at the upper position. This dead band is expressed in terms of a raw signal percentage, such that the initial upper position minus the upper dead zone will give the 100% throttle position.

### **Diagnostic Upper Limit**

The upper diagnostic limit is the absolute maximum raw value accepted as a valid signal by the engine ECM. Any values above this point will flag appropriate diagnostics and invoke the limp-home strategy. Most analogue devices are classed as faulted with a voltage of 4.75V and above, this is to prevent a possible open or short circuit being mistaken for a valid signal, for similar reasons a PWM duty cycle should not go above 95% duty cycle.

## **9.7.2 Throttle Calibration Function**

When the engine ECM is active the raw throttle signal is continuously monitored. Figure 9-10 explains how the automatic calibration functions. The adjustment screws in Figure 9-10 have been purposely adjusted and differ from the previous throttle pedal diagram. When the engine ECM is active the raw throttle value is checked, if the value falls within the lower calibration region (defined by the 'lower position limit' & 'Initial lower position limit') calibration will take place. In Figure 9-10 the lever position is at 11% and falls within the lower calibration area so auto calibration will be applied.

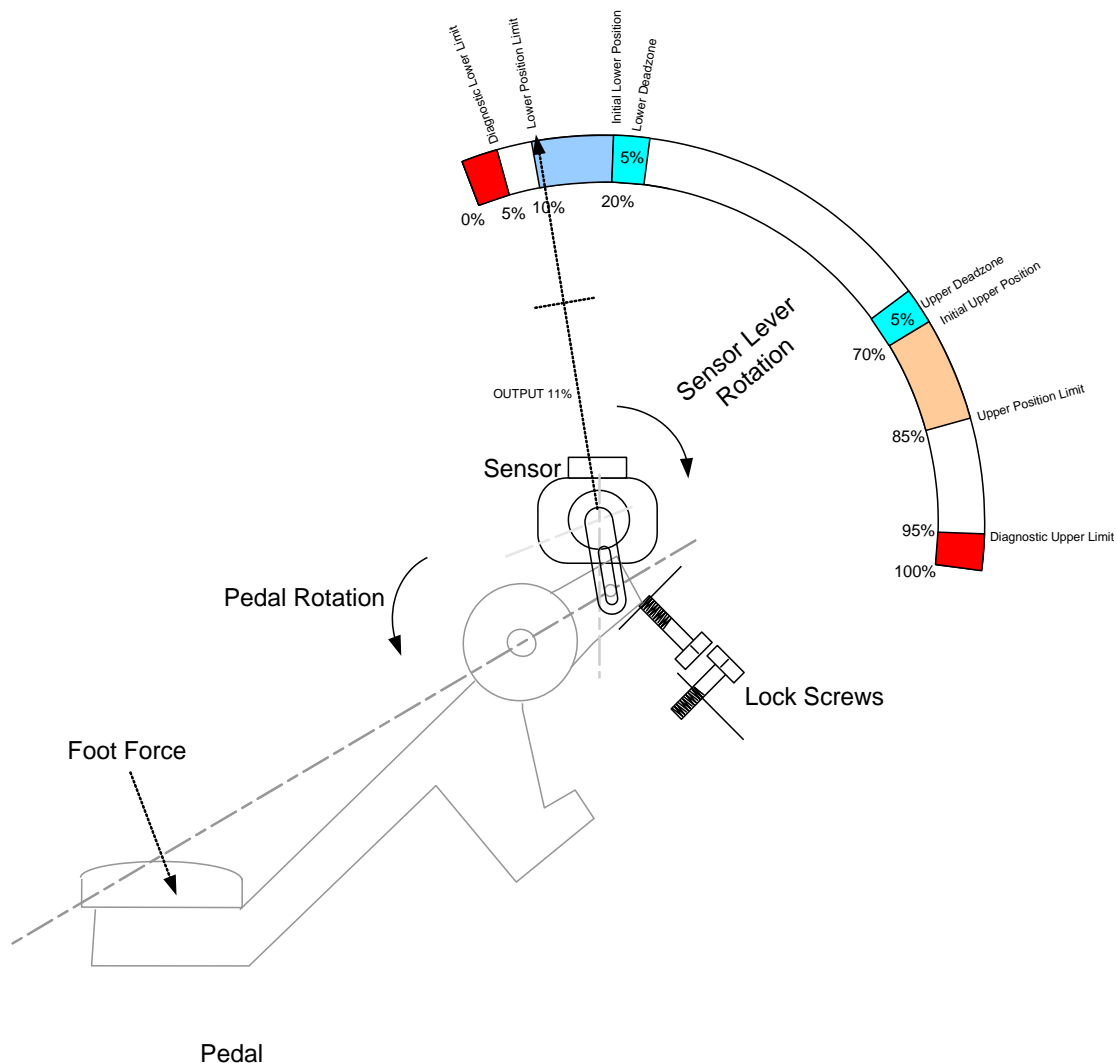


Figure 9-10 Analogue Throttle Lower Calibration Prior to Calibration

Figure 9-10, *before calibration*, the sensor output falls within the lower calibration region, without auto calibration the 'initial lower position limit' is used by the engine ECM as the throttle start point. Once clear of the deadzone the desired engine speed will change. In this case the lever would have to move 14% of the raw signal (9% + 5% deadzone) before desired engine speed changes. This situation is undesirable.

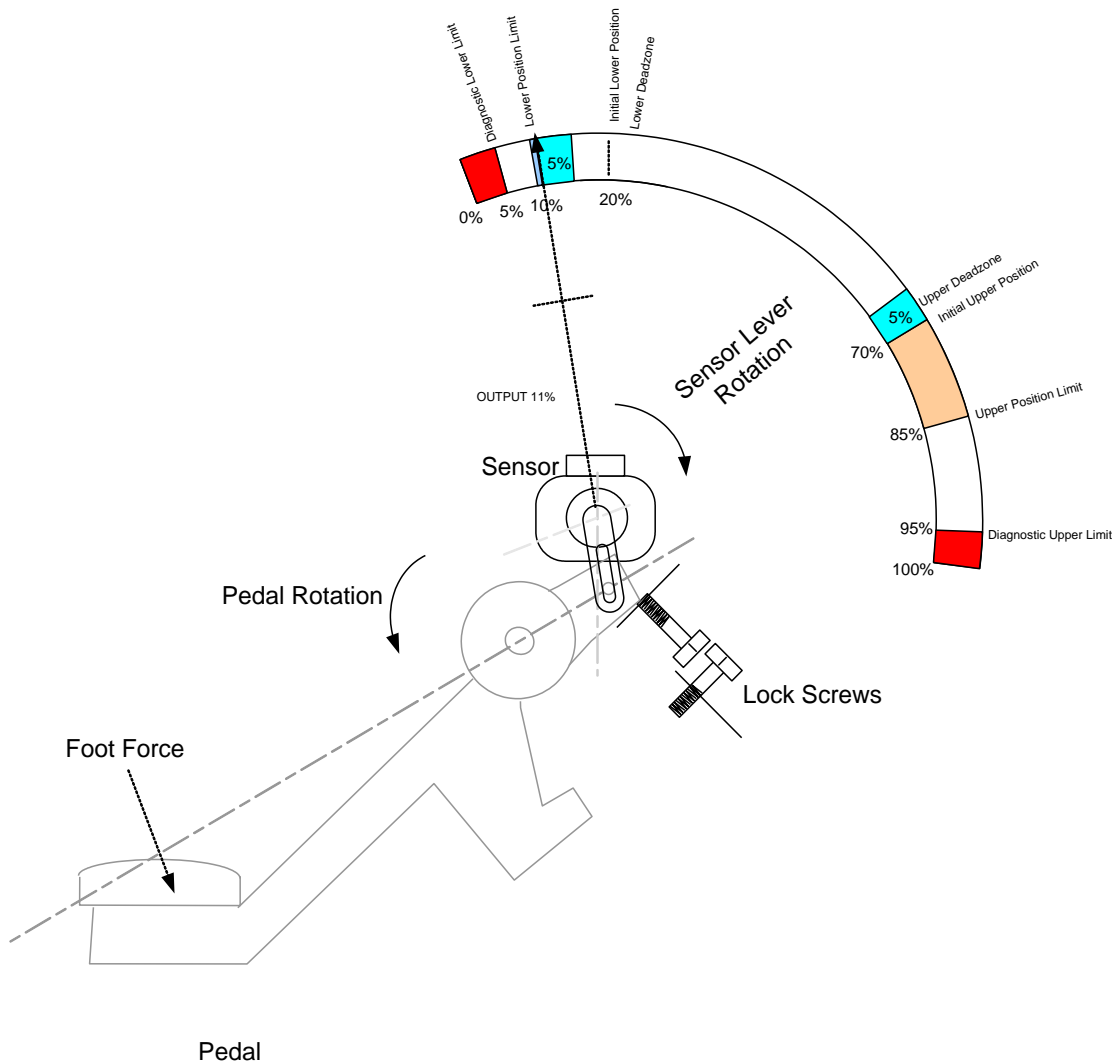


Figure 9-11 Analogue Throttle Lower Calibration Post Configuration

Figure 9-11, *after calibration*, the start position used by the engine ECM has changed; with this new initial lower position the lever needs to travel through the deadzone only. Once clear of the deadzone the desired engine speed will change.

The same principle applies for the upper calibration region as shown in Figure 9-12.

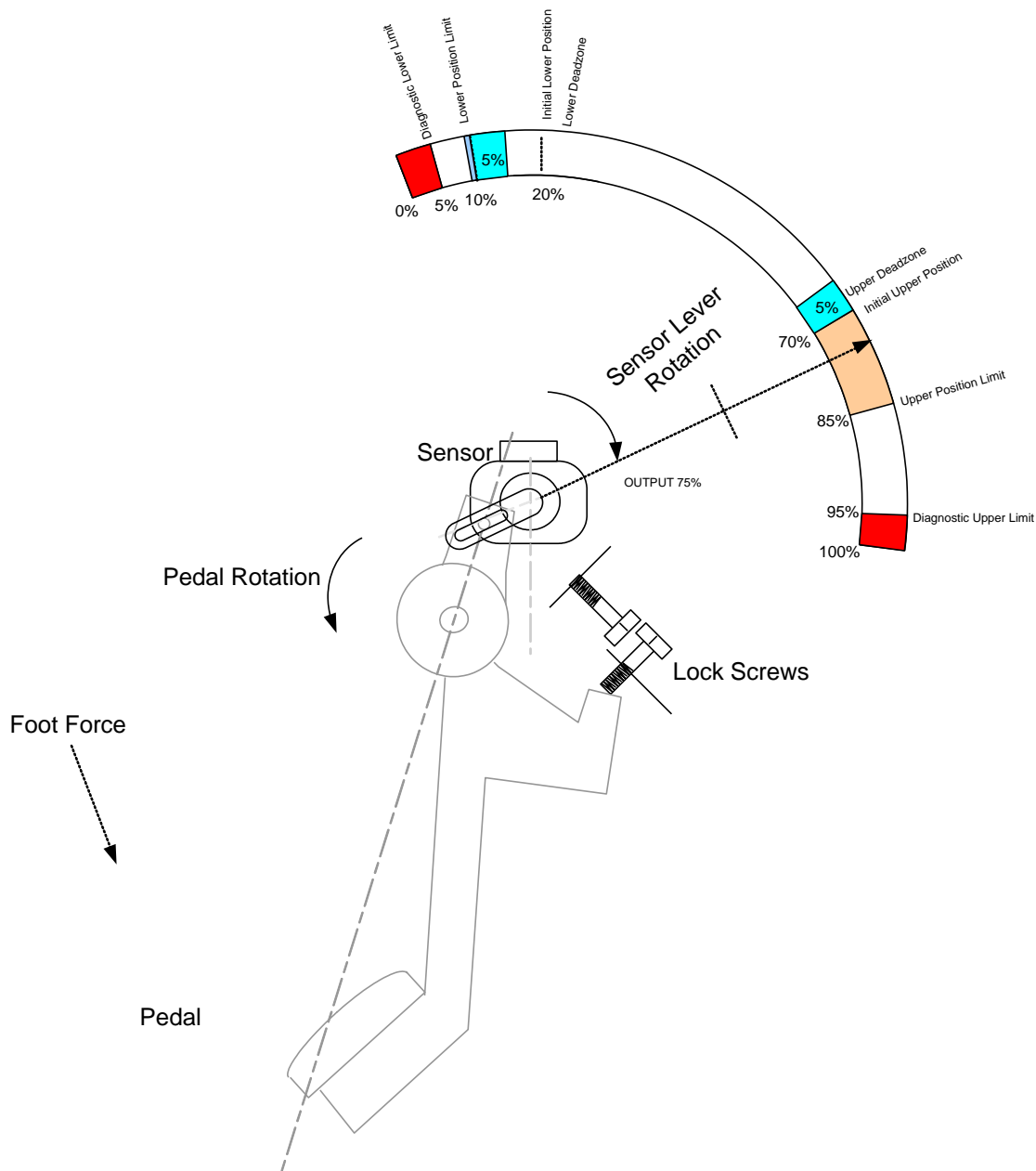


Figure 9-12 Analogue Throttle Upper Calibration Prior to Adjustment

Figure 9-12, *before calibration*, the sensor output falls within the upper calibration region, without auto calibration the 'initial upper position limit' is used by the engine ECM as the throttle maximum point. Once clear of the dead zone the desired engine speed will change. In this case the lever would have to move 10% of the raw signal (5% + 5% dead zone) before desired engine speed changes. This situation is undesirable.

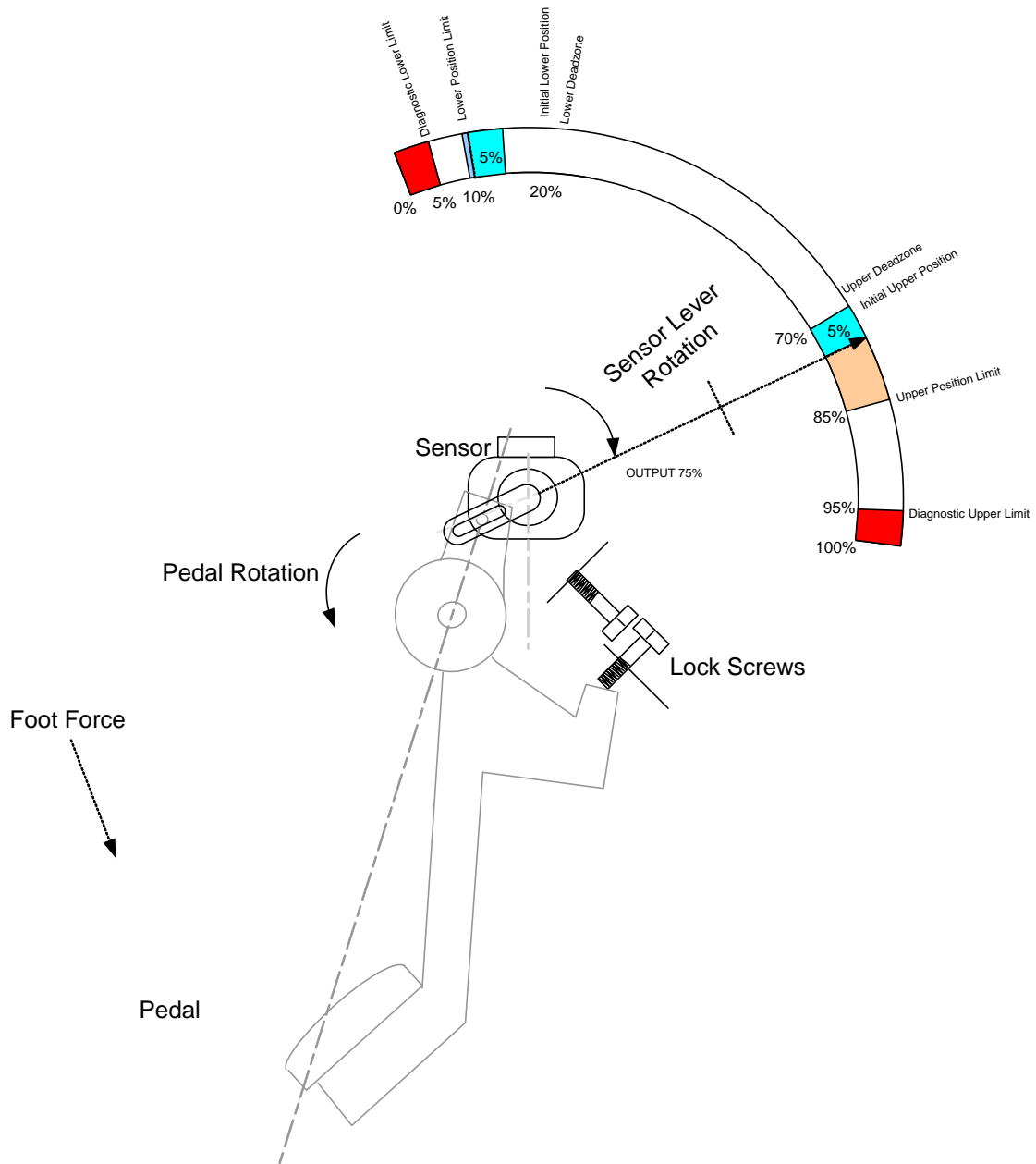


Figure 9-13 Analogue Throttle Upper Calibration Post Configuration

Figure 9-13, *after calibration*, the maximum position used by the engine ECM has changed; with this new initial upper position the lever needs to travel through the dead zone only. Once clear of the dead zone the desired engine speed will change.

The auto calibration feature is continuously active during engine operation if a lower minimum position or higher maximum position is seen auto calibration will take place on the new values. The initial positions (defined by the initial lower position limit and initial upper position limit) will be re-instated whenever the power to the ECM is recycled.

### 9.7.3 Idle Validation Switch

Analogue devices must use an idle validation switch. The idle validation switch is required to validate that a change in signal is indeed valid and not a potential electrical fault. Two parameters need to be defined for correct operation. When configured the engine ECM continually monitors the speed demand request and the Idle validation switch.

#### Idle validation maximum ON threshold (Closed)

The value is defined as percent raw signal. At low idle the Idle Validation switch should be 'ON' (the input should be switched to ground). When increasing engine speed the ECM will continually monitor the idle validation switch. The switch needs to have switched 'OFF' between the two IVS thresholds. If the switch state does not change by the '*Idle validation maximum ON threshold*' the ECM will invoke the limp home strategy and the throttle will not respond.

#### Idle validation minimum OFF threshold (Open)

The value is defined as percent raw signal. At high idle the Idle Validation switch should be 'OFF' (the input should be switched to open). When decreasing engine speed the ECM will continually monitor the idle validation switch. The switch needs to have switched 'ON' between the two IVS thresholds. If the switch state does not change by the '*Idle validation minimum off threshold*' the ECM will invoke the limp home strategy and the throttle will not respond.

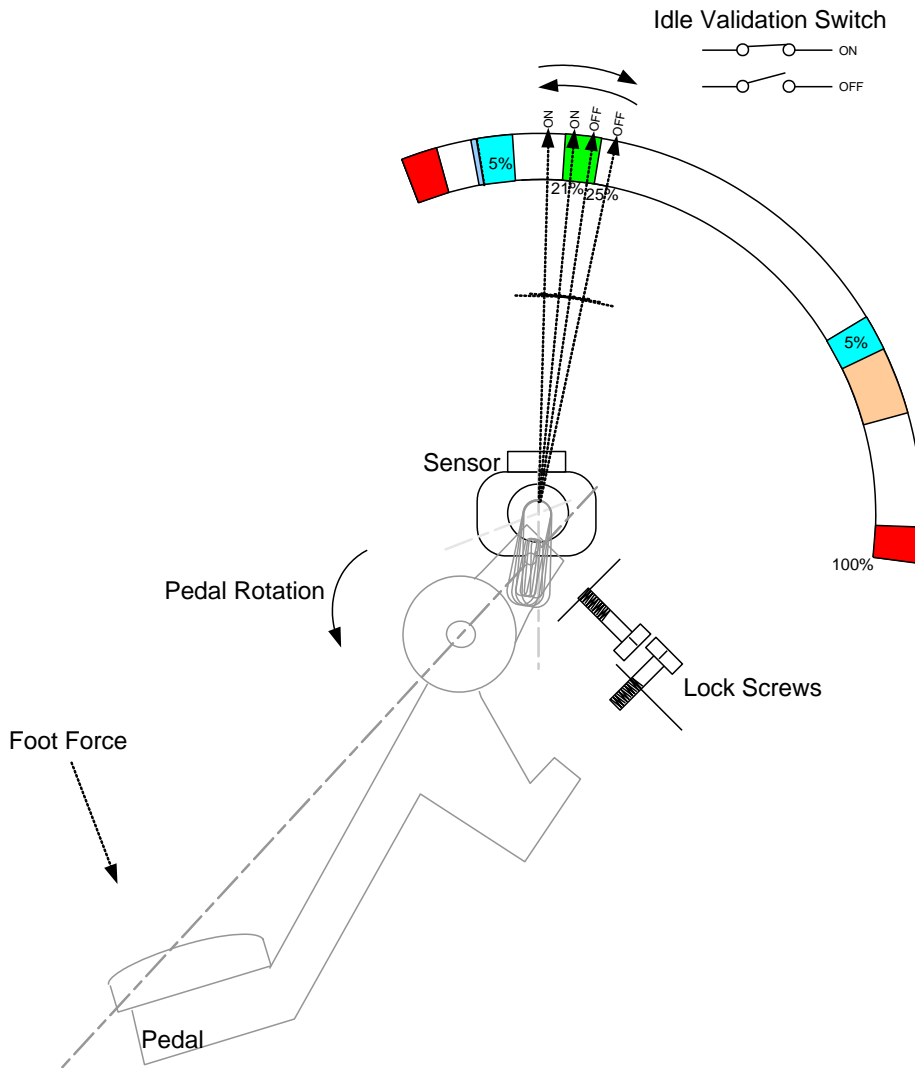


Figure 9-14 Idle validation switch transition

## 9.8 Engine Acceleration Ramp Rates

It is possible to limit the overall acceleration rate of the engine speed. The acceleration limit applies to overall engine speed, irrespective of applied strategy. The rate may be configured using Perkins Electronic Service Tool (Perkins EST). The rate is defined in units of rpm per second, 0 rpm/s represents no limit to engine acceleration (i.e. turns off the feature.) The default ramp rate will be 0 rpm/s. The maximum set engine acceleration rate is 600 rpm/sec.

When ramp rates are being used within the PTO function it should be noted that if overall acceleration and deceleration ramp rates are also being used the engine software will apply the lower of the two values.

| Configuration field Name         | Configurable Options | Default Configuration |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| Engine Overall Acceleration Rate | 0 – 600 rpm / sec    | 0 rpm / sec           |

Table 9.8

## 9.9 Engine Limp Home Speed

The engine limp home speed setting is a configurable default engine speed to which the ECM controls the engine speed to in the event of a speed control input failure. This limp home speed is configurable using Perkins EST. It is recommended that the limp home speed is set to a different value than the engine low idle. This ensures that in addition to an engine diagnostic code there is a clear indication to the operator that the speed control input has been lost. In addition the limp home speed is usually set to allow the machine to be placed into a safe condition / area for re-work to take place.

In the event of an engine speed control input failure (Single Speed Control installed only) the engine is designed to behave as follows;

1. If actual engine speed is above configured limp home speed when speed control input failure occurs the actual engine speed will default to the configured limp home speed (Default 1200 rpm).
2. If actual engine speed is below the configured limp home speed when speed control failure occurs the actual engine speed will default to the current speed.
3. If actual engine speed is at Low idle when speed control failure occurs the actual engine speed will remain at low idle speed.
4. The limp home strategy imposed by the engine software shall remain until problem has been resolved, self-healed or for the duration of that key cycle.
5. If the speed control fault is active on the next start, the engine speed will remain at low idle speed.

| Configuration field Name | Configurable Options | Default Configuration |
|--------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| Limp Home Set Speed      | 800 – 1200 rpm       | 1200 rpm              |

Table 9.9

### IMPORTANT NOTES

1. If more than one speed control is used, and a fault occurs on the primary speed signal, the engine software will revert to the secondary analogue speed signal and engine will have full speed capability.
2. PTO mode / MPTS features will trigger a different limp home strategy. If a speed fault occurs the engine will ramp down to low idle.

## 9.10 Definition of Engine Speed Points

There are a number of engine speed configuration points available for configuration by the customer. These points effect the engines operation when installed into a machine and should be configured to meet the specific needs of the Application. Each point is listed below and shown in Figure 9-15 where there relationship with the torque curve can be seen.

Configurable by the customer;

- Engine Low Idle Speed (LI)
- Engine High Idle Speed (HI)
- Engine Rated Speed (RS)

Fixed Parameters which are non-configurable;

- Engine Low Idle Speed Lower Limit (LILL)
- Engine Low Idle Speed Upper Limit (LIUL)
- Engine High Idle Lower Limit (HILL)
- Engine High Idle Upper Limit (HIUL)
- Rated Speed Lower Limit (RSLL)
- Rated Speed Upper Limit (RSUL)

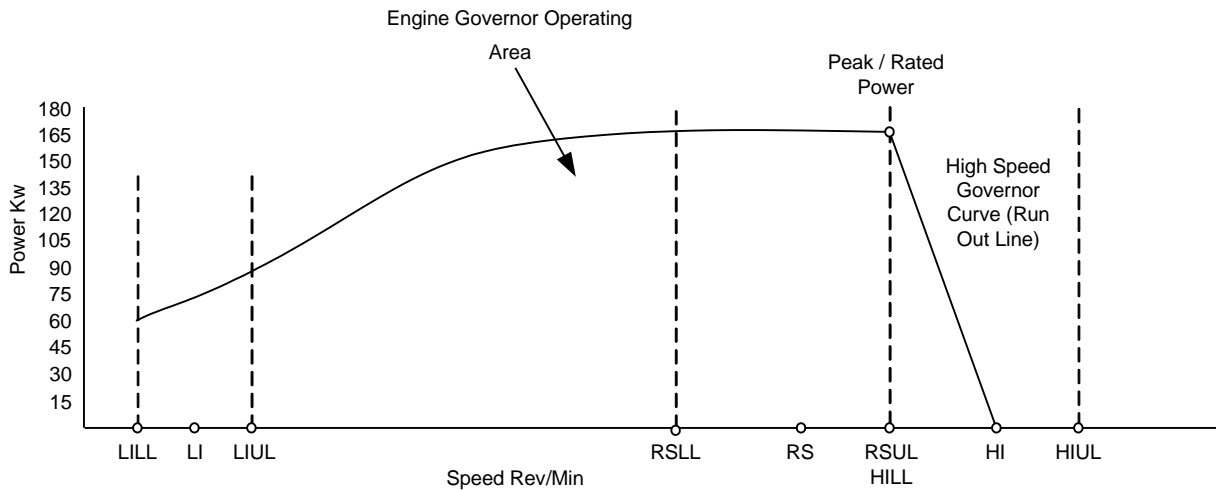


Figure 9-15 Example Power Curve With All Available Speed Settings

### 9.10.1 Engine Low Idle

#### 9.10.1.1 Engine Low Idle Operation

The engine low idle speed determines the minimum allowable engine speed during normal engine operation i.e. if no throttle demand is supplied to the engine ECM (assuming the engine is running) and there is no load on the engine the engine will idle at the set low idle speed.

#### 9.10.1.2 Engine Low Idle Configuration

The desired engine low idle speed can be set using Perkins EST (service tool) via the configuration screen.

| Configuration field Names | Configurable Options | Default Configuration |
|---------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| Low Idle Speed            | 800 – 1200 rpm       | 1000                  |

Table 9.10

## 9.10.2 Engine High Idle

### 9.10.2.1 Engine High Idle Operation

The engine high idle speed determines the engine full throttle desired engine speed value. As with the low idle setting this parameter is configurable by the customer and can be set to an engine speed limited by the fixed software limits High Idle Lower Limit (HILL) and High Idle Upper Limit (HIUL).

The High Idle speed setting also works in conjunction with the Rated speed Setting (RS) to determine the high Speed Governor (HSG) run out line. Varying the Rated speed and High Idle settings can alter the gradient of this line and the resulting governor response.

**Note: Under some circumstances the engine may not be able to reach the desired HI setting under full throttle conditions due to machine torque requirement at this speed.**

### 9.10.2.2 Engine High Idle Configuration

The desired engine High Idle speed can be set using the service tool (EST) via the configuration screen. The engine High Idle speed defaults to rated speed and can be adjusted to a value between HILL and HIUL. As previously stated the relationship between High Idle and Rated Speed is not mutually exclusive for this reason HILL is set to RS and HIUL is RS + 10%. This means that the max HI setting available for any engine is RS + 10%.

| Configuration field Name | Configurable Options | Default Configuration |
|--------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| High Idle Speed          | RS +10%              | RS +5%                |

Table 9.11

## 9.11 Engine Speed Output

Three main methods of calculating and indicating engine speed (rpm) are available for this product. Typically engine speed (rpm) is displayed to a machine operator using a Tachometer, a gauge that displays engine speed in revolution per minute.

This speed reading can be taken from majority of the alternator offered or through the J1939 engine speed SPN 190, as described in the below table:

| PGN # | PGN Description                       | SPN # | SPN Description                              |
|-------|---------------------------------------|-------|--|
| F004  | Electronic Engine Controller 1 (EEC1) | 190   | Engine Speed                                 |
|       |                                       |       | 2 bytes<br>0.125 rpm per bit, Offset = 0 rpm |

Table 9.12

## 10.0 Cold Weather Engine Operation & Starting Aids

There are two types of start aid available for all Stage V engines, they are glow plugs and heated breather, both fitted as standard. The glow plugs are optional depending if the installation requires them or not. If the engine is to operate in temperatures below +5°C then the glow plugs are required and therefore the glow plug busbar will need to be connected to the battery.

### 10.1 Control of Glow Plugs by the Engine ECM

#### 10.1.1 Glow Plug System Operation

When the ignition key switch is on, the engine ECM will monitor the coolant temperature sensor, air inlet manifold temperature and air inlet temperature sensor and decide whether the glow plugs are required.

When the glow plug start aid is required the engine ECM will illuminate the 'wait to start indicator' and control the Glow Plug relay through pins J1-33.

The relay will be turned ON and the glow plugs powered through it. To ensure reliable starting and glow plug protection it is mandatory to connect the glow plugs to the Glow Plug Relay. During engine operation the engine ECM monitors the wires to the Glow Plug Relay; if a fault is detected a diagnostic message will be communicated through the J1939 DM1 message during operation.

The following table, Table 10.1 shows the software logic on how it calculates the wait to start timer, in seconds, for the glow plugs to warm up depending on the ambient temperature and engine temperature worked out using the Intake Manifold and Coolant temperature readings.

|                                      |     | Coolant Temperature (°C) |     |     |    |    |    |    |
|--------------------------------------|-----|--------------------------|-----|-----|----|----|----|----|
|                                      |     | -40                      | -18 | -10 | 0  | 5  | 7  | 20 |
| Intake Manifold Air Temperature (°C) | -40 | 20                       | 20  | 20  | 15 | 15 | 15 | 15 |
|                                      | -15 | 16                       | 15  | 15  | 8  | 8  | 8  | 8  |
|                                      | -10 | 14                       | 12  | 12  | 8  | 6  | 6  | 6  |
|                                      | -5  | 12                       | 10  | 8   | 6  | 6  | 6  | 2  |
|                                      | 5   | 10                       | 8   | 5   | 5  | 5  | 1  | 1  |
|                                      | 10  | 8                        | 5   | 2   | 2  | 2  | 0  | 0  |
|                                      | 40  | 5                        | 5   | 1   | 1  | 1  | 0  | 0  |

Table 10.1

#### 10.1.2 Glow Plug System Installation

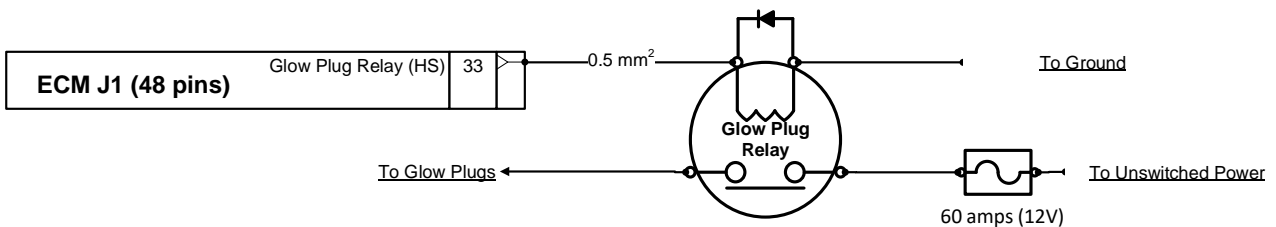


Figure 10-1 Glow Plug Schematic

| Engine: | Individual Glow Plug | Three Glow Plugs | Four Glow Plugs |
|---------|----------------------|------------------|-----------------|
|---------|----------------------|------------------|-----------------|

| Supply Voltage:   | 12 Volts         | 12 Volts         | 12 Volts          |  |
|---|------------------|------------------|-------------------|--|
| Current - Initial   | 17.5A            | 52.5A            | 69A               |  |
| Current after 5 sec   | 12A              | 36A              | 48A               |  |
| Current after 10 sec  | 9A               | 27A              | 36A               |  |
| Current after 30 seconds  | 6.5A             | 19.5A            | 26A               |  |
| Recommended Fuse<br>To SAEJ1888 ( slow blow)                          | N/A              | 60A              | 70A               |  |
| Recommended min cable<br>gauge - mm <sup>2</sup> (SAE J6722<br>cable) | 3mm <sup>2</sup> | 8mm <sup>2</sup> | 10mm <sup>2</sup> |  |

Table 10.2

### 10.1.3 Glow Plug Connector

The Glow Plugs are connected together through a bus bar and the customer is required to connect to the glow plug busbar stud. The busbar provides two location for the connection on each extremity, one located at the rear of the engine near the flywheel mounted aftertreatment bracket and the other one is located behind the Engine Interface connector bracket. The Bus Bar Connection is a M4 Stud, the tightening torque should not exceed 1.7Nm ±0.4N.m.

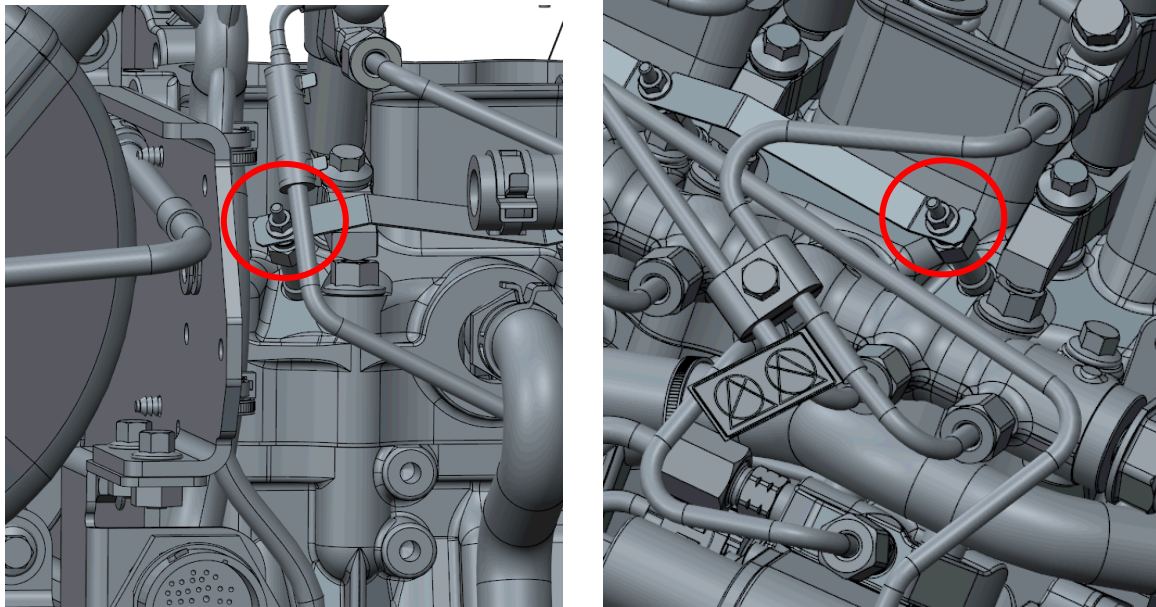


Figure 10-2 Glow Plug Stud Locations

| Glow Plug Connection<br>Component Description | Size   | Tightning Torque |
|---|--------|------------------|
| Glow Plug Stud                                | M4x1.0 | 1.7Nm ±0.4N.m    |

Table 10.3 Glow Plug Connection Stud

There is a option to connect to the glow plug busbar via a connector from a fly lead from the glow plug busbar. The connector provides a location for the connection of the busbar to the customer wiring, located behind the Engine Interface connector bracket.

| Component Description | Supplier Part # | Connector Family | Qty |
|-----------------------|-----------------|------------------|-----|
| Connector             | 7122-3010       | Yazaki           | 1   |
| Socket                | 7116-3060       | Yazaki           | 1   |

Table 10.4 Glow Plug Connector

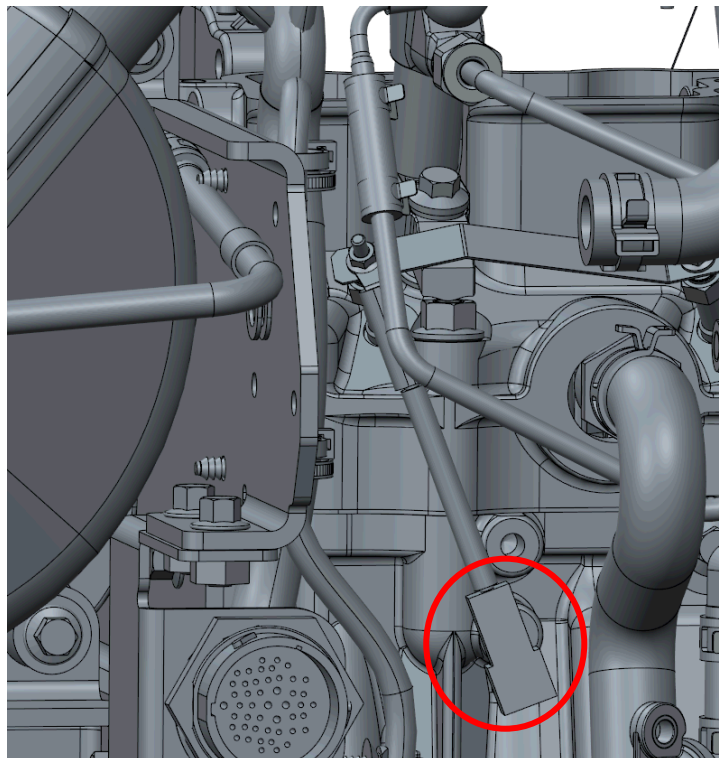


Figure 10-3 Glow plug busbar connector location

## 10.2 Breather Heater Connection

In low ambient conditions with low engine load there is a risk of ice formation at the interface between the breather gas hose and the induction pipe. The ice formation can occur at ambient temperatures below -25°C so a breather heater is mandatory for any installations that will experience ambient temperatures below -25°C. To prevent ice formation an electrical heater may be fitted between the breather pipe and the air induction pipe entry point.

The electrical breather heater should be powered continually during engine operation through the customer harness. It is recommended that the electrical circuit be fused separately from other engine components. The ECM does not power the breather heater.

| System Parameter      | Range     |
|-----------------------|-----------|
| Voltage Range         | 6V-30V    |
| Current Range         | 0.5 to 2A |
| Suggested Fuse Rating | 3A        |

Table 10.5 Breather Heater Electrical Specification

Perkins recommend that the breather heater is installed so that the electrical connector points horizontally from the pipe, to best avoid any water ingress. The ingress protection of the connector when fitted is IPX9k which is a high level but does not guarantee against ingress of fluid if the connector points vertically up from the breather pipe, so this should be avoided.

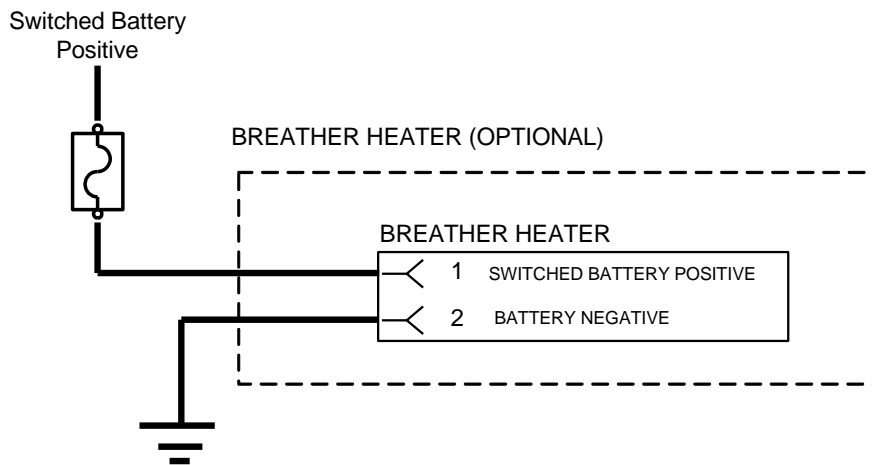


Figure 10-4 Heated Breather Wiring

The electrical components required to connect to the breather heater are detailed below.

| Component Description     | Supplier Part # | Connector Family | Qty | Part #  | Kit Part # |
|---------------------------|-----------------|------------------|-----|---------|------------|
| Breather Heater connector | 1-1355200-1     | Tyco             | 1   | T421903 | T432698    |
| Terminals (Socket)        | 929939-3        | Tyco             | 2   | T432664 |            |
| Wire Seal 2.5mm           | 828905-1        | Tyco             | 2   | T432665 |            |

Table 10.6 Heated Breather Interface Connector Requirements

## 11.0 Operator Indicators & Fault Displays

### 11.1 Engine & Aftertreatment Diagnostic Systems

Both the engine and aftertreatment systems are fitted with a number of sensors and actuators designed to provide tight control over engine performance and emissions management. Each of these devices enables the engine management system to closely monitor the health of the system and react as necessary when fault conditions occur.

In the event of an electronic component failure or an out of normal control boundaries condition being raised the engine management system will react by raising a specific indicator, fault code and in some cases take protective action such as derate or shutdown.

The conditions under which the engine signals a system error can be defined as fitting into one of three categories. The error category will dictate the specific engine response and the type of indication provided to the operator. The specific fault conditions are shown below.

**Diagnostic Codes** – These conditions are related to specific electrical hardware faults or failures such as open / short circuit conditions on sensors or wiring loom.

**Event Codes** – Events are raised when the engine control system recognises that the current system conditions are outside of some pre-defined boundaries. Examples are coolant temperature, oil pressure and DOC intake temperature etc.

**Emissions System Inducements** – These conditions are governed by specific emissions legislation, which requires the engine manufacturer to clearly identify specific emissions system failures to the operator outside of the normal engine fault condition strategies.

A complete list of the available lamps available on the 400 Series Stage V engine is shown below. Mandatory indicators are highlighted where applicable.

| Indicator  | 400 Series<br><55kW DOC, DPF | Comments   |
|--|------------------------------|--|
| Engine Warning Indicator                               | ✓                            | Alert operator to a level 1 and 2 diagnostic issue.  |
| Engine Shutdown Indicator                              | ✓                            | Alert operator to a level 3 diagnostic issue.  |
| Engine Wait to Start Indicator                         | ✓                            | Alert operator that the engine is ready to start.  |
| Engine Oil Pressure Indicator                          | Optional                     | Alert operator that the engine oil pressure has dropped below a predefined threshold.  |
| Emissions System Failure Indicator (also known as MIL) | ✓                            | Alert the operator that an emission related component has failed, for example a fault with the NRS or DPF system.                          |
| DPF Lamp   | ✓                            | Alerts the operator that a DPF Regeneration is required.   |
| Inhibit Regen Lamp                                     | ✓                            | Alerts the operator that they have Inhibited Automatic Regeneration of the Aftertreatment.<br>Mandatory only when using the Inhibit Switch |
| Regen Active Lamp                                      | ✓                            | Alerts the operator that an Aftertreatment Regeneration is active and that the Exhaust system <b>may</b> be hotter than expected           |

| Indicator                  | 400 Series<br><55kW DOC, DPF | Comments  |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|---|
| Wait to Disconnect Lamp    | Optional                     | Alert the operator that the system is still executing the post run strategy for ECM housekeeping. |
| Engine Running Output Lamp | Optional                     | Alerts the operator that the engine is running.   |

Table 11.1

**Note:** It is mandatory to display all the mandatory indicators, this can be through a Hardwired method or J1939 driven. Whether using a hardwired or J1939 driven system all status indicators must use the Aftertreatment symbols documented in section 12.2.

### 11.1.1 Monitoring System Fault Status Levels

All engine and aftertreatment fault indicators are assigned a **Warning Category Indicator (WCI)**, which indicates the severity of the specific diagnostic, event or emissions critical failure. The high level operation of the indicator control strategy is shown in Table 11.2. It should be noted that the protect indicator status is only available via J1939 and not as a hardwired ECM output. If hardwired engine warning and shutdown lamps are used then engine events will be displayed in the same manner as engine diagnostic code, via a warning lamp and shutdown lamp only.













|       | Engine Diagnostic Codes / Event Codes   |   |   |                 |               |                 | Comments                           |
|-------|---|---|---|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|------------------------------------|
|       | Warning Indicator   | Protect Indicator   | Stop Indicator  | SPN Broadcasted | Engine Derate | Engine Shutdown |                                    |
| WCI 0 | <br>Off - SPN624         | <br>Off - SPN987         | <br>Off - SPN623   | ✓               | ✗             | ✗               | Service Technician codes           |
| WCI 1 | <br>Solid - SPN624       | <br>Off - SPN987         | <br>Off - SPN623   | ✓               | ✗             | ✗               | Level 1 engine diagnostic.         |
| WCI 2 | <br>Slow flash - SPN3040 | <br>Slow flash - SPN3041 | <br>Off - SPN623   | ✓               | ✓             | ✗               | Level 2 engine diagnostic / event. |
| WCI 3 | <br>Fast Flash - SPN3040 | <br>Fast Flash - SPN3041 | <br>Solid - SPN623 | ✓               | ✓             | ✓               | Level 3 engine diagnostic / event. |

Table 11.2

## 11.2 Gauge Drivers

If a needle type analogue gauge is required to display an engine parameter such as engine speed or coolant temperature, it is recommended that the OEM use a gauge or display that can use the parameters broadcast by the ECM on the J1939 Datalink.

As an alternative, traditional single wire gauge ‘senders’ may be used if a suitable tapping is available. If this implementation is required, please contact the Perkins Application Department to discuss requirements.

A traditional tacho signal may be obtained from the ‘W’ terminal of the alternator, although this will not be as accurate as the value transmitted on the J1939 Datalink.

### 11.2.1 Datalink Driven Intelligent Displays

J1939 enabled operator display / gauge units can be connected to the engine J1939 Datalink. Perkins offers lamp information that conforms to the J1939 standard PGN and SPN messaging system.

Devices that are connected to the J1939 Datalink should meet the following standard if the OEM does not intend fitting the indicator lamps.

### 11.2.2 Minimum Functional Specification for J1939 display.

The following points describe the functional specification for the installation of an operator display.

- The display is always on when the engine is running.
- The display should be in the line-of-sight of the machine operator during machine operation.
- Display the whole J1939 fault code including Suspect Parameter Number (SPN), Failure Mode Indicator (FMI) and occurrence number.
- Clear indication of what action, if any the operator is required to take.
- Display of engine speed.
- Audible or bright lamp warning when a new fault code is detected.
- The scaling of any gauges (e.g. coolant temperature) should be such that the needle is not far to the right of vertical when the engine is in normal operation (this would give the impression that the engine was abnormally hot, when in fact it is running within its design limits).
- An initial Lamp check should be managed by the Display

Perkins will under no circumstances change the engine J1939 implementation in order to resolve compatibility issues with gauges or displays other than those displays supplied directly by Perkins.

Gauge manufacturers may contact the Perkins application department for information and assistance in ensuring that their products are compatible with the Perkins engine ECM.

To support new standards and requirements, Perkins may create additional fault code. Therefore, any active engine fault codes including those not recognised or referenced should be displayed.

## 11.3 Lamp Outputs & Operation

### 11.3.1 Hardwired Lamp Outputs

All mandatory engine and aftertreatment indicators are provided as standard as dedicated ECM outputs. Engine ECU pin allocation for each of these indicators are shown below in Table 11.3.

| Indicator  | 400 Series <55kW DOC, DPF | A6E10 ECM I/O |
|--|---------------------------|---------------|
| Engine Warning Indicator                               | ✓                         | J2-23         |
| Engine shutdown Indicator                              | ✓                         | J1-12         |
| Engine Wait To Start Indicator                         | ✓                         | J1-27         |
| Engine Oil Pressure Indicator                          | Optional                  | J1-34         |
| Emissions System Failure Indicator (also known as MIL) | ✓                         | J2-22         |
| DPF Lamp   | ✓                         | J2-10         |
| Wait to disconnect lamp                                | Optional                  | N/A           |
| Engine Running Output Lamp                             | Optional                  | J2-21         |

Table 11.3

### 11.3.2 J1939 Indicator Support

All hardwired status indicators are supported as J1939 messages to support those customers wishing to incorporate these signals into a machine display. PGN and SPN support for these parameters are shown below.

| Indicator Description   | PGN          | SPN  |
|---|--------------|------|
| Warning Indicator   | FECA (65226) | 624  |
| Warning Indicator Flash   | FECA (65226) | 3040 |
| Shutdown Indicator  | FECA (65226) | 623  |
| Engine Protect Indicator  | FECA (65226) | 987  |
| Engine Protect Indicator Flash  | FECA (65226) | 3041 |
| Engine Wait To Start Indicator  | FEE4 (65252) | 1081 |
| Oil Pressure Indicator  | FD05 (64773) | 5099 |
| Emissions System Malfunction Indicator  | FECA (65226) | 1213 |
| Emissions System Malfunction Indicator Flash                                  | FECA (65226) | 3038 |
| DPF Indicator   | FD7C (64892) | 3697 |
| Wait to Disconnect Indicator  | F023 (61475) | 4332 |
| Engine Running Output Indicator   | FD92 (64914) | 3543 |
| Aftertreatment Diesel Particulate Filter Active Regeneration Status           | FD7C (64892) | 3700 |
| Aftertreatment Diesel Particulate Filter Status                               | FD7C (64892) | 3701 |
| Diesel Particulate Filter Active Regeneration Inhibited Due to Inhibit Switch | FD7C (64892) | 3703 |

Table 11.4

### 11.3.3 Indicator ISO Reference Symbols





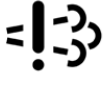
| Symbol  | Symbol Title (ISO)                | Symbol Title                           | Description   | ISO Ref         |
|---|-----------------------------------|--|---|-----------------|
|  | Engine Failure Engine Malfunction | Engine Warning Indicator               | Used to indicate engine and emissions system diagnostics.                                 | ISO 7000-1371   |
|  | Engine Stop                       | Shutdown Indicator                     | Indicates engine shutdown required for severe system faults / events.                     | ISO 7000-1388   |
|  | Engine Electrical Preheat         | Engine Wait To Start Indicator         | Indicates pre-heat phase has been completed.  | ISO 7000-1704   |
|  | Engine lubricating oil pressure   | Oil Pressure Indicator                 | To indicate the engine oil pressure.  | ISO 7000-1374   |
|  | Engine emission system failure    | Emissions System Malfunction Indicator | To indicate that the emission system has failed or falls outside of specified parameters. | ISO 7000 – 2596 |

Table 11.5

### 11.3.4 Engine Shutdown Indicator

#### 11.3.4.1 Engine Shutdown Indicator Operation

The engine shutdown indicator is operated upon the engine entering a operating / fault condition which requires the engine to shut down for control / safety reasons. If the engine monitoring system is configured to a level 3 (warning, de-rate and shutdown) then the engine may also automatically shut down. The engine shutdown indicator is also used in conjunction with the Emissions system malfunction indicator to signal emissions critical faults.

#### 11.3.4.2 Engine Shutdown Indicator configuration

The engine shutdown indicator is a mandatory fit item. There is no configuration necessary for the Engine shutdown indicator. It can be either Hardwired or displayed through the J1939 Network.

#### 11.3.4.3 Engine Shutdown Indicator Installation

Find below the wiring schmatic for the hardwired option:

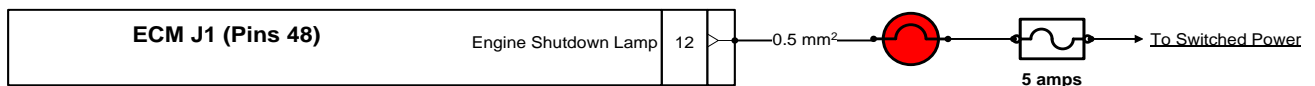


Figure 11-1

The Engine shutdown Indicator is also available via J1939 as shown below.

| Function                  | PGN  | SPN | Byte | Start bit | Length | Applicable States |
|---------------------------|------|-----|------|-----------|--------|-------------------|
| Shutdown Indicator status | FECA | 623 | 1    | 5         | 2      | 00 (OFF)          |
|                           |      |     |      |           |        | 01 (ON)           |

Table 11.6

### 11.3.5 Engine Warning Indicator

#### 11.3.5.1 Engine Warning Indicator Operation

The warning indicator is used to alert the operator of an engine / operating condition that has the potential to cause engine damage. The warning indicator will illuminate when an active diagnostic or event code is raised. The warning indicator will flash for any diagnostics that cause an engine derate or any event code with a severity level 2 or greater.

#### 11.3.5.2 Engine Warning Indicator Configuration

The engine warning lamp is a mandatory fit item. There is no specific configuration necessary for the Engine warning Indicator. It can be either Hardwired or displayed through the J1939 Network.

#### 11.3.5.3 Engine Warning Indicator Installation

Find below the wiring schematic for the Hardwired option:

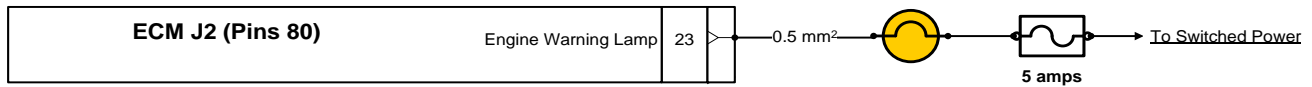


Figure 11-2

The engine warning Indicator is also available via J1939 as shown below.

| Function                 | PGN  | SPN  | Byte | Start bit | Length | Applicable States |
|--------------------------|------|------|------|-----------|--------|-------------------|
| Warning Indicator Status | FECA | 624  | 1    | 3         | 2      | 00 (OFF)          |
|                          |      | 987  |      |           |        | 01 (ON)           |
| Warning Indicator Flash  | FECA | 3040 | 2    | 3         | 2      | 01 (Fast Flash)   |
|                          |      | 3041 |      |           |        | 00 (Slow flash)   |

Table 11.7

### 11.3.6 Engine Wait to Start Indicator

#### 11.3.6.1 Engine Wait to Start Indicator Operation

The Wait to Start Indicator is a mandatory component, which is used to indicate to the operator that the engine is ready to start. The Indicator is controlled by the engine cold start strategy and while illuminated indicates that the engine should not be started. For more information on the wait to start indicator operation please refer to section 10.0.

### 11.3.6.2 Engine Wait to Start Indicator Configuration

The engine wait to start lamp is a mandatory fit item. There is no specific configuration necessary for the Engine warning Indicator. It can be either Hardwired or displayed through the J1939 Network.

### 11.3.6.3 Engine Wait to Start Indicator Installation

Find below the wiring schmatic for the hardwired option:

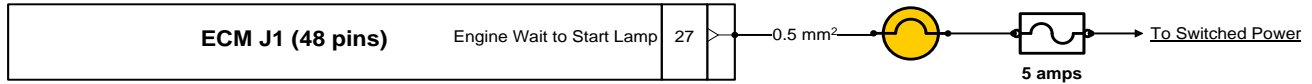


Figure 11-3

The engine wait to start Indicator is also available via J1939 as shown below.

| Function                | PGN  | SPN  | Byte | Start bit | Length | Applicable States |
|-------------------------|------|------|------|-----------|--------|-------------------|
| Wait to Start Indicator | FEE4 | 1081 | 4    | 1         | 2      | 00 (OFF)          |
|                         |      |      |      |           |        | 01 (ON)           |

Table 11.8

## 11.3.7 Oil Pressure Indicator

### 11.3.7.1 Oil Pressure Indicator Operation

The low engine oil pressure indicator is used in conjunction with the engine monitoring system to indicate to the operator that the engine oil pressure has dropped below a predefined threshold. The engine control system constantly monitors the engine oil pressure switch and the switch is normally closed, the switch will open when a positive pressure between 60 to 90 kPa is detected. If the switch closes when the engine is running, the oil warning indicator will be activated and a diagnostic code will be raised.

### 11.3.7.2 Oil Pressure Indicator Configuration

The Threshold level for the lamp activation is set within the engine software and is non-configurable. There is no configuration required for the Oil Pressure Indicator to operate. It can be either Hardwired or displayed through the J1939 Network.

### 11.3.7.3 Oil Pressure Indicator Installation

Find below the wiring schmatic for the hardwired option:

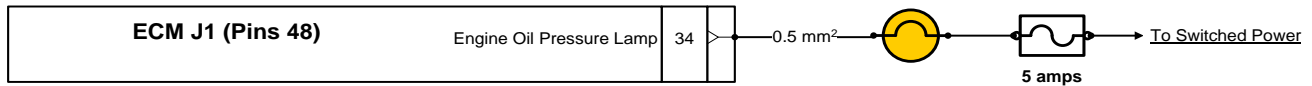


Figure 11-4

The oil pressure indicator is also available via J1939 as shown below.

| Function                             | PGN  | SPN  | Byte | Start bit | Length | Applicable States |
|--------------------------------------|------|------|------|-----------|--------|-------------------|
| Engine Oil Pressure Low Lamp Command | FD05 | 5099 | 2    | 5         | 2      | 00 (OFF)          |
|                                      |      |      |      |           |        | 01 (ON)           |

Table 11.9

### 11.3.8 Emissions System Malfunction Indicator (MIL Lamp)

#### 11.3.8.1 Emissions System Malfunction Indicator Operation

The emissions system malfunction indicator is designed to highlight any faults with emissions system critical components. This indicator is used in conjunction with warning, and shutdown indicators to highlight system issues with the NRS system and SCR system. The indicator is mandatory and its use is governed by the EU and EPA emissions regulations. For more details regarding the use of the emissions system malfunction inducements please refer to section 12.1.2.

#### 11.3.8.2 Emissions System Malfunction Indicator Configuration

The Emissions System Malfunction Indicator is a mandatory fit item. There is no specific configuration necessary for the emissions system malfunction indicator. It can be either Hardwired or displayed through the J1939 Network.

#### 11.3.8.3 Emissions System Malfunction Indicator Installation

Find below the wiring schmatic for the hardwired option:

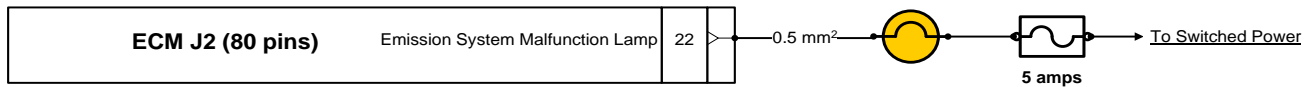


Figure 11-5

The emissions system malfunction indicator is also available via J1939 as shown below.

| Function                    | PGN  | SPN  | Byte | Start bit | Length | Applicable States |
|-----------------------------|------|------|------|-----------|--------|-------------------|
| Malfunction Indicator Lamp  | FECA | 1213 | 1    | 7         | 2      | 00 (OFF)          |
|                             |      |      |      |           |        | 01 (ON)           |
| Flash Malfunction Indicator | FECA | 3038 | 2    | 7         | 2      | 00 (Slow flash)   |
|                             |      |      |      |           |        | 01 (Fast Flash)   |

Table 11.10

### 11.3.9 Wait To Disconnect Indicator

#### 11.3.9.1 Wait To Disconnect Indicator Operation

The wait to disconnect indicator is an optional fit item used to alert the machine operator that the engine is still active and the battery disconnect switch (battery isolation switch) should not be used. Post ignition off, the Engine enters the post-run strategy to save important information about the engine.

#### 11.3.9.2 Wait To Disconnect Indicator Configuration

No configuration is required to enable the wait to disconnect indicator as the indicator is activated of the ECM power relay. It can be either Hardwired or displayed through the J1939 Network.

#### 11.3.9.3 Wait To Disconnect Indicator Installation

The location of the Wait To Disconnect indicator should be placed as close as possible to the battery disconnect switch (battery isolation switch).

Find below the wiring schematic for the hardwired option:

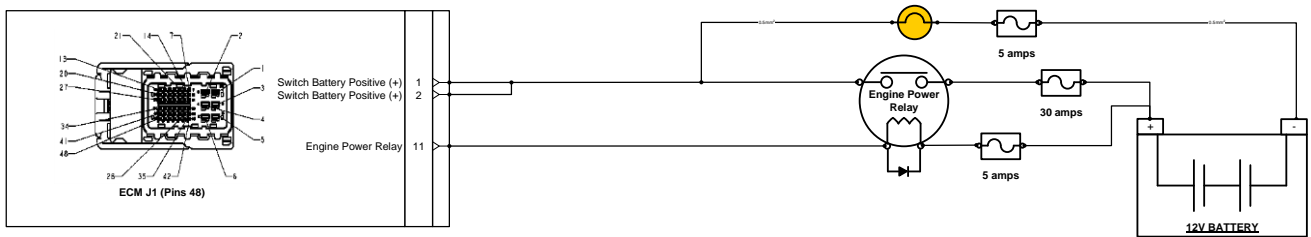


Figure 11-6

The Wait to Disconnect indicator is also available via J1939 as shown below.

| Function                     | PGN  | SPN  | Byte | Start bit | Length | Applicable States              |
|------------------------------|------|------|------|-----------|--------|--------------------------------|
| Wait to Disconnect Indicator | F023 | 4332 | 3    | 1         | 4      | ON = any state other than 1011 |
|                              |      |      |      |           |        | OFF = 1011 OK to power down    |

Table 11.11

### 11.3.10 DPF Indicator

#### 11.3.10.1 DPF Indicator Operation

The DPF lamp is used to indicate that higher thermals are required in the DPF canister to aid the removal of soot from the Aftertreatment canister.

#### 11.3.10.2 DPF Indicator Configuration

The DPF lamp is a mandatory fit item. There is no specific configuration necessary for the DPF Indicator. It can be either Hardwired or displayed through the J1939 Network.

#### 11.3.10.3 DPF Indicator Installation

Find below the wiring schematic for the hardwired option:

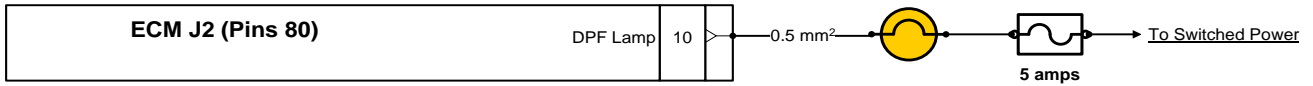


Figure 11-7

The DPF Indicator is also available via J1939 as shown below.

| Function                               | PGN  | SPN  | Byte | Start bit | Length | Applicable States |
|--|------|------|------|-----------|--------|-------------------|
| Diesel Particulate Filter Lamp Command | FD7C | 3697 | 1    | 1         | 3      | Off = 000         |
|  |      |      |      |           |        | On = 001          |

Table 11.12

### 11.3.11 Engine Running Output Indicator

#### 11.3.11.1 Engine Running Output Indicator Operation

The engine running feature shall switch an ECM output when the engine speed reaches a configurable speed threshold in the engine software. The purpose of this output is to indicate engine state for machine control systems.

#### 11.3.11.2 Engine Running Output Indicator Configuration

The Engine Running Output lamp is an optional fit item. There is some specific configuration necessary for this indicator when it needs to be turned ON and at what engine speed. It can be either Hardwired or displayed through the J1939 Network.

#### 11.3.11.3 Engine Running Output Indicator Installation

Find below the wiring schematic for the hardwired option:

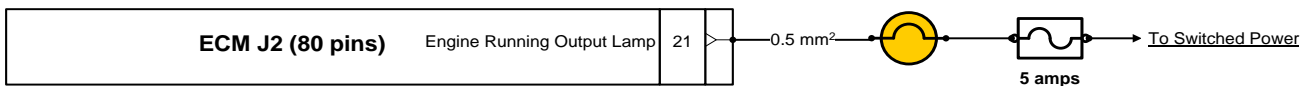


Figure 11-8

The Engine Running Output Indicator is also available via J1939 as shown below.

| PGN # | PGN Description                    | SPN # | SPN Description  |
|-------|------------------------------------|-------|--|
| 64914 | Engine Operating Information (EOI) | 3543  | Engine Operating State   |
|       |                                    |       | Bit State 0000 = Engine Stopped<br>Bit State 0001 = Pre-Start<br>Bit State 0010 = Starting<br>Bit State 0100 = Running<br>Bit State 0110 = Engine Stopping |

Table 11.13

## 11.3.12 Regeneration Active Lamp

### 11.3.12.1 Regeneration Active Lamp Operation

The Regeneration Active Lamp can be used by OEMs that wish to display to the operator when the DPF Regeneration is active. This lamp indicates that the exhaust system **may** be hotter than normal, but this will depend heavily on the design of the machine tailpipe.

### 11.3.12.2 Regeneration Active Lamp Configuration

The Regeneration Active Lamp is an optional fit item, unless the Inhibit Switch is installed in which case it is mandatory. There is no specific configuration necessary for the Regeneration Active Lamp. It can be either Hardwired or displayed through the J1939 Network.

### 11.3.12.3 Regeneration Active Lamp Installation

See section **Error! Reference source not found.** for further details.

## 11.3.13 Regeneration Inhibit Lamp

The ECM has the ability to display a lamp when the Regeneration of the Aftertreatment system is inhibited. This lamp is mandatory if the Regeneration Inhibit Switch is installed, otherwise it is not required. The Inhibit Switch is only required for certain applications, please **consult Section 13.4 for details.**

### 11.3.13.1 Regeneration Inhibit Lamp Configuration

There is no specific configuration necessary for the Regeneration Inhibit Lamp. It can be either Hardwired or displayed through the J1939 Network.

### 11.3.13.2 Regeneration Inhibit Lamp Installation

See section **Error! Reference source not found.** for further details.

## 12.0 Engine & Aftertreatment Monitoring System

The engine control system is designed to monitor each engine and aftertreatment sensor / actuator and react to system critical or emissions critical failures. When a system error occurs such as high engine coolant temperature the engine monitoring system reacts by raising the appropriate engine diagnostic level and in some cases forces the engine into a derate condition or controlled shutdown.

It is recognized that for some applications a control system induced engine shutdown or derate could cause safety concerns or auxiliary equipment damage and for these reasons the engine response can be configured.

It should be noted however that Tier 4 Final / Stage V emissions legislation mandates the use of some specific system controls and failure reactions in the form of derates etc. which cannot be disabled or adjusted. The following sections provide details of these exceptions and how they operate.

### 12.1 General Information

The engine monitoring system includes two parts. The first part can be configured via the Monitoring Mode screen in the service tool and shows the individual parameters being monitored, the levels of severity that can be activated and the trip points at which these warnings will activate. In some cases these parameters can be changed by the user.

The engine monitoring is configured through the configuration screen and is where the engine's response to the severity level can be set. If a level 2 (moderate severity) becomes active then a derate of the engines power can be enabled. If a level 3 warning (most severe) becomes active then an engine shut down can be enabled. A level 1 warning is always enabled and level 2 / level 3 warning can be disabled only so regardless of warning level the engine will continue to operate until it is unable to do so.

**Note: Due to changes in emissions legislation some emissions critical diagnostics have fixed engine-response criteria, which is non-configurable.**

#### 12.1.1 Monitoring Levels

There are three configurable engine monitoring levels available within the engine software. These options determine the engines response to the activation of a diagnostic severity level. The options are;

- Warning (Always active)
- Derate
- Shutdown

The Engine critical parameters are pre-configured to a fixed threshold. The customer optional input can be monitored through the Engine ECM and will be fully configurable. Specific active codes are associated to each fault and will be communicated through the J1939 Network.

##### 12.1.1.1 Warning mode

The engine monitoring warning is always active and cannot be disabled.

Activation of this engine monitoring option ensures that upon the engine measuring an engine parameter above a factory defined threshold an appropriate warning indicator will be triggered, which is logged by the engine ECM and the appropriate warning indicator is activated (dependent on customer machine design - hardwired Lamps or J1939 indicators).

##### 12.1.1.2 Derate Mode

The engine monitoring derate level is configurable and therefore can be enabled or disabled depending on customer requirements.

Each monitored parameter that uses the derate function has a defined threshold calibrated into the engine software. If the derate threshold is equaled or exceeded by any parameter, a derate protection will be active and the engine performance will be limited. The level of engine percentage derate will vary depending upon the parameter being monitored.

The ECM will log these events and activate appropriate warning indicator (dependent on customer machine design – hardwired lamps or J1939 indicators) with the applied engine derate. A derate is only activated when a diagnostic severity level 2 or above is raised.

**12.1.1.3 Shutdown Mode**

The engine monitoring shutdown level is configurable and therefore can be enabled or disabled depending on customer requirements.

Each monitored parameter that uses the shutdown function has a defined threshold calibrated into the engine software. If the shutdown threshold is equaled or exceeded by any parameter for a calibrated time period the engine will shut down if enabled by the configurable parameter.

The ECM will log these events and activate appropriate shutdown indicator (dependent on customer machine design – hardwired lamps or J1939 indicators). A shut down function will only operate once a diagnostic severity level 3 is activated.

**12.1.2 Parameter Severity Levels**

The monitoring system provides up to three possible severity levels for each of the configurable system parameters. These levels are defined as severity level 1 (least severe), 2 (moderate severity) and 3 (most severe). The level of severity is displayed upon activation of the parameter Event code. For example, the Engine coolant temperature severity level 1 is exceeded. Upon activation an Event code is generated in this case 110-1. The –1 part of the code signals that a severity level 1 threshold has been exceeded. If a level 2 is raised then the same event code is raised but with a –2.

The levels available for each parameter are set within software and cannot be changed. Whilst the number of levels are not configurable each available level is designed to offer an increased level of action by the engine once a threshold for the monitored parameter has been set. Some engine parameters enable the customer to directly configure the thresholds at which these conditions are activated and others are fixed.

It should be noted that when engine shutdowns are enabled the following system response is true.











|       | Engine Diagnostic Codes / Event Codes   |   |   |                 |               |                 | Comments                           |
|-------|---|---|---|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|------------------------------------|
|       | Warning Indicator   | Protect Indicator   | Stop Indicator  | SPN Broadcasted | Engine Derate | Engine Shutdown |                                    |
| WCI 0 | <br>Off - SPN624         | <br>Off - SPN987         | <br>Off - SPN623   | ✓               | ✗             | ✗               | Service Technician codes           |
| WCI 1 | <br>Solid - SPN624       | Off - SPN987  | Off - SPN623  | ✓               | ✗             | ✗               | Level 1 engine diagnostic.         |
| WCI 2 | <br>Slow flash - SPN3040 | <br>Slow flash - SPN3041 | <br>Off - SPN623   | ✓               | ✓             | ✗               | Level 2 engine diagnostic / event. |
| WCI 3 | <br>Fast Flash - SPN3040 | <br>Fast Flash - SPN3041 | <br>Solid - SPN623 | ✓               | ✓             | ✓               | Level 3 engine diagnostic / event. |

Table 12.1

### 12.1.3 Monitoring System Configurable Parameters

The table below details the Monitoring system parameters that are available for configuration by the customer.

|                     | Level | State     | Trip Point | Trip Point Range | Default Delay Time | Delay Time Range | Eng Speed Threshold | Default Startup Delay (s) | Startup Delay Range (s) |
|---------------------|-------|-----------|------------|------------------|--------------------|------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| High Air Inlet Diff | 1     | Always ON | Switch     | N/A              | 4                  | 4                | 1400                | 0                         | 0                       |
|                     | 2     | Always ON | Switch     | N/A              | 30                 | 30               | 1400                | 0                         | 0                       |
| High Aux Press      | 1     | Always ON | 250kPa     | 0 - 3150         | 4                  | 4 - 60           | N/A                 | 0                         | 0                       |
|                     | 2     | ON / OFF  | 500kPa     | 0 - 3150         | 4                  | 4 - 60           | N/A                 | 0                         | 0                       |
|                     | 3     | ON / OFF  | 1000kPa    | 0 - 3150         | 4                  | 4 - 60           | N/A                 | 0                         | 0                       |
| High Aux Temp       | 1     | Always ON | 105        | 0 - 145          | 4                  | 4 - 60           | N/A                 | 120                       | 0 - 180                 |
|                     | 2     | ON / OFF  | 106        | 0 - 145          | 4                  | 4 - 60           | N/A                 | 120                       | 0 - 180                 |
|                     | 3     | ON / OFF  | 107        | 0 - 145          | 4                  | 4 - 60           | N/A                 | 120                       | 0 - 180                 |
| Low Coolant Level   | 1     | Always ON | Switch     | N/A              | 10                 | 10               | N/A                 | N/A                       | N/A                     |
|                     | 2     | Always ON | Switch     | N/A              | 30                 | 30               | N/A                 | N/A                       | N/A                     |
|                     | 3     | ON / OFF  | Switch     | N/A              | 60                 | 60               | N/A                 | N/A                       | N/A                     |
| Low Oil Level       | 1     | Always ON | Switch     | N/A              | 2                  | 2                | N/A                 | N/A                       | N/A                     |
|                     | 2     | Always ON | Switch     | N/A              | 3                  | 3                | N/A                 | N/A                       | N/A                     |
|                     | 3     | ON / OFF  | Switch     | N/A              | 12                 | 12               | N/A                 | N/A                       | N/A                     |

Table 12.2 Available Engine Monitoring System Parameters

The following table shows an **example** of other monitoring system parameters that can be configured. Please note though that the values below are examples and will change depending on the Engine Hardware e.g. default settings for overspeed are dependant on the rated speed.

|                           | Level | State     | Trip Point | Trip Point Range | Default Delay Time | Delay Time Range | Eng Speed Threshold | Default Startup Delay (s) | Startup Delay Range (s) |
|---------------------------|-------|-----------|------------|------------------|--------------------|------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| Engine Overspeed          | 1     | Always ON | 3000       | 2600 - 3000      | 0                  | 0                | N/A                 | 0                         | 0                       |
|                           | 3     | ON / OFF  | 3000       | 2600 - 3000      | 0                  | 0                | N/A                 | 0                         | 0                       |
| High Coolant Temp         | 1     | Always ON | 106        | 85 - 109         | 5                  | 1 – 60           | N/A                 | N/A                       | N/A                     |
|                           | 2     | ON / OFF  | 111        | 86 – 113         | 5                  | 1 – 60           | N/A                 | N/A                       | N/A                     |
|                           | 3     | ON / OFF  | 111        | 87 - 116         | 5                  | 1 - 60           | N/A                 | N/A                       | N/A                     |
| High Intake Manifold Temp | 1     | Always ON | 55         | 40 – 105         | 4                  | 1 - 120          | N/A                 | N/A                       | 180                     |
|                           | 2     | ON / OFF  | 99         | 40 – 107         | 4                  | 1 – 120          | N/A                 | N/A                       | 180                     |
|                           | 3     | ON / OFF  | 105        | 40 - 110         | 10                 | 1 - 120          | N/A                 | N/A                       | 180                     |

Table 12.3 Example Engine-dependent Monitoring System Parameters

## 12.2 Emissions Critical Components Monitoring & Protection

Tier 4 Final / Stage V emissions legislations for both EU and EPA engine sales, stipulate that the use of operator inducements are mandatory for all SCR equipped non road engines. The term inducement covers any action intended to alert / prompt the operator of a machine to repair or perform maintenance on the emissions control system. Examples of inducements and use of engine warning indicators, engine torque / power derates and engine speed limiting etc.

### 12.2.1 Inducement Strategy High Level Overview

The 400 Series Tier 4 Final/Stage V engine inducement strategy can be divided into four distinct escalation sections;

1. Warning indicators
2. Specific fault messages
3. Engine Power Derates, and Engine Speed Derate
4. Final engine inducement strategies including force engine idle down or shutdown.

The areas of the emissions system covered by the legislation and therefore form part of the specific inducement strategy are:

1. System Tampering (T)
2. Impeded NRS (E)

Whilst the requirement for specific Inducement strategies relating to the engine emissions system are required by both the EU and EPA, the mandatory implementation requirements for each legislation do vary. For this reason Perkins has implemented a combined inducement strategy, which meets both emissions standards.

### 12.2.2 Combined EU / EPA Inducement Strategy Operation

The combined EU/EPA Inducement strategy can be segmented into specific responses for;

1. System Tampering
2. Impeded NRS

In the event of one or more of these conditions becoming active the engine control system will raise an engine diagnostic or event code for the specific item or system causing the problem. In addition to this diagnostic code the engine will also raise further codes to indicate that the inducement strategy has been operated. The initial diagnostic / event code is designed to activate the engine warning indicator as with all engine related problems. The second set of codes are responsible for activation of the operator inducement strategy as described in sections below.

Inducement escalation codes applicable to sections 12.2.2.1 and 12.2.2.2.

- **5246-15** – Aftertreatment SCR Operator Inducement Severity High – Least Severe (Level 1)
- **5246-16** - Aftertreatment SCR Operator Inducement Severity High – Moderate Severity (Level 2)
- **5246-0** - Aftertreatment SCR Operator Inducement Severity High – Most Severe (Level 3)

#### 12.2.2.1 Inducement – NRS System Failure













|       | Technical SCR System Failure  |  |   |                                |                                     |                        |                        | Comments                        |  |
|-------|---|--|---|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------------|--|
|       | Warning Indicator   | Stop Indicator   | Emission Systems Failure Indicator  | Escalation Time 1st Occurrence | Escalation Time Repeated Occurrence | Engine Power available | Engine speed available |                                 | Derate Ramp Time   |
| WCI 0 | <br>Off        | <br>Off   | <br>Off        | 0 minutes                      | 0 minutes                           | 100%                   | 100%                   | -                               | Normal Operation   |
| WCI 1 | <br>Solid      | <br>Off   | <br>Solid      | 150 minutes                    | 5 minutes                           | 100%                   | 100%                   | -                               | level 1 inducement active.   |
| WCI 2 | <br>Slow flash | <br>Off   | <br>Slow Flash | 220 minutes                    | 10 minutes                          | 100%                   | 100%                   | - (Mild)<br>10 minutes (Severe) | Level 2 inducement active.   |
| WCI 3 | <br>Fast Flash | <br>Solid | <br>Fash Flash | Until Fault Heals              | Until Fault Heals                   | 50%                    | 100%                   | 5 minutes                       | Level 3 inducement actived<br>5 minutes cool down, Engine derate by 50% torque then Shutdown OR Idle |

Table 12.4

Note: Safe Harbor will be activated for 20 minutes by first key cycle after Inducement Level 3

**12.2.2.2 Inducement – Impeded NRS Inducement strategy**

|       | Impeded NRS       |                |                                    |                                |                                     |                        |                        |                  | Comments   |
|-------|-------------------|----------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------|--|
|       | Warning Indicator | Stop Indicator | Emission Systems Failure Indicator | Escalation Time 1st Occurrence | Escalation Time Repeated Occurrence | Engine Power available | Engine speed available | Derate Ramp Time |  |
| WCI 0 | Off               | Off            | Solid                              | 0 minutes                      | 0 minutes                           | 100%                   | 100%                   | -                | Normal Operation   |
| WCI 1 | Slow flash        | Off            | Solid                              | 35 hours                       | 48 minutes                          | 100%                   | 100%                   | -                | level 1 inducement active.   |
| WCI 2 | Fast Flash        | Off            | Slow Flash                         | 36 hours                       | 108 minutes                         | 100%                   | 100%                   | -                | Level 2 inducement active.   |
| WCI 3 | Fast Flash        | Solid          | Flash Flash                        | Until Fault Heals              | Until Fault Heals                   | 50%                    | 100%                   | 5 minutes        | Level 3 inducement actived<br>5 minutes cool down, Engine derate by 50% torque then Shutdown OR Idle |

Table 12.5

Note: Safe Harbor will be activated for 20 minutes by first key cycle after Inducement Level 3

**12.2.3 Combined EU/EPA Inducement Strategy Configuration**

The final inducement behaviour is configurable for the operation of the Inducement strategy to be tailored to a particular machine types needs. It can be configured as follows:

- Level 3 Inducement Idle Down or Engine shutdown (applies to all Inducements)

The Engine Idle Down or Shutdown option provides configurability of the engine response once a L3 Inducement has been activated. This can be configured in the Service Tool under the Operator Final Inducement Action.

**12.2.4 Repeat Occurrence and Final Inducement Handling**

Both Tier 4 Final/Stage V emissions standards require specific system reactions to repeat occurrences and persistent failure of an emissions critical component or system. These requirements are covered within the Perkins World Wide inducement strategy as detailed in the following sections.

**12.2.4.1 Final Inducement handling**

In the event of an emissions system fault reaching a Level 3 severity the following actions will take place;

- Level 3 criteria must be active for 20sec before any Inducement is activated.
- After 20sec the engine will proceed to the selected level 3 inducement i.e. one of the following;
  - 5-min cool down at low idle / Available Torque reduced by 50% then shutdown,
  - or
  - Idle only operation at no load.

**12.2.4.2 Repeat Fault Occurrence Handling**

For all emission critical failures covered by the inducement strategy there is a requirement for repeat occurrences of faults to be monitored.

To meet the legislation requirements Perkins engines will monitor for a repeat occurrence of a fault for 40 hours after the fault condition is healed. If a system fault occurs in the same category within 40 hours the times for warning and inducements will be reduced (indicated by the Inducement Time Repeat Occurrence column)

**12.2.5 Final Inducement Safe Harbor Mode.**

Safe harbor mode is a mode of operation that allows for full engine torque capability post Inducement Level 3 activation for a limited time period. This strategy is designed to allow a machine that has been forced to low idle

or shutdown due to a system failure causing a Level 3 inducement to be moved to an area where rework can take place.

Once the final inducement has been completed the first ignition key switch cycle after this event will enable the safe harbor strategy. Once active the following applies;

- Strategy is active for 20 minutes only and timer is **NOT** reset by cycling the ignition key switch.
- During the 20 minutes of safe harbor mode the engine can be turned off and restarted as many times as required
- During the 20 minutes of safe harbor mode the engine will revert to a Level 2 inducement.
- After 20 minutes the engine will revert back to Level 3 inducement handling i.e. 5 min cooldown at Low idle with 50% Torque reduction then shutdown or idle.

### 12.2.6 Engine First Fit Inducement Activation

To ensure Inducement diagnostics are not false triggered during machine assembly the 400 Series product range is shipped with Inducements disabled. No EST configuration is required to enable the engine inducements once machine assembly has been completed. The automatic enablement of the Inducement strategy is based on either of the following criteria being met.

- Engine running exceeds 25 hours (initiated from first engine start and does not reset on key cycle)
- System has been detected (by Engine control system) as fault free for 2 hours of engine running time.

## 12.3 Non Emissions Critical Component Monitoring & Protection

All of the monitoring parameters in the section below are driven by core engine sensors and some cannot be deactivated. Where Level 2 (moderate severity) limits are configured the associated torque derate is listed.

### 12.3.1 Coolant Temperature

#### 12.3.1.1 Coolant Temperature Monitoring Mode Operation

The high engine coolant temperature monitoring mode is configured to indicate to the operator that the engine coolant temperature has exceed a pre-determined threshold. The configuration of these thresholds can be adjusted by the user to determine when a Severity Level 1, 2 and 3 is activated. The table below shows the default configuration for this mode assuming a 112°C Top Tank Temperature is chosen.

| Parameter   | Temp °C | Torque De-rate % |
|-------------|---------|------------------|
| Severity L1 | 113     | 0                |
| Severity L2 | 114     | 16.6             |
|             | 115     | 33.2             |
| Severity L3 | 116     | 50               |
|             | 117     | 50               |
|             | 118     | 50               |

Table 12.6 Coolant Temperature Monitoring Mode Derate Operation

Once the engine ECM detects that the engine coolant temperature has exceeded one or more of the defined threshold limits a corresponding event code is raised as shown below.

| Service Tool Description        | J1939 Description          | Status      | SPN (J1939) | FMI (J1939) | Event Code | Engine Action (If Enabled) |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|------------|----------------------------|
| High Engine Coolant Temperature | Engine Coolant Temperature | Severity L1 | 110         | 15          | E361-1     | Warning Lamp Only          |
|                                 |                            | Severity L2 | 110         | 16          | E361-2     | Engine % Derate            |
|                                 |                            | Severity L3 | 110         | 00          | E361-3     | Engine Shutdown            |

Table 12.7 Coolant Temperature Monitoring

**12.3.1.2 Coolant Temperature Monitoring Mode Configuration**

See section 12.1.3 for more details.

**12.3.1.3 Coolant Temperature Monitoring Mode Installation**

No installation is required for the engine coolant temperature monitoring function.

**12.3.2 Engine Oil Pressure**

**12.3.2.1 Engine Oil Pressure Monitoring Mode Operation**

Engine oil pressure is automatically monitored by the engine ECM to protect the engine from operating without sufficient oil pressure, as low oil pressure could lead to catastrophic engine failure. The minimum oil pressure is defined as a function of engine speed, which is factory set and non-configurable. Once these values are tripped the engine will raise an appropriate event code and take appropriate action. The table below shows the oil pressure trigger levels for each monitoring mode configuration.

| Parameter   | Trigger Delay Time (sec) | Heal Trigger Debounce Time (sec) | Engine derated by % torque |
|-------------|--------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Severity L3 | 2                        | 20                               | 50                         |

Table 12.8 Oil Pressure Monitoring Mode Derate Operation

| Service Tool Description | J1939 Description   | Status      | SPN (J1939) | FMI (J1939) | Event Code | Engine Action (If enabled) |
|--------------------------|---------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|------------|----------------------------|
| Low Engine Oil Pressure  | Engine Oil Pressure | Severity L3 | 100         | 01          | E360-3     | Engine Shutdown            |

Table 12.9 Oil Pressure Monitoring

**12.3.2.2 Engine Oil Pressure Monitoring Mode Configuration**

The low engine oil pressure monitoring mode is a factory set monitoring mode, which has fixed thresholds that cannot be adjusted.

**12.3.2.3 Engine Oil Pressure Monitoring Mode Installation**

No installation is required for the engine oil pressure monitoring function.

**12.3.3 Intake Manifold Temperature**

**12.3.3.1 Intake Manifold Temperature Monitoring Mode Operation**

The engine intake manifold air temperature is monitored by the engine management system to ensure that the engine remains emissions compliant when high intake manifold temperatures are measured.

| Parameter   | Temp °C | Engine derated by % torque |
|-------------|---------|----------------------------|
| Severity L1 | 55      | 0                          |
| Severity L2 | 99      | 0                          |
|             | 100     | 10                         |
|             | 101     | 15                         |
|             | 102     | 20                         |
|             | 103     | 25                         |

Table 12.10 Example of Intake Manifold Temperature Monitoring Mode Derate Operation

Once the engine ECM detects that the engine intake manifold air temperature has exceeded one or more of the defined threshold limits a corresponding event code is raised as shown below.

| Service Tool Description             | J1939 Description               | Status      | SPN (J1939) | FMI (J1939) | Event Code | Engine Action (If Enabled) |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|------------|----------------------------|
| High Intake Manifold Air Temperature | Intake Manifold Air Temperature | Severity L1 | 105         | 15          | E539-1     | Warning Lamp Only          |
|                                      |                                 | Severity L2 | 105         | 16          | E539-2     | Engine Derate              |
|                                      |                                 | Severity L3 | 105         | 0           | E539-3     | Engine Shutdown            |

Table 12.11 Intake Manifold Temperature Monitoring

**12.3.3.2 Intake Manifold Temperature Monitoring Mode Configuration**

See section 12.1.3 for more details.

**12.3.3.3 Intake Manifold Temperature Monitoring Mode Installation**

No installation is required for the engine intake manifold temperature monitoring function.

## 13.0 Machine Integration Consideration

### 13.1 Aftertreatment System Operation

The Perkins 400 Series product range uses various combinations of aftertreatment technologies. In each case the chosen technologies have been selected as the optimal combination to meet the Tier 4 Final/Stage V emissions standards. The table below provides details of the 400 Series product configurations.

| Aftertreatment Technology |          |                |                                |
|---------------------------|----------|----------------|--------------------------------|
| Engine                    | Power Kw | Aftertreatment | Aftertreatment Management Type |
| 400 Series Stage V        | <55kW    | DOC, DPF       | Passive Plus                   |
| 400 Series Tier 4 Final   | <55kW    | DOC            | Passive Plus                   |

Table 13.1 Tier 4 Final/Stage V Aftertreatment Technology

#### 13.1.1 DOC Operation

The DOC consists of a ceramic substrate coated with an oxide mixture and a catalyzing metal. The engine DOC is required to perform the following functions;

- Remove CO and HC portions of the engine exhaust gas.
- Oxidize NO to NO<sub>2</sub> to help reactions at the DPF.

#### 13.1.2 DPF Operation

The Diesel particulate filter is required to capture and then remove soot particles (via oxidation) from the engine exhaust via passive plus strategy.

#### 13.1.3 Passive Plus Operation

The products supplied by Perkins fitted with a DPF require DPF management using the passive plus strategy. DPF maintenance is performed continuously throughout the engine operation without the need of any operator interaction.

Passive plus of the engine DPF requires temperatures in the region of 250 - 400DegC during machine operation. The passive plus control strategy also uses a combination of the intake throttle valve and NRS valve when required to help elevate engine exhaust temperatures to allow the DPF maintenance to take place.

#### 13.1.4 Active Regeneration

As part of the DPF maintenance strategy Active Regeneration will be required every 60 hours approximately. This will vary slightly depending on the load factor and ambient weather conditions as these factors affect the efficiency of the Passive Plus Regeneration mentioned above. This regeneration will happen automatically without operator interaction in most cases as the engine can generate enough heat in the DPF whilst the engine is working.

If Active Regeneration is not possible during normal work activities, the Elevated Idle Strategy will be used to help regeneration, as detailed in Section 13.1.5 below.

Engine conditions required for Active Regeneration (HC Dosing) to start:

- Coolant Temperature above 65degC
- DOC In temperature above 250degC
- Engine speed above 1200rpm (unless soot load is high in which case HC dosing will start at lower speeds given above 2 conditions are met)

To help maintain Active Regeneration during normal work cycles:

- Engine Mounted Aftertreatment should be used
- Engine Speed should remain above 1200rpm
- Ambient Temperature above -5degC

If engine speed drops below 1200rpm HC dosing will continue until DOC In temperature drops below 250degC or Coolant temp drops below 65degC.

For installations using Remote aftertreatment or operating in very cold ambient conditions maintaining HC Dosing will be more difficult due to increased temperature loss and so operators should keep engine speed and load even higher than stated above, if possible.

### 13.1.5 Engine Elevated Idle (Mandatory Installation)

Elevated idle must be supported on all machines as the feature is required to support operation of the engine aftertreatment thermal management and Service test procedures using Perkins Electronic Service Tool (Perkins EST). Support for this feature is required for Service Test Procedures to run and is also used to help Active DPF Regeneration in applications that cannot regenerate during normal work cycles.

Minimum criteria for Service Tests to start (Idle status to be 'idle') are:

- Actual Engine speed = Configured Low Idle Speed (as per Service Tool configuration)
- Safe state message received
  - Grounding of J1-37 or
  - Transmission of J1939 PGN 8500 CAB Message 2 SPN 7579 = "01"

Further criteria for Service Tests to start can be found in the Service Test screen.

#### 13.1.5.1 Engine Elevated Idle Operation

DPF products require the customer to provision for an elevated idle operation as part of the machine design. The activation of the elevated idle strategy will be made automatically by the engine if the operator has declared the machine is in a safe state and is used in circumstances where exhaust temperatures are below those needed for Active Regeneration to occur.

##### **First Level**

The engine will increase the engine idle speed to 1200rpm (configurable in the Service Tool) and will attempt to perform an Active Regeneration. If Regeneration did not complete the ECM may illuminate the DPF Warning lamp (see Section 13.2 for full escalation logic) and the higher elevated idle speed setting will be requested (see below.)

##### **Second Level**

If Active Regeneration fails at 1200rpm because the DOC In temperature was too cold (either due to ambient conditions or because the regen was interrupted by the operator) the engine will illuminate the DPF lamp (PGN64892, SPN3697 = 001) which indicates that the next time Elevated Idle is allowed it will increase the engine idle speed to 2000rpm (configurable in the Service Tool.)

The engine provides two mechanisms for the machine to provide permission for an engine speed elevation to take place, these are;

- The grounding of J1-37.
- The transmission of J1939 PGN 8500 CAB Message 2 SPN 7579

The engine will only elevate engine speed if machine permission is given via one of the two methods listed above. Once activated the elevated idle request will be cancelled upon any of the conditions listed below being met.

- Engine Passive Plus process is completed.
- Machine removes permission using J1-37 or J1939 PGN 8500 / SPN 7579.

At any time the machine can be placed back into work regardless of the elevated idle state. The elevated idle request will remain however until a full regeneration has been completed.

**Note: It is the customers responsibility to ensure permission for elevated idle is only given when the machine is in a safe condition for idle speed to be increased to both configured speed thresholds (See First Level and Second Level above.)**

**13.1.5.2 Engine Elevated Idle Configuration**

In software, the Elevated Idle Input method must be configured with the Service Tool.

| Configuration field names                         | Configuration Range | Default Configuration |
|---|---------------------|-----------------------|
| Elevated Engine Speed Allowed Input Configuration | J1939<br>Hardwired  | J1939                 |

Table 13.2

**Note: The use of both hardwired and J1939 elevated idle permission is not permitted. The use of J1939 once activated overrides any switch state provided by the grounding of J1-37.**

It is possible to configure the Elevated Idle Speeds that the engine will use, as shown below:

| Configuration field names   | Configuration Range | Default Configuration |
|---|---------------------|-----------------------|
| Aftertreatment Regeneration Assist Engine Minimum Speed Configuration               | 1200 – 2600rpm*     | 1200rpm               |
| Highest Level Aftertreatment Regeneration Assist Engine Minimum Speed Configuration | 1200 – 2600rpm      | 2000rpm               |

Table 13.3

\*Aftertreatment Regeneration Assist Engine Minimum Speed Configuration cannot be set lower than the Configured Low Idle speed.

Configuration of the Aftertreatment Regeneration Assist Engine Minimum Speed Configuration (default setting 1200rpm) and the Highest Level Aftertreatment Regeneration Assist Engine Minimum Speed Configuration (default setting 2000rpm) can be done by testing the Exhaust Temperature Drop. This test will assess the temperatures in the aftertreatment system in a given ambient temperature at different engine speeds and based upon the minimum ambient operating temp requirement for the machine, an appropriate speed can be chosen that will ensure regen can complete under all conditions.

**13.1.5.3 Engine Elevated Idle Installation – Hardwired Input**

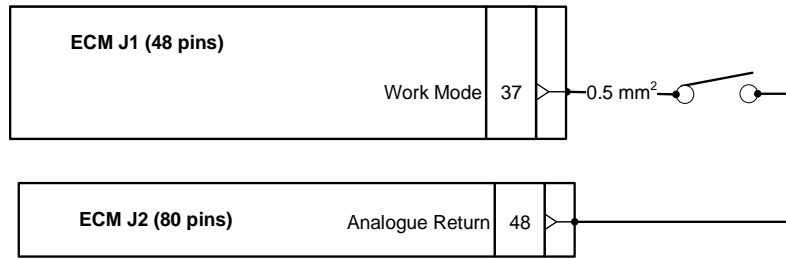


Figure 13-1 Engine Elevated Idle Schematic

The implementation of this input within a machine control system is a mandatory requirement to ensure that the Aftertreatment system can maintain operation under all conditions. The OEM may connect this input via a relay controlled by the machine MCU for example, to only ground when certain conditions are met such as machine in neutral etc.

**13.1.5.4 Engine Elevated Idle Installation – J1939 Input**

The Engine Elevated Idle permission can be conceded by using the J1939 CAN bus and PGN 8500 / SPN 7579. When SPN 7579 is set to 00 the ECM interprets this as an elevated idle NOT allowed input and when set to 01 elevated idle ALLOWED.

| J1939 PGN                | Parameter Number | SPN reference                                 | State  |
|--------------------------|------------------|---|--|
| 8500 CAB Message 2 (CM2) | 34048            | Elevated Engine Speed Allowed Switch SPN 7579 | 00 Not Allowed<br>01 Allowed<br>10 Error<br>11 Not Available |

Table 13.4

**13.1.6 Machine Integration Of Elevated Idle**

The integration of elevated idle feature within a customer machine using either a hardwired input or the J1939 SPN 7579 is a mandatory requirement for all machines. It is important that the customer understands fully the risks of operating an elevated idle speed during operation and controls the permission given to the engine where needed.

For some machines it will be acceptable for permanent permission to be given to the engine for elevated idle conditions when required. Other machines will require conditions such as machine in neutral before the engine idle speed can be elevated.

For machines wishing to only provide elevated idle permission when the engine requires it, two additional SPN's are supported to enable clear engine to machine communication.

| J1939 PGN                                    | Parameter Number | SPN reference  | State  |
|--|------------------|--|--|
| FC31 Aftertreatment System Information (ASI) | 64561            | Aftertreatment Engine Speed Increase Request SPN 7502    | 00 No Request<br>01 Speed Control Desired<br>10 Not Used<br>11 Not Available |
| FEE3 Engine Configuration 1 (EC1)            | 65251            | Engine Requested Speed Control Range Lower Limit SPN 535 | Engine speed value 0 to 2500rpm*   |
| FD7C Diesel Particulate Filter Control 1     | 64892            | Aftertreatment DPF Active Regen Status SPN 3700          | 00 Not Active<br>01 Regen Active<br>10 Regen Needed<br>11 Not Available      |
| FD7C Diesel Particulate Filter Control 1     | 64892            | DPF Lamp Command SPN 3697                                | 000 Off<br>001 On<br>100 Fast Blink<br>111 Not Available                     |

Table 13.5 Elevated Idle Machine Integration Parameter support

**\*Engine Speed value in SPN535 will be set to the desired elevated engine speed to support regeneration before the ECM receives permission to Elevate the Idle speed. This will provide options in MCU software to control when to give permission to elevate idle speed, based on the situation. When elevated idle speed is not required this value will be either 0rpm or the configured low idle speed.**

**Service tests and procedures that require the machine to be safe will need the Elevated Engine Speed Allowed Input to be set to safe, these service test and procedures will not send an aftertreatment engine speed increase request (SPN7502) and therefore the machine should send safe state whenever the machine is safe.**

The parameters listed above will be supported for all in use requests for elevated idle and aftertreatment related service test procedures. Figure 13-2 provides information on how these messages are used and how a machine using SPN 7579 would interface with the broadcasted information. It should be noted that using the hardwired input to J1-37 can be used instead of SPN 7579 in the process below:

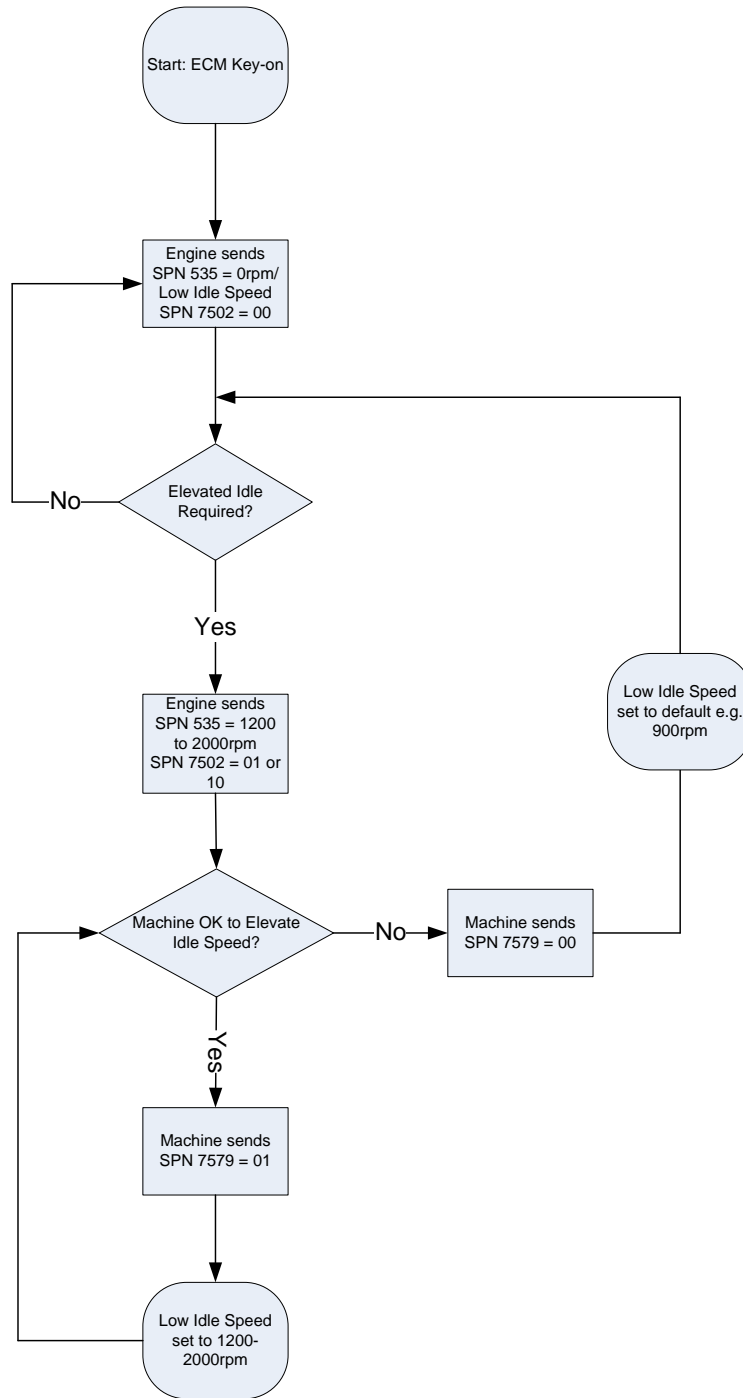


Figure 13-2 Machine Elevated Idle Integration

### 13.1.7 Parasitic Load Request (CAN Message)

In certain machines it may be possible to increase the parasitic load on the engine even if the machine is not working. If the thermal management system requires additional Parasitic Load at Low Idle, the Engine ECM will broadcast the SPN 7503 to “01” or “10” (depending on Escalation level).

The machine can react to message SPN 7503 to increase parasitic load when requested to help maintain Active Regeneration, as discussed in Section 13.1.4. Increasing parasitic load will help to increase the exhaust temperature and so help to maintain active regeneration during a transient work cycle.

It is still **mandatory** that the elevated idle function is installed though, to enable service tests to run and in case the additional parasitic load is still too low to complete the active regeneration.

At any time the machine can be placed back into work regardless of the parasitic load request state. The request will still remain however until an Active Regeneration has been completed.

**Please contact your local Applications Engineer to help integrate additional parasitic load mechanisms to understand how much additional load your application requires and to validate the system.**

## 13.2 DPF Regeneration Control System Overview

The control system is designed to constantly perform passive regeneration to maintain the DPF performance. Every 60 hours (approximately) the DPF will require an Active Regeneration, as explained above in Section 0.

To help the system regenerate with an Active Regen the control system may request that Elevated Idle permission is given so that more heat can be generated in the aftertreatment, which will support Active Regeneration with HC Dosing, see section 13.1.5 for more details.

If the requests for Elevated Idle are ignored (requests can be seen on the J1939 CAN BUS) but for machines without a J1939 Dashboard or MCU, there will be no visibility. Instead the Elevated Idle request should be accepted by giving permission on a regular basis i.e. whenever the machine is parked up/not working.

If the aftertreatment is not able to perform a regeneration because the Elevated Idle request is never answered, the system will eventually limit the use of the engine, to encourage the user to allow a regeneration to happen.

**Ignoring the need for a regeneration could result in very high soot levels accumulating in the DPF which will eventually damage the DPF. The DPF would then need to be replaced.**

Figure 13.3 and Table 13.6 explain the escalation levels that the control system will go through in the event that the system is not able to regenerate.

The escalation process has been designed so that even in applications where it is impossible to sustain active regeneration during normal work cycles e.g. light load and/or very transient operation, the control system is capable of performing the regen whilst the machine is parked up.

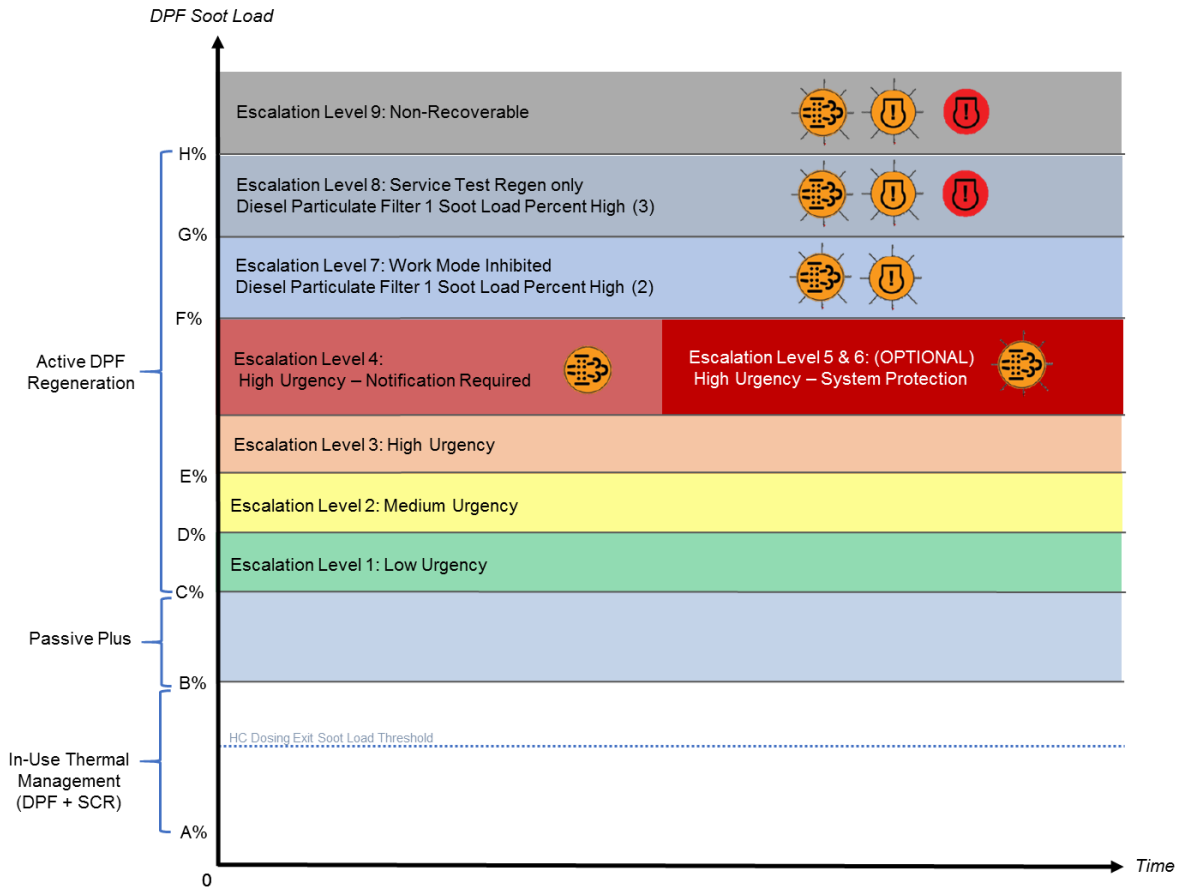


























Figure 13.3 DPF Regeneration Escalation Levels




| Escalation Level | DPF Status (SPN3701)                 | Elevated Idle Speed Requested (rpm)  | Corrective Action Required                  | Trigger Criteria   | Control System Behaviour | Lamps  |  |  | J1939 messages |
|------------------|--------------------------------------|--|---|--|--------------------------|--|--|--|----------------|
|                  |                                      |  |   |  |                          | DPF  | Warning  | Shutdown   |                |
| 0                | 000<br>Regen Not Needed              | N/A  | N/A   | Normal Operation with Passive Regen.<br><br>Active Regen not required.                     | None                     | <br>Off<br>SPN3697 = 000  | <br>Off<br>SPN624 = 00  | <br>Off<br>SPN623 = 00  |                |
| 1                | 001<br>Regen Needed – Lowest Level   | 1800<br><br>Note that elevated idle will be requested only if regen has successfully started | Allow Elevated Idle / Work the machine hard | DPF Soot Load Increase<br><br>OR<br>ECM detects Active Regen has not completed in Time, T1 | None                     | <br>Off<br>SPN3697 = 000  | <br>Off<br>SPN624 = 00  | <br>Off<br>SPN623 = 00  |                |
| 2                | 010<br>Regen Needed – Moderate Level | 1800   | Allow Elevated Idle / Work the machine hard | DPF Soot Load Increase<br><br>OR<br>ECM detects Active Regen has not completed in Time, T2 | None                     | <br>Off<br>SPN3697 = 000 | <br>Off<br>SPN624 = 00 | <br>Off<br>SPN623 = 00 |                |

Electrical & Electronic Application & Installation Manual

|   |  |      |   |   |      |  |  |  |   |
|---|--|------|---|---|------|--|--|--|---|
| 3 | 011<br>Regen<br>Needed –<br>Highest<br>Level | 1800 | Allow Elevated<br>Idle / Work the<br>machine hard | DPF Soot Load<br>Increase<br><br>OR<br>ECM detects Active<br>Regen has not<br>completed in Time,<br>T3<br><br>OR<br>Regen Inhibit<br>command has been<br>made   | None | <br><br>Off<br>SPN3697<br>= 000 | <br><br>Off<br>SPN624<br>= 00 | <br><br>Off<br>SPN623<br>= 00 |   |
| 4 | 011<br>Regen<br>Needed –<br>Highest<br>Level | 2000 | Allow Elevated<br>Idle / Work the<br>machine hard | DPF Soot Load<br>Increase<br><br>OR<br>ECM detects Active<br>Regen has not<br>completed in Time,<br>T4<br><br>OR<br><i>HCD started but<br/>failed to ignite</i><br><br>OR<br>Regen Inhibit<br>command has been<br>made<br><br>OR<br>Engine has been<br>shut down when<br>Regen was urgently<br>needed | None | <br><br>On<br>SPN3697<br>= 001  | <br><br>Off<br>SPN624<br>= 00 | <br><br>Off<br>SPN623<br>= 00 | 3719-15<br>high soot<br>load least<br>severe<br>event<br>active |

Electrical & Electronic Application & Installation Manual

|   |                                     |      |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
|---|-------------------------------------|------|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|
| 5 | 011<br>Regen Needed – Highest Level | 2000 | Allow Elevated Idle / Work the machine hard                               | DPF Lamp has been on for 1 hour and Regen not completed       | None  | <br>Fast Flash***<br>SPN3697 = 100   | <br>Off<br>SPN624 = 00         | <br>Off<br>SPN623 = 00   | 3719-15 high soot load least severe event active   |
| 6 | 011<br>Regen Needed – Highest Level | 2000 | Allow Elevated Idle / Work the machine hard                               | DPF Lamp has been flashing for 1 hour and Regen not completed | Engine Speed will be locked to Low Idle Speed for 1 minute*<br><br>If the machine <b>must</b> be moved in this 60s lockout then a quick key-cycle can be performed to restore speed control for a key-cycle<br><br>After this 1 minute the idle speed will be elevated if permission is given.<br><br>Still allowed to put the machine back into work | <br>Fast Flash***<br>SPN3697 = 100   | <br>Off<br>SPN624 = 00         | <br>Off<br>SPN623 = 00   | SPN9677 = 01 when locked to low idle<br><br>3719-15 high soot load least severe event active |
| 7 | 011<br>Regen Needed – Highest Level | 2000 | Allow Elevated Idle<br><br>Machine should not be worked any further until | Soot load is high   | Engine Speed will be locked to Low Idle Speed for 1 minute*<br><br>After this 1 minute the idle speed will be elevated if permission is given.  | <br>Fast Flash***<br>SPN3697 = 100 | <br>Flashing<br>SPN3040 = 01 | <br>Off<br>SPN623 = 00 | SPN9677 = 01 when locked to low idle<br><br>3719-16 high soot                                |

|   |                                     |     |   |                        |   |   |   |  |  |
|---|-------------------------------------|-----|---|------------------------|---|---|---|--|--|
|   |                                     |     | Regen has completed   |                        | <p>Engine speed will ramp back to idle speed if elevated idle permission is removed.</p> <p>If the machine <b>must</b> be moved then a quick key-cycle can be performed to allow the machine to be used for a short time. Available speed and torque will gradually be reduced to 0% in this mode though**</p>  |   |   |  | load moderate severity event active  |
| 8 | 011<br>Regen Needed – Highest Level | N/A | Service Test required<br>Elevated Idle will be required to support the service test | Soot load is very high | <p>Engine Speed will be locked to Low Idle Speed until Regen has been performed. (SPN3714)</p> <p>Elevated Idle is no longer allowed.</p> <p>If the machine <b>must</b> be moved then a quick key-cycle can be performed to allow the machine to be used for a short time. Available speed and torque will gradually be reduced to 0% in this mode though**</p> | <br>Fast Flash***<br>SPN3697 = 100 | <br>Flashing<br>SPN3040 = 01 | <br>On<br>SPN623 = 01 | SPN9677 = 01 when locked to low idle<br><br>SPN3714 = 01<br><br>3719-0 high soot load most severe event active |




|   |                                     |     |             |   |   |   |   |  |  |
|---|-------------------------------------|-----|-------------|---|---|---|---|--|--|
| 9 | 011<br>Regen Needed – Highest Level | N/A | Replace DPF | DPF is damaged due to high soot load and is not recoverable | <p>Engine Speed will be permanently locked to Low Idle Speed (SPN3715)</p> <p>Elevated Idle is no longer allowed. Service Test is no longer allowed</p> <p>If the machine <b>must</b> be moved then a quick key-cycle can be performed to allow the machine to be used for a short time. Available speed and torque will gradually be reduced to 0% in this mode though**</p> | <br>Fast Flash***<br>SPN3697 = 100 | <br>Flashing<br>SPN3040 = 01 | <br>On<br>SPN623 = 01 | SPN3714 = 01<br><br>SPN3715 = 01<br><br>3719-0 high soot load most severe event active |
|---|-------------------------------------|-----|-------------|---|---|---|---|--|--|

Table 13.6

\* The introduction of a period of time locked at low idle is a new concept and is designed to alert the operator that something is wrong with the machine and the correct action should be taken. Please note that low idle speed will only ever be locked in this manner following key-on, it will not occur during machine operation.

\*\* To account for emergency situations where the machine has been parked in an unsafe location and is locked at low idle it will be possible to override this idle lockout for a short period of time. To ensure that this strategy is not abused (used to simply avoid performing the regen) speed and torque capability will gradually be reduced until the machine is once again locked at low idle speed with no torque capability.

\*\*\* The DPF lamp will flash at 2Hz when locked at idle and 1Hz when the engine isn't locked at idle, the DPF lamp command for this is state '101' for very fast blink.

### 13.2.1 DPF Escalation Levels Configuration

It is possible to configure the ECM to avoid escalation stages 5 & 6 in the process above but this is not recommended, especially in applications that will typically have inexperienced/unfamiliar operators. Stages 5 and 6 are designed to provide the operator with a chance to complete regeneration of the aftertreatment during machine work cycles and avoid having to perform the regeneration in safe state when the machine is stationary.

| Configuration field names                              | Configuration Range | Default Configuration |
|--|---------------------|-----------------------|
| High Soot Load Aftertreatment Protection Enable Status | Enabled<br>Disabled | Enabled               |

Table 13.7

### 13.3 DPF Regeneration Lock to Idle Operation

The Lock to Idle feature at escalation levels 7, 8 and 9 indicates to the user that they urgently need to allow manual regen that the engine is requesting. The engine will be permanently locked to low idle. If the circumstances require the engine to respond with more power, then a quick key cycle in under 10 seconds will allow the operator to get out of locked to idle. The engine will run at derate for 10 minutes and then will run in the quick restart restriction. This restriction can be defined in the ECM configuration.

When the engine is out of lock to idle, there is two ways the engine will return back to the normal operation of idle lock, the first is that the machine runs for more than 10 minutes and is in the quick restart restriction and the machine runs at this restriction until key off. The other way of returning to Idle Lock is a quick key cycle while the engine is out of locked to idle and at derate. This quick key cycle will stop the 10 minutes allowed and have the engine go back to idle lock. This quick cycle operation can be repeated and does not have a limit on the amount of times this is used.

The quick restart restriction after the engine has run at Derate for over 10 minutes can be defined as two options, shown below in Table 13.8.

| Configuration field names  | Configuration Range   | Default Configuration |
|--|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| High Soot Load Aftertreatment Quick Restart Response Configuration | Shutdown<br>Idle Down | Shutdown              |

Table 13.8

#### 13.3.1 Shutdown

In shutdown quick restart response, the engine will apply an additional torque derate after the 10 minutes in work mode from the quick key cycle in idle hold. This additional torque derate will be applied and the engine will eventually stall as the fuel delivered will slowly fall to 0mm<sup>3</sup> to guarantee a shutdown on the engine. If machine is put in safe-state to allow manual regeneration when the machine is escalation level 7 and 6 then the additional torque derate is removed and engine speed is allowed to elevate under engine control to complete regen.

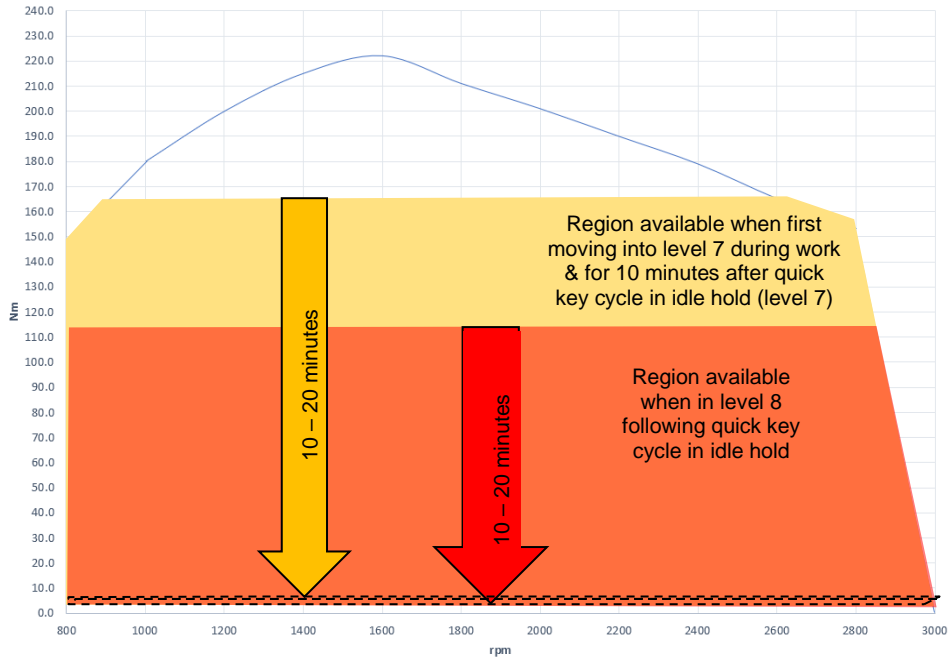


Figure 13-4

### 13.3.2 Idle Down

In Idle Down quick restart response, the engine speed will be ramped down to a lower speed after the 10 minutes in work mode from the quick key cycle in idle hold. The engine speed will be ramped from its current speed back down to the programmed low idle. Torque regions highlighted by a dashed box in Figure 13-5 are available when starting in locked to programmed low idle speed and the work-mode is engaged. If machine is put in safe-state to allow manual regeneration when the machine is escalation level 7 and 6 then the additional torque derate is removed and engine speed is allowed to elevate under engine control to complete regen.

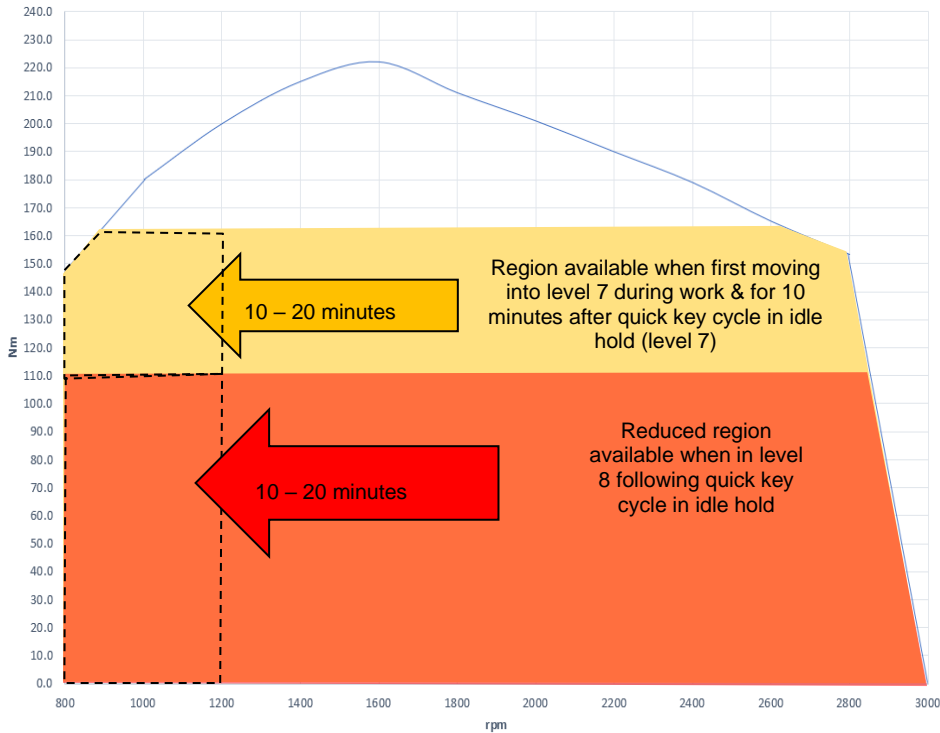


Figure 13-5

### 13.4 DPF Regen Inhibit Switch and DPF Regen Inhibit Lamp

If the machine application has a specific requirement to work in environments where there is a risk of personnel burns (due to tailpipe design) or where flammable material is present in close proximity to the exhaust system then it is possible to fit a Regeneration Inhibit switch.

**Note:** This Inhibit switch **should not** be fitted to all applications as they are prone to misuse and the Regeneration system has been primarily designed to work automatically, with no operator input.

#### 13.4.1 DPF Regen Inhibit Switch Operation

The inhibit switch must be a momentary switch, such that it cannot be depressed constantly. The inhibit function is designed to be a **temporary** function that is used when it would be unsafe for aftertreatment regeneration to occur. The system is designed such that commanding an inhibit will inhibit the regeneration and in this state the Regen Inhibit lamp will be illuminated to alert the operator.

The logic in Section 13.2 will be in place whether or not the Inhibit function is also used. An Inhibit command can only be made in Escalation Levels 0-5. If the Level increases from 5 or less to 6 or 7 in the same keycycle, then the inhibit request will be maintained. However if the engine is started in Level 6 or 7 an inhibit request cannot be made to stop a Regen from starting. In summary, the inhibit switch will stop the engine from going into automatic regen at Escalation Levels 0-5 only.

If Inhibit is desired but is unavailable and the engine is locked to low idle (escalation level 6) the machine should be moved to a safe location once speed control is reinstated so that a regen can be performed. The DPF lamp will have been on and then flashing for a total of 2 hours before the inhibit regen function is unavailable. It will always be possible to cancel a regen that has started, even in the higher escalation levels, in case it is still not safe for a regen to occur, by removal of 'Safe State' using the 'Safe State/Work Mode/OK to Elevate Idle' switch.

It is possible to revoke an inhibit command by pressing the inhibit momentary switch again (or setting SPN3695 back to 00.) This will allow the DPF to regenerate again if it is necessary and the conditions allow it to.













| Regeneration Required?   | Inhibit Status                               | Inhibit Active Timer | Lamps  |  |  | J1939 Message                                 |
|--|--|----------------------|--|--|--|---|
|  |  |                      | Inhibit  | DPF  | Regen Active   |   |
| Yes  | Regen is Active Available                    | Not Applicable       | <br>Off | <br>Off        | <br>On  | SPN3703 = 00<br>SPN3697 = 000<br>SPN3700 = 01 |
| No   | Available                                    | Until next key-cycle | <br>On  | <br>Off        | <br>Off | SPN3703 = 01<br>SPN3697 = 000<br>SPN3700 = 00 |
| Yes  | Available                                    | Until next key-cycle | <br>On  | <br>On         | <br>Off | SPN3703 = 01<br>SPN3697 = 001<br>SPN3700 = 10 |
| Yes – Urgently – Engine Speed will be locked to Low Idle for 60s at key-on | Not Available – Escalation level 6 and above | Not Allowed          | <br>Off | <br>Fast Flash | <br>Off | SPN3703 = 00<br>SPN3697 = 100<br>SPN3700 = 10 |

Table 13.9

### 13.4.2 DPF Regen Active Lamp Logic

If the inhibit switch function is required, then a DPF Regen Active Lamp must also be fitted. This lamp will illuminate when an aftertreatment regeneration has started and is an **indication** of high exhaust temperatures. See the table above for the logic of this indicator combined with the use of the inhibit switch. **Installation instructions for this lamp are covered in Section 13.4.4.**

**Note** this is not a 'HEST' lamp as it is not configured to illuminate when exhaust temperatures are above a certain threshold. Due to differences in customer machine designs the temperature of the exhaust gas at the tailpipe varies dramatically as different machines use different pipe lengths and designs e.g. use of a Venturi section.

**If the customer requires the lamp to illuminate at a certain temperature it is recommended that they fit a separate thermocouple switch in the exhaust system linked to a lamp which will illuminate when the specific temperature threshold is exceeded. This would then need to be linked to the dashboard for operator awareness.**

### 13.4.3 DPF Regen Inhibit Switch Configuration

The Inhibit switch is not installed by default so it must be configured with the Service Tool by changing the following parameter in the Configuration Screen:

| Configuration field names   | Configuration Options               | Default Configuration |
|---|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Automatic Aftertreatment Regeneration Inhibit Interface Configuration | Not Installed<br>Hardwired<br>J1939 | Not Installed         |

Table 13.10

### 13.4.4 Inhibit Switch, Inhibit Lamp and Regen Active Lamp Installation

Using the Inhibit Switch makes the installation of the Regen Inhibit Lamp, DPF Indicator and Regeneration Active Lamp mandatory. Refer to Sections 11.3.10, 11.3.12 and 11.3.13 for further lamp details.

#### 13.4.4.1 Inhibit Switch

The Inhibit Regen switch should be a momentary operation switch (the switch should return to its normal state after it has been depressed) so that it is not held in the 'inhibit' state continuously.

The inhibit function can be controlled by a hardwired ECM input or by a J1939 command as follows:

**Hardwired**

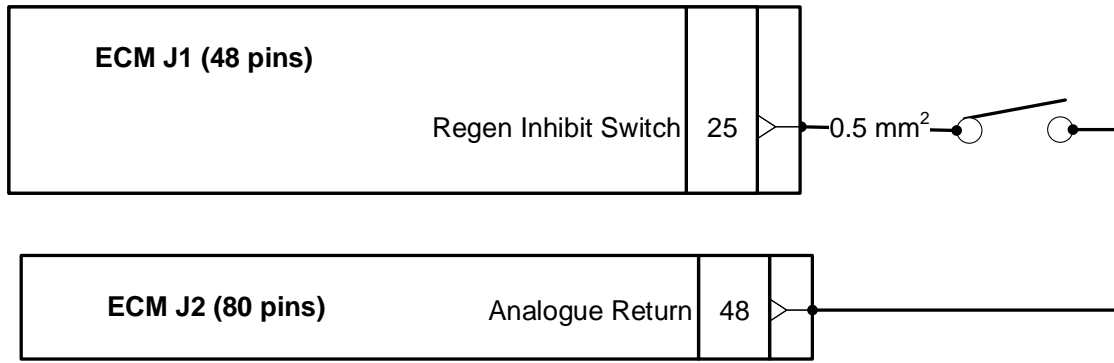


Figure 13-6 Inhibit Regeneration Switch

**J1939**

| Function                                   | PGN          | SPN  | Byte | Start bit | Length | Applicable States       |
|--|--------------|------|------|-----------|--------|-------------------------|
| Aftertreatment Regeneration Inhibit Switch | 57344 (E000) | 3695 | 6    | 1         | 2      | 00, Off = Not Inhibited |
|  |              |      |      |           |        | 01, On = Inhibited      |

Table 13.11

**13.4.4.2 Inhibit Lamp**

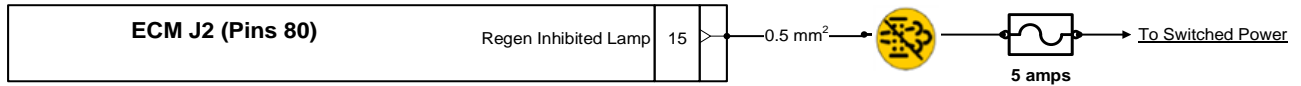


Figure 13-7

The Regen Inhibited Lamp is also available via J1939 as shown below.

| Function  | PGN  | SPN  | Byte | Start bit | Length | Applicable States  |
|---|------|------|------|-----------|--------|--------------------|
| Diesel Particulate Filter Active Regeneration Inhibited Due to Inhibit Switch | FD7C | 3703 | 3    | 3         | 2      | 00 = Not Inhibited |
|   |      |      |      |           |        | 01 = Inhibited     |

Table 13.12

**13.4.4.3 Regen Active Lamp**

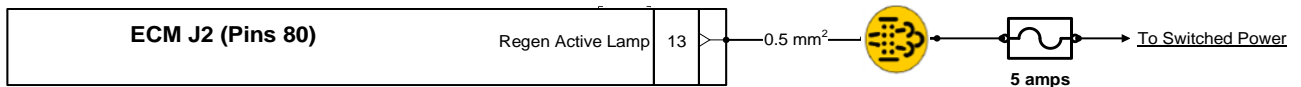


Figure 13-8

The Regen Inhibited Lamp is also available via J1939 as shown below.

| Function  | PGN  | SPN  | Byte | Start bit | Length | Applicable States |
|---|------|------|------|-----------|--------|-------------------|
| Aftertreatment Diesel Particulate Filter Active Regeneration Status | FD7C | 3700 | 2    | 3         | 2      | Not Active = 00   |
|   |      |      |      |           |        | Active = 01       |

Table 13.13

### 13.5 DPF Regen System J1939 Message Summary

| Information Message Name/Purpose     | ECM | J1939 Message | Description   | Available as Hardwired I/O? |
|--------------------------------------|-----|---------------|---|-----------------------------|
| Elevated Idle Speed Required         | Tx  | SPN7502       | Announces if the Engine needs the Idle Speed to be elevated for Regen                     | No                          |
| Requested Elevated Idle Speed        | Tx  | SPN535        | The idle speed that will be used if Safe State is declared                                | No                          |
| Elevated Engine Speed Allowed Switch | Rx  | SPN7579       | Message sent back to ECM to allow/not allow Elevated Idle - based upon machine conditions | Yes                         |
| Increased Parasitic Load Required    | Tx  | SPN7503       | Announces if the Engine needs extra parasitic load to support Regen operation             | No                          |
| Regeneration Required                | Tx  | SPN3701       | Indicates the urgency of a regen request  | No                          |
| Regen Inhibit Request                | Rx  | SPN3695       | Request from the machine to inhibit a regeneration  | Yes                         |
| Temporary Regen Lockout              | Tx  | SPN3714       | Regen is only possible by Service Technician (Escalation Level 8)                         | No                          |
| Permanent Regen Lockout              | Tx  | SPN3715       | DPF Regen can no longer be done, DPF must be replaced (Escalation Level 9)                | No                          |

Table 13.14

| Lamp Name/Purpose | ECM | J1939 Message                     | Available as Hardwired I/O? |
|-------------------|-----|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Warning           | Tx  | SPN624 (Solid) SPN3040 (Flashing) | Yes                         |
| Shutdown          | Tx  | SPN623 (Solid) SPN3039 (Flashing) | Yes                         |
| DPF Loading       | Tx  | SPN3697                           | Yes                         |
| Regen Active      | Tx  | SPN3700                           | Yes                         |
| Regen Inhibited   | Tx  | SPN3703                           | Yes                         |

Table 13.15

## 13.6 Engine Soft Start Protection

### 13.6.1 Engine Soft Start Protection Operation

After starting, a soft start strategy is employed which holds the engine speed at low idle or 850rpm depending on which is lowest for a duration between 1 and 25 seconds to allow engine systems to stabilise.

Under normal system conditions, the trigger to exit the soft start strategy is oil pressure. The time taken to build oil pressure depends on many factors, for example

- Ambient temperature
- Oil temperature
- Oil grade
- Oil filter position
- Time since engine last run
- Engine starting performance

Following the exit of the soft start strategy, the engine will ramp to the desired engine speed.

The soft start strategy includes a maximum allowed hold time, as backup in the event of a system failure, for example, oil pressure sensor failure. Soft start mode will be exited at the expiry of this maximum hold time, irrespective of whether oil pressure has been detected. In this case, normal engine diagnostics will apply. The maximum hold time is dependent on temperature, and is in the range of 2 to 60 seconds.

### 13.6.2 Engine Soft Start Protection Configuration

There is no specific user configuration required for this feature.

### 13.6.3 Engine Soft Start Protection Installation

The engine ECM provides two methods for communicating the status of the soft start feature to the machine operator.

#### Option 1 Engine Wait to Start Lamp flash

The engine ECM will flash the Wait to start lamp output driver at a frequency of 2Hz for the duration of the soft start condition. Once conditions have been met for the exit of the soft start feature to occur the wait to start driver will turn off.

Option 2 J1939 Engine Oil Priming State (SPN 3551)

The engine ECM will communicate the status of the soft start feature via the J1939 datalink PGN FE6A (65130) SPN Engine Oil Priming State 3551.

The Engine Oil Priming State will operate as follows;

- During Soft start SPN 3551 will be transmitted with a 00 status (Not sufficiently Lubricated).
- Post Soft start SPN 3551 will be transmitted with 01 status (Sufficiently Lubricated).

## 14.0 Engine Governor

### 14.1 Min / Max Governing

#### 14.1.1 Min / Max Governing Operation

The min/max engine speed governor will provide an approximate amount of power for a given throttle position. Engine speed is allowed to vary between the low idle and high idle engine speed settings. This governor essentially only 'governs' engine speed when at the minimum or maximum allowed engine speed. In between these limits, the throttle position will cause the engine to produce power proportional to its value. The benefit of this type of governor is smoother shifting for engines with electronic automatic/automated transmissions. The Min/Max governor is also known as the 'limiting speed' or 'power throttle' governor.

The Min/Max engine speed governor control strategy uses the isochronous speed governor to control the engine speed when operating at the minimum (low idle) and maximum (high idle) speeds. This is the same control strategy used by the full range engine speed governor, but with a fixed desired engine speed input of low idle and high idle. The governor control strategy does not try to control fuel delivery and engine speed at the operating speeds between low idle and high idle.

The Min/Max engine speed governor will attempt to maintain a constant engine power output based on the throttle position. This design provides optimised shift quality with automatic transmissions and offers excellent power modulation, which allows the operator to adjust the engine power output to match typical vehicle operating conditions. The engine will accelerate or decelerate to 'find' a vehicle load level that matches the engine output command by the throttle. If the throttle is commanding more power than the vehicle load will offer, the engine will accelerate to the high idle speed.

Machines that are lightly loaded will achieve a desired acceleration at a lower throttle position than machines that are heavily loaded. Machines with very high power/weight ratios will accelerate at very low throttle positions.

Figure 14-1 illustrates the Min/Max engine speed governor operation across the engine operating speed range. The curve is bounded by the rating torque curve between LI and Rated engine speed (RS) once above rated speed the HSG limit curve takes over. For a fixed throttle position, the Min/Max governor will deliver a constant amount of power proportional to the throttle position, the engine power output will remain fairly constant, and engine speed will vary with engine load.

Min/Max governing above the configured Rated speed (RS) is limited by the HSG limit curve. This region of operation is often referred to as the overrun region (shown in Figure 14-1 as the High Speed Governor operating area). The HSG limit curve is always below the rated torque curve. This curve is linear and the slope of the line is determined by the configured Rated speed point (RS) and HI engine speeds (run out line).

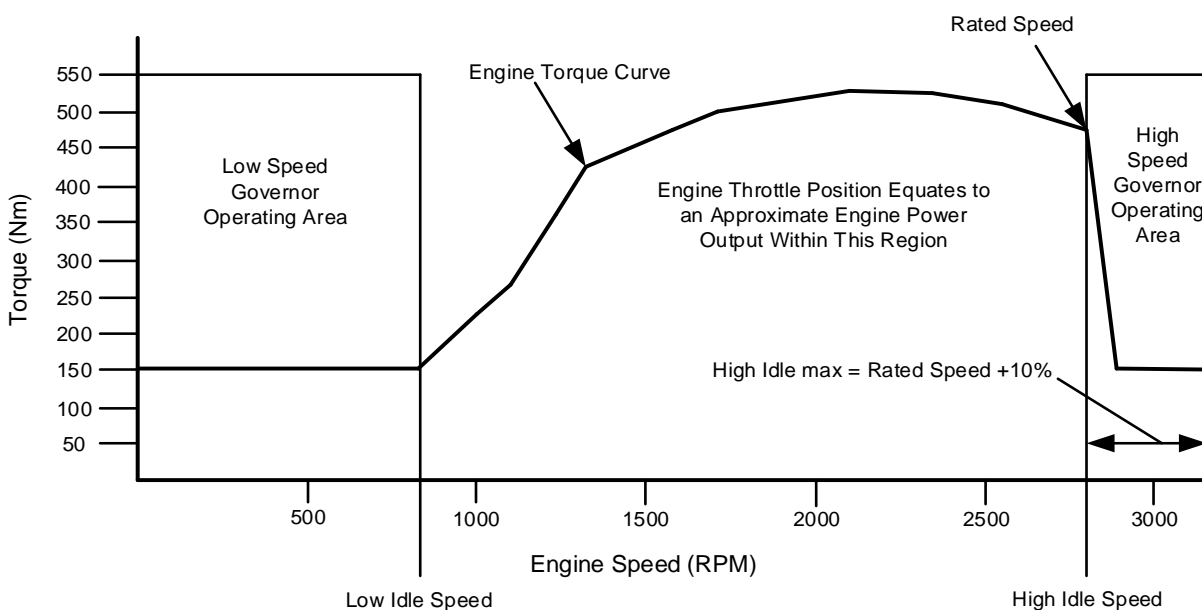


Figure 14-1 Min Max Governor Operating Regions

### 14.1.2 Min / Max Governing Configuration

The Min/Max governing option is available for all levels of engine software and is enabled by selecting min/max governing within the Mode selection section of the engine software.

### 14.1.3 Min / Max Governing Installation

The Min/Max governing feature requires no special installation other than a method of engine speed demand.

## 14.2 Engine All Speed Governing

The default governor type is an All Speed Governor, also known as a variable Speed Governor.

### 14.2.1 Engine All Speed Governing Operation

The All Speed Engine Governor will attempt to hold a constant engine speed for a given throttle position. The governor senses engine speed and load and meters the fuel supply to the engine such that the engine speed remains constant or to vary with the load in a predetermined manner. This governor type is recommended for use on applications with a constant operating speed and applications with manual transmissions. The all speed governor is also known as 'variable speed' or 'full range engine speed governor'.

The governor strategy calculates the fuel quantity required to keep the actual engine speed equal to the desired engine speed. The desired engine speed is the output of the throttle arbitration strategy defined in the Engine speed demand section 9 of this document. All speed refers to the fact that the engine governor operates across the full engine speed operating range. The governor strategy has control parameters classed as governor gains, which determine the engine response and engine stability. These gains are 'tuned' to ensure that they are configured for optimum performance under both steady state and transient conditions.

Under default conditions the engine is set to operate with isochronous governing across the engine speed range, during which the engine fuelling is bound by the engine torque curve. Note that the engine may not be capable of reaching the torque fuel limit curve in some circumstances. For example, if the turbocharger is not providing the required boost pressure, then the fuel will be limited so that the engine does not emit black smoke.

Engines can however be configured to operate with a level of engine droop, under the torque curve. Droop is the variation of engine speed as load is applied. For example, if an engine has 10% droop and is running at 1500RPM without load, then as load is applied the operator will feel and hear the engine speed gradually decreasing. This is represented by the diagonal dotted lines under the torque curve in Figure 14-2.

When the load reaches the torque limit curve of the engine, the engine will lug back along the curve.

Note that droop values can be assigned to the multi-position throttle switch input, PWM accelerator pedal/lever input and the TSC1 speed demand over J1939. Droop does not apply, however to the PTO mode, which always operates isochronously (0% Droop)

The high speed governor (governor run-out) is governed by the relationship between the rated engine speed and the chosen high idle speed. High Idle is the maximum speed that the engine will reach. Note that this is on the bare engine and when installed in an application, it may not be possible to reach this speed due to the parasitic loads of the driven equipment. The range of possible high idle speeds is defined by the parameters, High Idle Lower limit (HILL) and High Idle Upper Limit. (HIUL). High Idle cannot be specified to be less than Rated Speed (RS) and cannot exceed RS+10%. This HIUL is specified to ensure governor stability is maintained throughout the engine operating range.

Example Governing 1 – Showing droop and HSG slopes approximately equal.

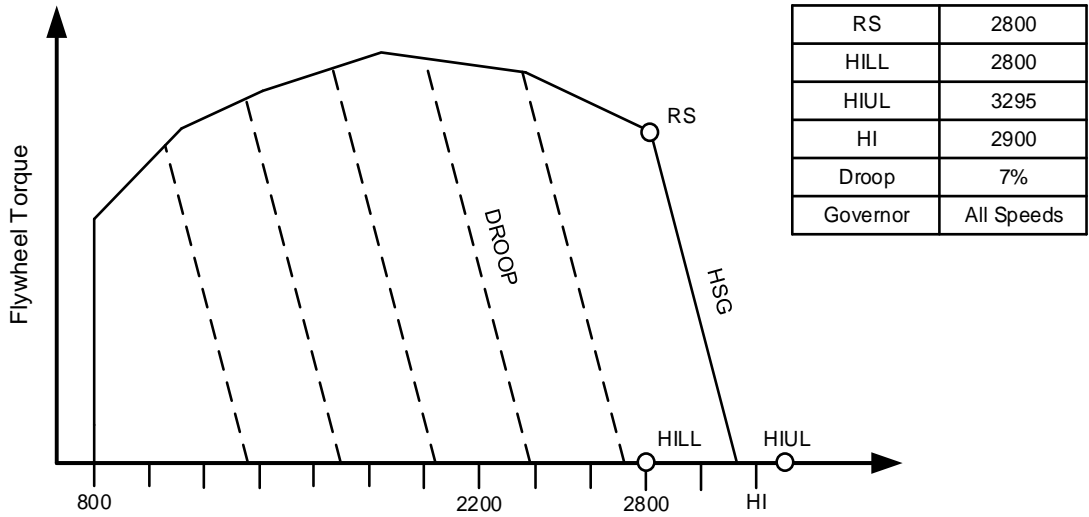


Figure 14-2: Engine with Droop settings

Example Governing 2 – Showing isochronous droop but with a shallow HSG slope.

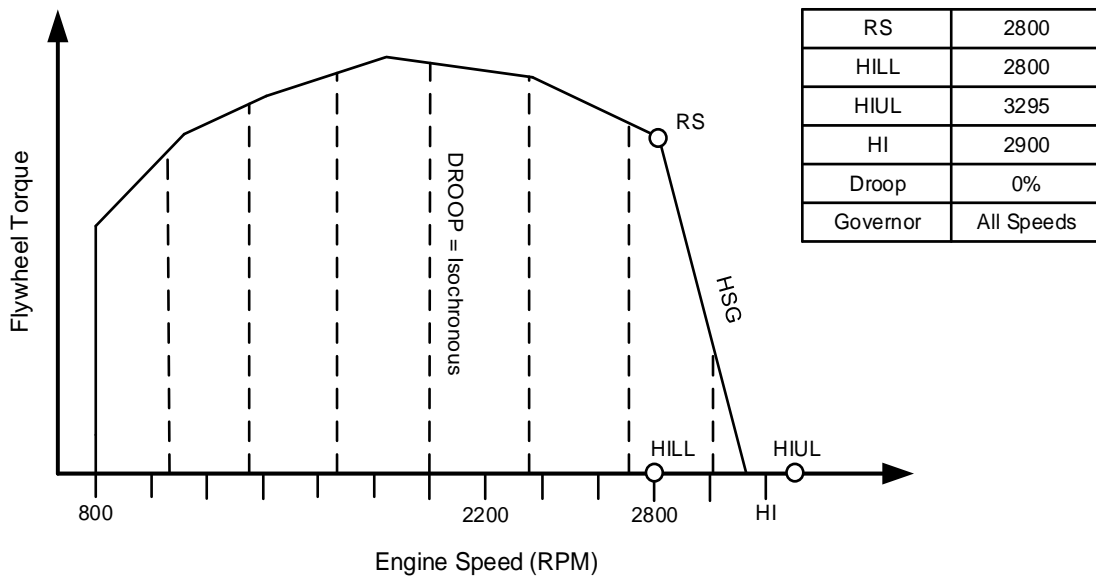


Figure 14-3 Isochronous Droop Settings

### 14.2.2 Engine All Speed Governing Configuration

The All Speed engine governing option is the default governor selected for all levels of engine software and can be de-selected / selected via the engine mode selection switches as with the Min/Max governor.

### 14.2.3 Engine All Speed Governing Installation

The All Speed engine governing feature requires no special installation other than a method of engine speed demand.

## 14.3 Rating Selection Using ET

Some engines will have the capability to run more than one power rating. If this is the case, the highest allowed rating may be changed via the “rating” parameter on the configuration screen with ET. Note however, that the

engine may not be running the highest enabled rating due to the status of the mode switches or due to requests from another electronic module on the machine over the J1939 datalink.

## 14.4 Engine High Speed Governor (Governor Run-Out)

### 14.4.1 Engine High Speed Governor Operation

The 400 Series engine range offers the ability to configure the run-out gradient of the High Speed Governor (HSG) via the configuration of the engine Rated Speed (RS) and the engine High Idle (HI).

Note: Not all engine ratings support the configuration of the engine RS. The HSG curve is a linear line. The slope of this line can be adjusted using the HI and RS speed settings. The line determines the response of the engine once the engine speed enters the HSG controlled area of the torque curve. Figure 14-4 shows a HSG run out line with the same rated speed and two different HI settings.

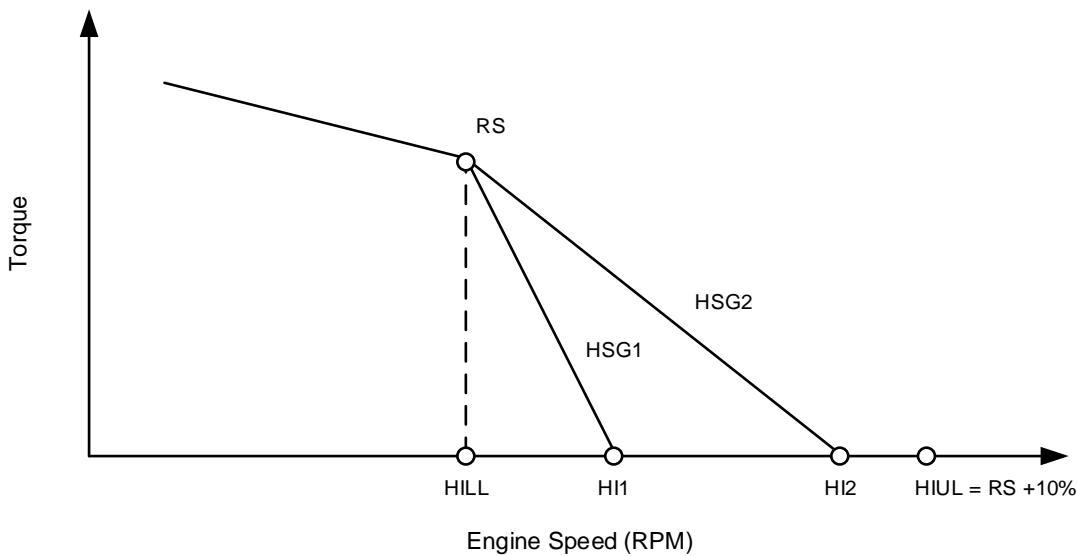


Figure 14-4 HSG Run out example

### 14.4.2 Engine High Speed Governor Configuration

The high speed governor run out line gradient can be configured using the service tool and the mode selection feature. This is achieved by modifying RS or HI or both. It should be noted that HI cannot be configured to be less than RS and no higher than RS + 10%.

## 14.5 Mode Selection

### 14.5.1 Mode Selection Operation

A mode is a performance characteristic in terms of power / torque, droop, speed governing and rated speed. There are up to four modes configurable for the Perkins Tier 4 Final/Stage V product range. These modes are selectable during normal engine operation while the engine is running and on load apart from when a speed governing change is required.

Two ECM switched inputs, J1-13 and J1-24, are provided for this feature and each switch combination can be configured to provide a separate mode configuration. Examples of the selectable modes settings are shown below.

- Switch input combination
- Engine T Curve Rating (If multi ratings are enabled)

- Engine rated speed (Only if the rating supports multiple rated speeds)
- High Idle Speed (rpm)
- Engine % Droop, throttle 1, throttle 2 or TSC1 Throttle
- Engine speed governing mode (Min / Max or All Speed)
- Gain selection maps (1 – 4).

For all software files containing more than one rating the mode selection screen must be used to select the correct rating via the Rating Number field as shown in Table 14.1.

| Mode Selection Switch Input 2 | Mode Selection Switch Input 1 | Enabled | Rating Number | Rated Speed (RPM) | High Idle Speed (RPM) | Throttle 1 Droop Percentage | Throttle 2 Droop Percentage | TSC1 Droop Percentage | Governor Selection | Gain Selection |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------|---------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|----------------|
| *Open                         | *Open                         | Yes     | 1             | 2200              | 2420                  | 0.00                        | 0.00                        | 0.00                  | All Speed          | Gain Setting 1 |
| *Open                         | Ground                        | No      | 1             | 2200              | 2420                  | 5.00                        | 5.00                        | 5.00                  | All Speed          | Gain Setting 1 |
| Ground                        | *Open                         | No      | 1             | 2200              | 2420                  | 5.00                        | 5.00                        | 5.00                  | All Speed          | Gain Setting 1 |
| Ground                        | Ground                        | No      | 1             | 2200              | 2420                  | 5.00                        | 5.00                        | 5.00                  | All Speed          | Gain Setting 1 |

Table 14.1 Engine Mode Selection

If an invalid switch position is selected a fault code will be raised (1743 -2) and the feature will revert to its last good state.

**IMPORTANT**

The Mode Selection feature has the potential to change desired engine speed if a different High Idle Speed is set for modes 1-4. It is therefore recommended that the modes are configured such that the safest mode is when the switches are open as this is the likeliest unintended switch position.

Similarly, if a multi-rating flash file is used and modes are set up to command different ratings that the lowest power rating is chosen for Mode 1 when both switches are open to avoid risk of a higher power rating being commanded unintentionally (through an open circuit wiring fault.)

**14.5.2 Mode Selection Configuration**

Configuration of the available engine modes is carried out by using the EST service tool under the following menu location, Service / Engine Operating Mode Configuration.

**14.5.3 Mode Select Installation**

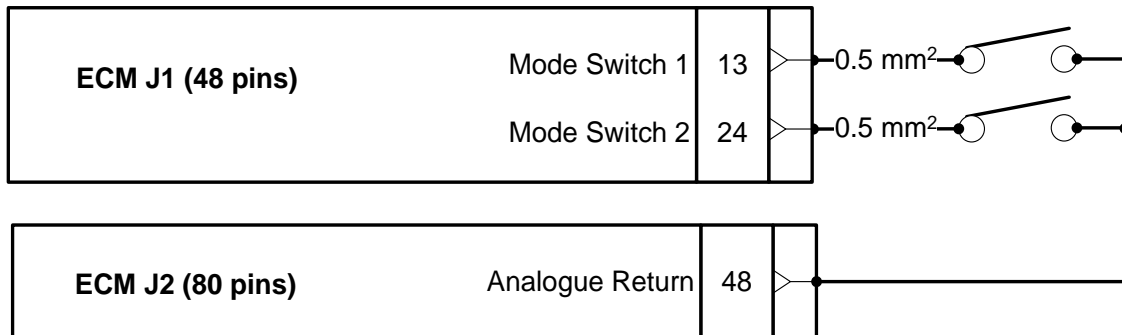


Figure 14-5 Mode Switch Schematic

**14.5.4 Mode Select changes requested via the J1939 datalink**

For those applications wishing to use the J1939 CAN Bus system during machine integration, the engine operating mode can be adjusted using the Off Highway Engine Control Selection (OHECS) message PGN FDCB.

The mode selection via J1939 will be pointed towards the physical mode switch configuration shown in the “Mode Selection” section.

| PGN # | PGN Description                              | SPN # | SPN Description   |
|-------|--|-------|---|
| 64971 | Off Highway Engine Control Selection (OHECS) | 8608  | <p>Engine Operating Mode Command</p> <p>Bit State 0000 = Not presently requesting a specific Engine Operating Mode be used</p> <p>Bit State 0001 = Engine Operating Mode 1 is requested</p> <p>Bit State 0010 = Engine Operating Mode 2 is requested</p> <p>Bit State 0011 = Engine Operating Mode 3 is requested</p> <p>Bit State 0100 = Engine Operating Mode 4 is requested</p> <p>Bit State 0101 = Engine Operating Mode 5 is requested</p> <p>Bit State 0110 = Engine Operating Mode 6 is requested</p> <p>Bit State 0111 = Engine Operating Mode 7 is requested</p> <p>Bit State 1000 = Engine Operating Mode 8 is requested</p> <p>Bit State 1001 = Engine Operating Mode 9 is requested</p> <p>Bit State 1010 = Engine Operating Mode 10 is requested</p> <p>Bit State 1011 = Engine Operating Mode 11 is requested</p> <p>Bit State 1100 = Engine Operating Mode 12 is requested</p> <p>Bit State 1101 = Engine Operating Mode 13 is requested</p> <p>Bit State 1110 = SAE Reserved</p> <p>Bit State 1111 = Not available / Take no action</p> |

Table 14.2

Arbitration between physical mode switches and J1939;

- J1939 SPNs above will always take priority over the physical mode switches.
- If engine software does not see the SPNs above the physical features will control the mode switch feature.

Change in mode switch input via J1939 can be applied during normal engine running and engine software will activate the appropriate mode switch settings.

If the customer sends PGN 64971 with the bytes set to FF then the mode switch feature will be disabled for the remainder of that key cycle. If the engine software does not receive the PGN 64971 correctly the following active diagnostic code will be broadcasted within the DM1 frame:

- 8608-9 – Engine Operating Mode Command: Abnormal Update Rate.

The ECM will send back SPN166 (PGN 65214) to confirm what power rating is running if a customer is using a multi-rating software and engine operating mode control.

## 15.0 Optional Engine Features

### 15.1 Alternative Low Idle

#### 15.1.1 Alternative Low Idle Operation

The alternative low idle gives the possibility to change the Low Idle speed by the action of an ECM input or a J1939 message.

When the alternative Low Idle Input is activated, the Engine Low Idle speed will be changed after a debounce time of 5 seconds to the one configured in the Engine ECM and Engine speed will ramp to it at a 100rpm/s rate. The throttle will be remapped to obey to the new Low Idle.

This feature can be used as a Lower Low Idle for prolonged Idling period without Electrical Load or an elevated Idle for fast warmup.

When used as a Lower Low Idle, special attention is required about the Electrical Load to avoid the Machine battery discharge.

This feature is also supported through the J1939 Network and customer should use the following message to request the Alternative Low Idle:

| PGN # | PGN Description                                | SPN # | SPN Description  |
|-------|--|-------|--|
| 64971 | Off – Highway Engine Control Selection (OHECS) | 2883  | Engine Alternate Low Idle Switch   |
|       |  |       | Bit State 00 = Default low idle point is selected<br>Bit State 01 = Alternate low idle point is selected |

Table 15.1

#### 15.1.2 Alternative Low Idle Configuration

This feature needs to be activated through the Service Tool as well as the Alternative Low Idle speed.

| Configuration field names                | Configuration Options      | Default Configuration |
|--|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| Engine Alternative Low Idle Speed Status | Installed<br>Not Installed | Not Installed         |
| Engine Alternative Low Idle Speed        | Range as per T-curve       | Same as Configured LI |

Table 15.2

#### 15.1.3 Alternative Low Idle Installation

- Please refer to the 400 Series electrical schematics.

## 15.2 Coolant Level Switch

### 15.2.1 Coolant Level Switch Operation

The coolant level switch enables the ECM to monitor the coolant level within the radiator or expansion tank to protect the engine against operation with low or no coolant.

The coolant level switch should be mounted so that it is immersed during all normal operating conditions. If the switch is not fully immersed then the ECM will take action as configured within the engine monitoring system. The engine must have been running before a low coolant level condition can be triggered.

The coolant level switch to provide an analogue signal to the engine ECM. The engine ECM will support a 5 volt Perkins approved coolant level sensor. The electronic service tool shall be used to activate the low coolant level switch and used to change polarity of the coolant level sensor from normally closed to normally open. Typically the coolant level switch is a normally closed switch but this should be configurable NO or NC.

Once this switch is activated the level 1, level 2 and Level 3 can be calibrated in the monitoring system screen to come on at different times. See the “Engine Monitoring Mode” chapter for more detail.

The Coolant Level Switch feature supports the following diagnostic codes:

- 111-17 – Engine Coolant Level : Low – Least severe (1)
- 111-18 – Engine Coolant Level : Low – Moderate severity (2)
- 111-1 – Engine Coolant Level : Low – Most severe (3)

A Low Coolant indicator is supported through J1939. The following message is used to communicate the status of this indicator:

| PGN # | PGN Description                     | SPN # | SPN Description   |
|-------|-------------------------------------|-------|---|
| 64773 | Direct Lamp Control Data 1 (DLCD1#) | 5101  | Engine Coolant Level Low Lamp Data  |
|       |                                     |       | Bit State 00 = Lamp Off<br>Bit State 01 = Lamp On<br>Bit State 10 = Error |

Table 15.3

### 15.2.2 Coolant Level Switch Configuration

This feature needs to be installed and configured through the Service Tool:

| Configuration field names                 | Configuration Options            | Default Configuration |
|---|----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Coolant Level Sensor Installation Status  | Installed<br>Not Installed       | Not Installed         |
| Coolant level Sensor Switch Configuration | Normally Closed<br>Normally Open | Normally Closed       |

Table 15.4

### 15.2.3 Coolant Level Switch Installation

- Please refer to the 400 Series electrical schematics.

## 15.3 Auxiliary Pressure Sensor

### 15.3.1 Auxiliary Pressure Sensor Operation

The Auxiliary Pressure sensor provides an input on the ECM that can be used as a pressure sensor input. When this feature is enabled, the Engine ECM will transform the sensor signal into a pressure in kPa and will make it available through the J1939 Network.

The J1939 message used to broadcast this information is the Auxiliary Analogue Information message (PGN FE8C SPN 1387). This message is only sent on request, so the Machine should have a mechanism to request it when needed. See below the message informations:

| PGN # | PGN Description                      | SPN # | SPN Description       |
|-------|--------------------------------------|-------|-----------------------|
| FE8C  | Auxiliary Analogue Information (AAI) | 1387  | Auxiliary Pressure #1 |

Table 15.5

This feature supports three levels of diagnostic code, that can be configured through the Engine monitoring mode via the Service Tool. There is also two fault diagnostics and three events associated to this feature. Below are the associated diagnostic codes:

- 1387-15 – Auxiliary Pressure 1 : High least severe (1)
- 1387-16 – Auxiliary Pressure 1 : High moderate severity (2)
- 1387-0 – Auxiliary Pressure 1 : High most severe (3)

This feature requires the usage of the correct Perkins Pressure sensor. The Perkins sensor is documented below:

| Description     | Part #             |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| Pressure Sensor | T400040 (Metric)   |
| Pressure Sensor | T432666 (Imperial) |

Table 15.6

### 15.3.2 Auxiliary Pressure Sensor Configuration

This feature needs to be installed through the Service Tool:

| Configuration field names                     | Configuration Options      | Default Configuration |
|---|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| Auxiliary Pressure Sensor Installation Status | Installed<br>Not Installed | Not Installed         |

Table 15.7

### 15.3.3 Auxiliary Pressure Sensor Installation

- Please refer to the 400 Series electrical schematics.

## 15.4 Auxiliary Temperature Sensor

### 15.4.1 Auxiliary Temperature Sensor operation

The Auxiliary Temperature sensor provides an input on the ECM that can be used as a temperature sensor input. When this feature is enabled, the Engine ECM will transform the sensor signal into a temperature in °C and will make it available through the J1939 Network.

The J1939 message used to broadcast this information is the Auxiliary Analogue Information message (PGN FE8C SPN 441). This message is only sent on request, so the Machine should have a mechanism to request it when needed. See below the message informations:

| PGN # | PGN Description                      | SPN # | SPN Description              |
|-------|--------------------------------------|-------|------------------------------|
| FE8C  | Auxiliary Analogue Information (AAI) | 441   | Auxiliary Temperature Sensor |
|       |                                      |       | 1 °C/bit, Offset = -40 °C    |

Table 15.8

This feature supports three level of diagnostic code, that can be configured through the Engine monitoring mode via the Service Tool. There is also two fault diagnostics associated to this feature. Below are the associated diagnostic codes:

- 441-15 – Auxiliary Temp 1 : High least severe (1)
- 441-16 – Auxiliary Temp 1 : High moderate severity (2)
- 441-0 – Auxiliary Temp 1 : High most severe (3)

This feature requires the usage of the correct Perkins Temperature sensor. The Perkins sensor is documented below:

| Description | Part #             |
|-------------|--------------------|
| Sensor      | T407354 (Metric)   |
| Sensor      | CH12647 (Imperial) |

Table 15.9

### 15.4.2 Auxiliary Temperature sensor Configuration

This feature needs to be installed through the Service Tool:

| Configuration field names                        | Configuration Options      | Default Configuration |
|--|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| Auxiliary Temperature Sensor Installation Status | Installed<br>Not Installed | Not Installed         |

Table 15.10

### 15.4.3 Auxiliary Temperature Installation

- Please refer to the 400 Series electrical schematics.

## 15.5 Charge Air Temperature sensor

### 15.5.1 Charge Air Temperature sensor operation

The Charge Air Temperature sensor provides an input on the ECM that can be used as a temperature sensor input. When this feature is enabled, the Engine ECM will transform the sensor signal into a temperature in °C and will make it available through the J1939 Network.

The J1939 message used to broadcast this information is the Engine Temperature 3 message (PGN FE69 SPN 2630). This message is broadcasted on the J1939 network at a 1s rate. See below the message informations:

| PGN # | PGN Description            | SPN # | SPN Description                             |
|-------|----------------------------|-------|---|
| FE69  | Engine Temperature 3 (ET3) | 2630  | Engine Charge Air Cooler Outlet Temperature |
|       |                            |       | 0.03125 °C/bit, Offset = -273 °C            |

Table 15.11

This feature supports three level of diagnostic code, that can be configured through the Engine monitoring mode via the Service Tool. There is also two fault diagnostics and three events associated to this feature. Below are the associated diagnostic codes:

- 2630-15 – Auxiliary Temp 1 : High least severe (1)
- 2630-16 – Auxiliary Temp 1 : High moderate severity (2)
- 2630-0 – Auxiliary Temp 1 : High most severe (3)

This feature requires the usage of the correct Perkins Temperature sensor. The Perkins sensor is documented below:

| Description   | Part #             |
|---------------|--------------------|
| Sensor Thread | T407354 (Metric)   |
| Sensor Thread | CH12647 (Imperial) |

Table 15.12

### 15.5.2 Charge Air Temperature sensor configuration

This feature needs to be installed through the Service Tool:

| Configuration field names                                       | Configuration Options      | Default Configuration |
|---|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| Charge Air Cooler Outlet Temperature Sensor Installation Status | Installed<br>Not Installed | Not Installed         |

Table 15.13

### 15.5.3 Charge Air Temperature Installation

- Please refer to the 400 Series electrical schematics.

## 15.6 ON-OFF Fan

### 15.6.1 ON-OFF Fan Speed operation

The Engine is providing an ON-OFF Fan support, through a discret driver output. The ON/OFF Fan (Hydraulic) is a system to control a Hydraulic FAN, so when one of the monitored temperatures are higher than its respective ON Threshold, configured through the service tool, the solenoid is set to min current. To return the solenoid to the solenoid max current, all the monitored temperatures need to be lower than their respective OFF threshold.

The ON/OFF Fan feature can control the output driver based on up to 6 temperature inputs (Coolant, Intake Manifold, Charge Air, Auxiliary Temperature, Hydraulic Oil Temperature and Transmission Oil Temperature). The output current is inversely proportional to the temperature input.

The temperatures inputs are supported as follow:

- Coolant Temperature: On-Engine
- Intake Manifold Temperature: On-Engine
- Charge Air Outlet Temperature: Hardwired customer installed (refer to Charge Air Temperature sensor section)
- Auxiliary Temperature : Hardwired customer installed (refer to Auxiliary Temperature sensor section)
- Hydraulic Temperature: J1939
- Transmission Oil Temperature: J1939

For the J1939 supported temperatures, find the specific message below:

| PGN # | PGN Description              | SPN # | SPN Description                |
|-------|------------------------------|-------|--------------------------------|
| FE68  | Vehicle Fluids (VF)          | 1638  | Hydraulic Temperature          |
| FEF8  | Transmission Fluids 1 (TRF1) | 177   | Transmission Oil Temperature 1 |

Table 15.14

Each input has an ON and OFF temperature parameter that needs to be set up using the service tool.

This is an open loop controlled system, then the result speed will be based on the current output as calibrated by customer.

### 15.6.2 ON-OFF Fan Speed Configuration

To activate this feature the parameter below must be configured with the electronic service tools.

| Configuration field names | Configuration Options | Default Configuration |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Engine Fan Control        | ON - OFF              | OFF                   |

| Configuration field names             | Configuration Options | Default Configuration |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Coolant Temp Control Enabled          | Enabled<br>Disabled   | Disabled              |
| Min Coolant Temp OFF                  | 0 – 120°C             | 85°C                  |
| Max Coolant Temp ON                   | 0 – 120°C             | 92°C                  |
| Intake Manifold Temp control Enabled  | Enabled<br>Disabled   | Disabled              |
| Min Intake Manifold Temp ON           | 0 – 120°C             | 92°C                  |
| Max Intake Manifold Temp Off          | 0 – 120°C             | 102°C                 |
| ATAAC Temp control Enabled            | Enabled<br>Disabled   | Disabled              |
| Min ATAAC Temp OFF                    | 0 – 120°C             | 40°C                  |
| Max ATAAC Temp ON                     | 0 – 120°C             | 45°C                  |
| Auxiliary Temp control Enabled        | Enabled<br>Disabled   | Disabled              |
| Min Auxiliary Temp OFF                | 0 – 120°C             | 80°C                  |
| Max Auxiliary Temp ON                 | 0 – 120°C             | 102°C                 |
| Hydraulic Temp control Enabled        | Enabled<br>Disabled   | Disabled              |
| Min Hydraulic Temp ON                 | 0 – 120°C             | 80°C                  |
| Max Hydraulic Temp OFF                | 0 – 120°C             | 102°C                 |
| Transmission Oil Temp control Enabled | Enabled<br>Disabled   | Disabled              |
| Min Transmission Oil Temp ON          | 0 – 120°C             | 80°C                  |
| Max Transmission Oil Temp OFF         | 0 – 120°C             | 102°C                 |

Table 15.15

### 15.6.3 ON-OFF Fan Speed Installation

Please refer to the 400 Series electrical schematics

## 15.7 Engine No Load Fuel Map Offset

### 15.7.1 Engine No Load Fuel Map Offset Operation

Applications such as hydraulic excavators are operated at fixed engine speed points for standard operations. Under no load (machine parasitic only) conditions it is expected that the engine speed when viewed by the operator will reflect the machine set speed.

The Engine No Load Fuel Map Offset feature is designed to allow the droop lines to be calculated based on machine no load fuelling and not engine no load fuel. With this feature the Engine speed will be as requested by machine under no load across the full Engine speed range.

When activated, the droop calculation will start after the configured offset is reached, under the offset the Engine will be responding as an Isochronous droop. Figure 15-1 illustrates the behaviour of the Engine with the feature enabled:

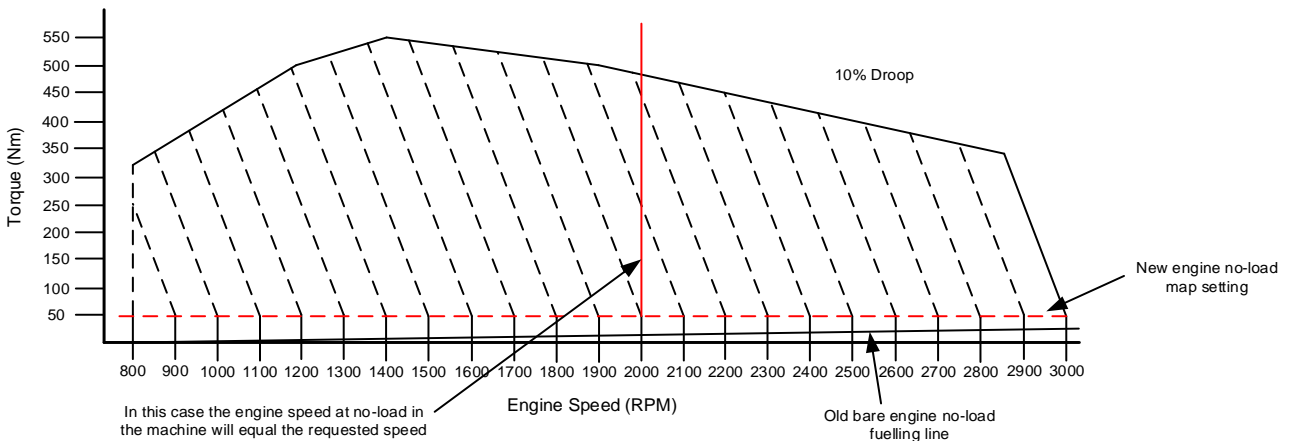


Figure 15-1 Engine behaviour with Engine No Load Fuel Map offset enabled

### 15.7.2 Engine No Load Fuel Map Offset Configuration

This feature needs to be configured through the Service Tool:

| Configuration field names            | Configuration Options | Default Configuration |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Droop No Load Fuel Offset Percentage | 0 – 100%              | 0%                    |

Table 15.16

### 15.7.3 Engine No Load Fuel Map Offset Installation

No specific wiring is required for this feature.

## 15.8 Low Battery Voltage Elevated Idle

### 15.8.1 Low Battery Voltage Elevated Idle Operation

This features monitors the current Battery voltage and will elevate the Engine Idle when the battery voltage is below the pre-configured threshold for a configurable amount of time.

Here is the pre-configured battery voltage threshold:

- 12V System: 12.24V

The conditions to trigger the elevated idle are as follow:

- The low battery voltage elevated idle feature is enabled.
- The system battery voltage is below threshold for a specified amount of time (the debounce time).
- The work mode switch has been activated by the Hardwired or CAN option.
- The engine speed is at low idle (and has been for at least 5 minutes).

The Engine requires the “Engine Elevated Idle” (also called Machine Safe State, Work Mode) input to be enabled to elevated the Engine Idle. The installation requirements of this input are detailed in the “Engine Elevated Idle” section.

The Low Battery Elevated Idle speed is configurable through the Service tool. When the strategy is triggered, the Engine will ramp up to the desired speed at a rate of 600rpm/s.

The Low Battery Elevated Idle will not be turned off when the Battery voltage returns to a normal level.

### 15.8.2 Low Battery Voltage Elevated Idle Configuration

This feature needs to be configured through the Service Tool:

| Configuration field names                      | Configuration Options | Default Configuration |
|--|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Low Battery Voltage Elevated Idle              | Enabled<br>Disabled   | Disable               |
| Low Battery Voltage Elevated Idle Delay Timer  | 3 – 30 minutes        | 5 minutes             |
| Low Battery Voltage Elevated Idle Target Speed | 800 – 1200 rpm        | 1200 rpm              |

Table 15.17

### 15.8.3 Low Battery Voltage Elevated Idle Installation

This feature requires the right installation of the “Engine Elevated Idle” input, which is explained in the “Engine Elevated Idle” section.

## 15.9 Engine Running Output

### 15.9.1 Engine Running Output Operation

The Engine Running Output provides an easy way to identify when the Engine is running. This is particularly practical for application with remote control station.

The principle of this feature is to turn on the Engine Running Output (J2-21) when Engine speed is over a configured threshold and to turn it off when Engine is below the configure threshold.

### 15.9.2 Engine Running Output Configuration

This feature needs to be configured through the Service Tool:

| Configuration field names             | Configuration Options      | Default Configuration |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| Engine Running Output Indicator       | Installed<br>Not Installed | Not Installed         |
| Engine Running Output Speed Threshold | 0 – 1200 rpm               | 600 rpm               |

Table 15.18

### 15.9.3 Engine Running Output Installation

- Please refer to the 400 Series electrical schematics.

## 15.10 Maintenance Indicator

### 15.10.1 Maintenance Indicator Operation

The maintenance indicator provides the capability to inform when maintenance is required based on Engine hours since the last service.

The default maintenance interval is set to 500 hours and can be configured by the customer. When this maintenance interval is exceeded, the maintenance indicator will turn ON and the J1939 message PGN FEC0 SPN 916 will be negative.

The J1939 supported message is as follows:

| PGN # | PGN Description            | SPN # | SPN Description  |
|-------|----------------------------|-------|--|
| FEC0  | Service Information (Serv) | 916   | Service Delay / Operational Time Based   |
|       |                            |       | 1 h/bit, Offset = -32,127 h  |
|       |                            |       | The time in vehicle operational time until the next vehicle service inspection is required. A negative value is transmitted if the service inspection has been passed. |

Table 15.19

There are two methods to reset the Maintenance interval:

- Through Service Tool  
The following maintenance indicator reset procedure is required in the electronic service tool;  
Go to "Service", "Maintenance Indicator Reset", and click "Reset Button".
- Through J1939 message  
The following maintenance indicator reset procedure is required over J1939, when this message is sent by the customer the engine software will reset the maintenance indicator timer.

| PGN # | PGN Description | SPN # | SPN Description                                       |
|-------|-----------------|-------|---|
| 56932 | Reset           | 988   | Trip Group 1  |
|       |                 |       | Bit State 00 = Take no action<br>Bit State 01 = Reset |

Table 15.20

### 15.10.2 Maintenance Indicator Configuration

This feature needs to be configured through the Service Tool:

| Configuration field names                | Configuration Options | Default Configuration |
|--|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Maintenance Indicator Mode               | Off<br>Man-Hour       | Off                   |
| Maintenance Level 1 Cycle Interval Hours | 5 - 1000              | 500                   |

Table 15.21

### 15.10.3 Maintenance Indicator Installation

- Please refer to the 400 Series electrical schematics.

## 15.11 Immobiliser

### 15.11.1 Immobiliser Operation

The engine provides an immobiliser feature that will disable the injection if a specific J1939 message is not received. The Engine Injection will be disabled under the following conditions:

- J1939 Message not present
- No Network communication

After the engine has been cranked and is running, the J1939 message is not monitored anymore and the loss of this message will not stop the engine.

The expected J1939 message is as follow:

| PGN # | PGN Description            | SPN # | SPN Description  |
|-------|----------------------------|-------|--|
| 34560 | Engine State Request (ESR) | 5793  | Desired Engine Fuelling State  |
|       |                            |       | Bit State 00 = Fuelling Not Desired<br>Bit State 01 = Fuelling Desired |

Table 15.22

The Engine will communicate the status of the immobiliser through the following J1939 messages:

| PGN # | PGN Description                         | SPN # | SPN Description   |
|-------|---|-------|---|
| 64712 | Electronic Engine Controller (EEC13) 13 | 5794  | Feedback Engine Fuelling State  |
|       |   |       | Bit State 00 = Fuelling is or will be inhibited<br>Bit State 01 = Engine will be kept running<br>Bit State 10 = No active request                   |
|       |   | 5795  | Engine Fuelling Inhibit Allowed   |
|       |   |       | Bit State 00 = Engine currently will not stop fuelling in response to SPN5793.<br>Bit State 01 = Engine will stop fuelling in response to SPN 5793. |

Table 15.23

Figure 15-2 explains the feature flow:

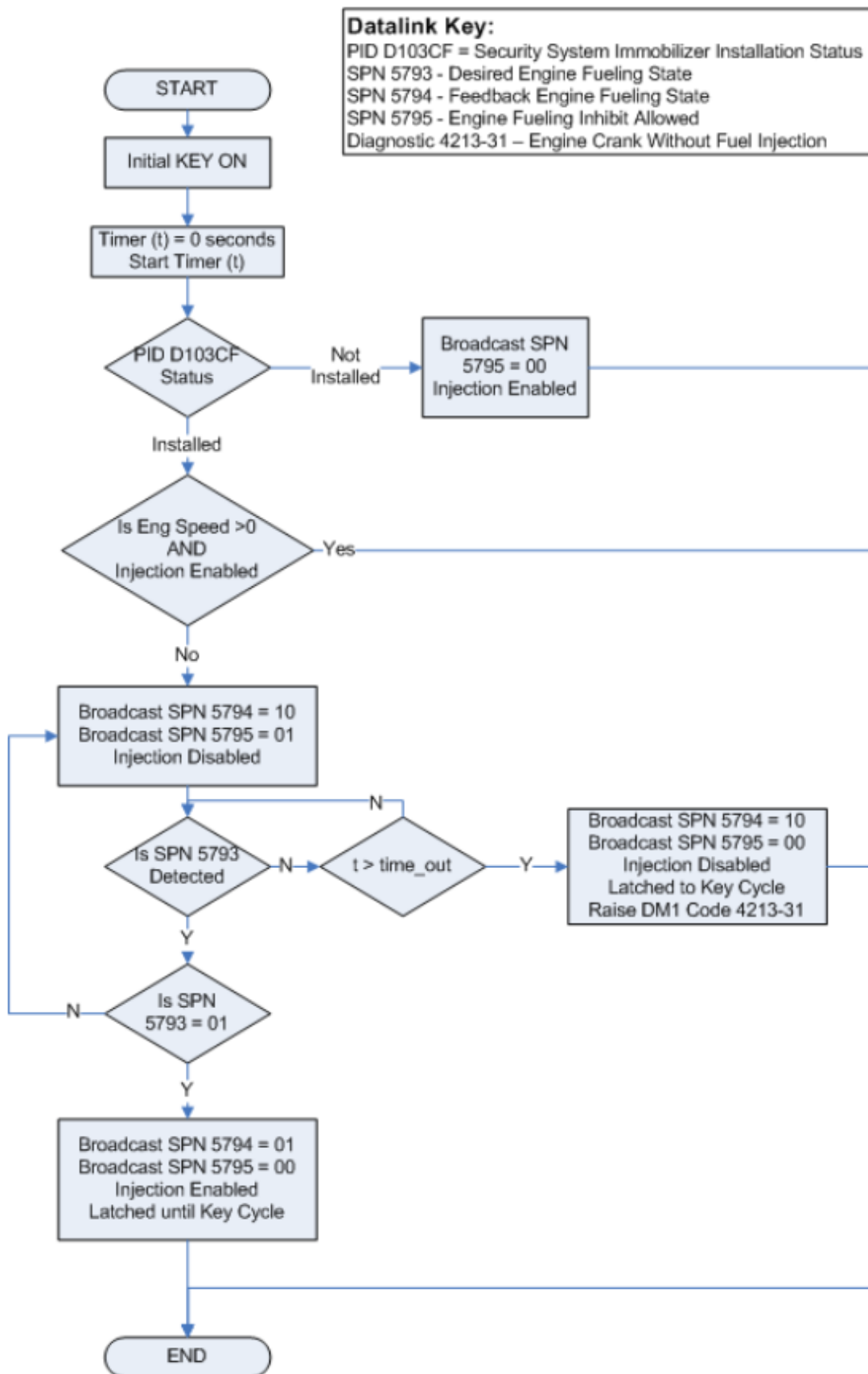


Figure 15-2 Immobiliser Flow

### 15.11.2 Immobiliser Configuration

This feature needs to be configured through the Service Tool:

| Configuration field names                       | Configuration Options      | Default Configuration |
|---|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| Security System Immobiliser Installation Status | Installed<br>Not Installed | Not Installed         |

Table 15.24

### 15.11.3 Immobiliser Installation

There is no specific wiring required for this feature.

## 16.0 Datalink Support

The 400 Series product range is supplied with a customer's J1939 CAN bus connection as part of the ECM J1 connector. There is a second non-customer J1939 CANbus which is used for proprietary information between aftertreatment components and engine ECM control.

The J1939 standard is a widely used protocol, which operates on a standard CAN bus system. All J1939 enabled devices will operate on this Datalink and the remainder of this section details the basic requirements for J1939 communication.

### 16.1 SAE J1939

The SAE standard was initially developed for the US truck and bus industry. It has been expanded and is now the most widely used Datalink standard for industrial power trains, with compliance from almost all engine and transmission manufacturers.

A list of SAE J1939 documentation, which should be used as reference when installing a J1939 network, is listed below.

1. J1939-11 - Physical Layer, 250Kbits/s, Twisted Shielded pair.
2. J1939-15 - Reduced Physical Layer, 250Kbits/s, Un-shielded Twisted pair.
3. J1939-21 - Data Link Layer.
4. J1939-31 - Network Layer.
5. J1939-71 - Vehicle Application Layer.
6. J1939-73 - Application Layer Diagnostics.

#### 16.1.1 Summary of Key J1939 Application Issues

This is a summary of some of the key points and answers to frequently asked questions relating to design of a J1939 compatible network. It is intended to give a design overview and does not in any way replace or contradict the recommendations or design criteria contained within the SAE J1939 standard documents.

#### 16.1.2 Physical layer

- The data rate is 250Kbits/sec.
- Twisted pair cable, of a 120 Ohm impedance characteristic, should be used throughout.
- It is recommended that this cable is shielded (as per J1939-11) and that the screen is grounded at a central point in the network. Unshielded twisted pair cable is used by some machine manufacturers, however (as per J1939-15), offering lower cost but lower immunity to electromagnetic noise.
- The CANbus is linear and should be terminated with 120 Ohm resistors at either end. It is a common mistake to use one 60 Ohm resistor instead of two 120 Ohm resistors. However this may not operate correctly.
- Maximum bus length is 40m.
- Network nodes are connected to the bus via stubs of maximum recommended length 3m.

#### 16.1.3 Network Layer

- J1939 recommends a bit sample point of 87 percent. This relatively late sampling point, which gives the best immunity to noise and propagation delay. It does restrict the size of the software jump width (SJW), however.
- All nodes must have the same bit timing.
- Accurate bit timing is essential (4ms +/- 0.2 percent).
- It is recommended that the average busload is not greater than 40 percent.

- Hardware filtering (masking) of CAN messages should be used under high busload limit demands on processors.
- The engine ECM always assumes a fixed source address “00”. It will not change its address in the arbitration process described in J1939-81.
- The multi 7 packet protocol (described in J1939-21) is used for sending messages with more than eight bytes of data. In the Perkins application this will be used principally for the diagnostic messages DM1 and DM2.
- Information may be broadcast or requested at regular intervals. For example, the engine will broadcast its ‘current speed’ every 10ms but it will only send ‘hours run’ information if another node requests it.

### 16.1.4 Application Layer

- The messages (PGN’s) supported by the engine ECM are only a subset of the messages described in J1939-71 and J1939-73.
- Some PGN’s may be partially supported i.e. only those bytes for which the ECM has valid data will be supported.
- Unsupported data bytes are generally sent as FF (hex) and incorrect or invalid information is sent as FE (hex), this information is referenced in J1939-71 (Table 1 – Transmitted Signal Ranges).

## 16.2 Connection and Use of the J1939 CAN Bus

There are two J1939 Data links available on this Perkins product; CANbus #1 – Customer connection and CANbus#2 – Non customer connection (Aftertreatment component communication with engine controller).

The CANbus#1 Datalink can therefore be used to connect the engine ECM to machine controllers, transmission controllers, instrumentation gauges etc. All of the general installation criteria for a CAN network detailed in section 15.1 apply for this Datalink and the ECM J1 connection points are shown below in table below.

| ECM J1 (K) Pin Number | Function      |
|-----------------------|---------------|
| J1 – 7                | CANbus #1 (-) |
| J1 - 8                | CANbus #1 (+) |

Table 16.1

Figure 16-1 gives an example of a typical CAN network layout.

It should be noted that 2 x 120 Ohm termination resistors are located at both ends of the CANbus, the A6E10 does not have internal CAN termination resistors.

**Note 1:** The A6E10 ECM is a Type 2 ECM, therefore both CAN termination resistors are located on the customer harness.

**Note 2:** The termination resistors must be located at each extremity of the CAN bus.

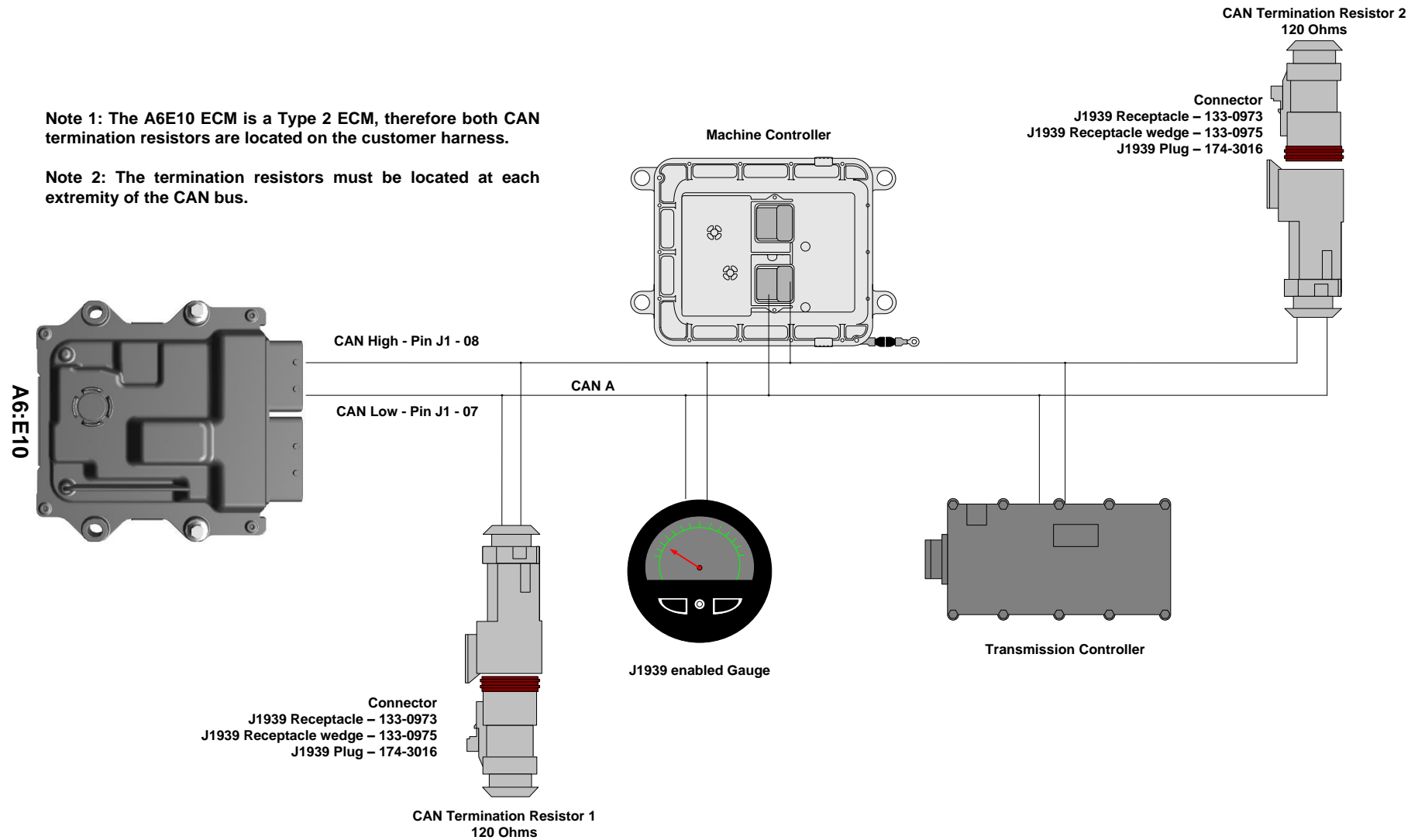


Figure 16-1

### 16.3 J1939 Supported Parameters Quick reference

| NAME   | PGN         | Default Priority | Tx/Rx/On Req | SPN           | Start Byte | Length  | Units  | Resolution                 | Min Value | Max Value |
|--|-------------|------------------|--------------|---------------|------------|---------|--------|----------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| <b>TORQUE SPEED CONTROL 1 (TSC1)</b>                     | <b>0</b>    | <b>0</b>         | <b>3</b>     | <b>Rx</b>     |            |         |        |                            |           |           |
| Override Control Mode                                    |             |                  |              | 695           | 1.1        | 3 bits  | States | 4 states/2 bit             | 0         | 3         |
| Requested Speed Control Conditions                       |             |                  |              | 696           | 1.3        | 2 bits  | States | 4 states/2 bit             | 0         | 3         |
| Override Control Mode Priority                           |             |                  |              | 897           | 1.5        | 2 bits  | States | 4 states/2 bit             | 0         | 3         |
| Requested Speed / Speed Limit                            |             |                  |              | 898           | 2-3        | 16 bits | rpm    | 0.125rpm/bit               | 0         | 8,031.88  |
| Requested Torque / Torque Limit                          |             |                  |              | 518           | 4          | 8 bits  | %      | 1 %/bit<br>Offset = -125 % | -125      | 125       |
| TSC1 Transmission Rate                                   |             |                  |              | 3349          | 5.1        | 3 bits  | States | 8 states/3 bit             | 0         | 7         |
| TSC1 Control Purpose                                     |             |                  |              | 3350          | 5.4        | 5 bits  | States | 32 states/5 bit            | 0         | 31        |
| Message Counter  |             |                  |              | 4206          | 8.1        | 4 bits  | Count  | 1 count/bit                | 0         | 15        |
| Message Checksum   |             |                  |              | 4207          | 8.5        | 4 bits  | Count  | 1 count/bit                | 0         | 15        |
| <b>CAB MESSAGE 2 (CM2)</b>                               | <b>8500</b> | <b>34048</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>RX</b>     |            |         |        |                            |           |           |
| Elevated Engine Speed Allowed Switch                     |             |                  |              | 7579          | 4.5        | 2 bits  | states | 4 states/2 bits            | 0         | 3         |
| <b>Engine State Request (ESR)</b>                        | <b>8700</b> | <b>34560</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Rx</b>     |            |         |        |                            |           |           |
| Desired Engine Fuelling State                            |             |                  |              | 5793          | 1.1        | 2 bits  | States | 4 states/2 bit             | 0         | 1         |
| <b>DIAGNOSTIC READINESS 2 (DM21)</b>                     | <b>C100</b> | <b>49408</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>On Req</b> |            |         |        |                            |           |           |
| Minutes Run By Engine While MIL Activated                |             |                  |              | 3295          | 5-6        | 16 bits | km     | 1km/bit                    | 0         | 64255     |
| <b>CONTINUOUS TORQUE &amp; SPEED LIMIT REQUEST (CTL)</b> | <b>CF00</b> | <b>52992</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Tx</b>     |            |         |        |                            |           |           |
| Engine Speed Limit Request - Minimum Continuous          |             |                  |              | 1784          | 1          | 8 bits  | rpm    | 32rpm/bit                  | 0         | 8000      |
| <b>RESET (RESET)</b>                                     | <b>DE00</b> | <b>56832</b>     | <b>7</b>     | <b>Rx</b>     |            |         |        |                            |           |           |

| NAME   | PGN         | Default Priority | Tx/Rx/On Req | SPN           | Start Byte | Length  | Units  | Resolution      | Min Value | Max Value |
|--|-------------|------------------|--------------|---------------|------------|---------|--------|-----------------|-----------|-----------|
| Engine Ignition Control Maintenance Hours Reset  |             |                  |              | 6219          | 3.7        | 2 bits  | States | 4 states/2 bit  | 0         | 3         |
| <b>CAB MESSAGE 1 (CM1)</b>                       | <b>E000</b> | <b>57344</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Rx</b>     |            |         |        |                 |           |           |
| Aftertreatment Regeneration Inhibit Switch       |             |                  |              | 3695          | 6.1        | 2 bits  | States | 4 states/2 bit  | 0         | 3         |
| <b>ELECTRONIC BRAKE CONTROLLER 1 (EBC1)</b>      | <b>F001</b> | <b>61441</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Rx</b>     |            |         |        |                 |           |           |
| Engine Auxiliary Shutdown Switch                 |             |                  |              | 970           | 4.5        | 2 bits  | States | 4 states/2 bit  | 0         | 3         |
| <b>ELECTRONIC ENGINE CONTROLLER 2 (EEC2)</b>     | <b>F003</b> | <b>61443</b>     | <b>3</b>     | <b>Tx</b>     |            |         |        |                 |           |           |
| Accelerator Pedal 1 Low Idle Switch              |             |                  |              | 558           | 1.1        | 2 bits  | States | 4 states/2 bit  | 0         | 3         |
| Accelerator Pedal 2 Low Idle Switch              |             |                  |              | 2970          | 1.7        | 2 bits  | States | 4 states/2 bit  | 0         | 3         |
| Accelerator Pedal Position 1                     |             |                  |              | 91            | 2          | 8 bits  | %      | 0.4%/bit        | 0         | 100       |
| Engine % Load At Current Speed                   |             |                  |              | 92            | 3          | 8 bits  | %      | 1%/bit          | 0         | 250       |
| Accelerator Pedal Position 2                     |             |                  |              | 29            | 5          | 8 bits  | %      | 0.4%/bit        | 0         | 100       |
| SCR Thermal Management Active                    |             |                  |              | 5400          | 6.7        | 2 bits  | States | 4 states/2 bit  | 0         | 3         |
| Actual Maximum Available Engine - Percent Torque |             |                  |              | 3357          | 7          | 1 byte  | %      | 0.4 %/bit       | 0         | 100       |
| <b>ELECTRONIC ENGINE CONTROLLER 1 (EEC1)</b>     | <b>F004</b> | <b>61444</b>     | <b>3</b>     | <b>Tx</b>     |            |         |        |                 |           |           |
| Actual Engine - Percent Torque                   |             |                  |              | 513           | 3          | 8 bits  | %      | 1%/bit          | -125      | 125       |
| Engine Speed                                     |             |                  |              | 190           | 4-5        | 16 bits | rpm    | 0.125rpm/bit    | 0         | 8031.875  |
| <b>ENGINE SPEED SENSOR INFORMATION (ESSI1)</b>   | <b>F021</b> | <b>61473</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>On Req</b> |            |         |        |                 |           |           |
| Engine Speed 1                                   |             |                  |              | 4201          | 1-2        | 16 bits | rpm    | 0.5rpm/bit      | 0         | 32127.5   |
| Engine Speed 2                                   |             |                  |              | 723           | 3-4        | 16 bits | rpm    | 0.5rpm/bit      | 0         | 32127.5   |
| Engine Speed Sensor 2 Timing Pattern Status      |             |                  |              | 4204          | 7.5        | 2 bits  | N/A    | 4 states/2 bits | 0         | 3         |

| NAME   | PGN         | Default Priority | Tx/Rx/On Req | SPN  | Start Byte | Length  | Units         | Resolution                           | Min Value | Max Value  |
|--|-------------|------------------|--------------|------|------------|---------|---------------|--------------------------------------|-----------|------------|
| Engine Speed Sensor 1 Timing Pattern Status      |             |                  |              | 4203 | 7.7        | 2 bits  | N/A           | 4 states/2 bits                      | 0         | 3          |
| <b>ENGINE START CONTROL (ENGSC)</b>              | <b>F0ED</b> | <b>61677</b>     | <b>4</b>     |      |            |         | <b>Rx</b>     |                                      |           |            |
| Engine Start Request                             |             |                  |              | 7745 | 1.1        | 2 bits  | States        | 4 states/2 bit                       | 0         | 3          |
| Engine Start Consent                             |             |                  |              | 7746 | 1.3        | 3 bits  | States        | 8 states/3 bit                       | 0         | 7          |
| Engine Start Abort Request                       |             |                  |              | 7747 | 2.1        | 2 bits  | States        | 4 states/2 bit                       | 0         | 3          |
| Engine Starter 1 Feedback                        |             |                  |              | 7748 | 2.3        | 3 bits  | States        | 8 states/3 bit                       | 0         | 7          |
| <b>ENGINE IDLE MANAGEMENT INFORMATION (EIMI)</b> | <b>FB85</b> | <b>64389</b>     | <b>6</b>     |      |            |         | <b>Rx</b>     |                                      |           |            |
| Engine Idle Management Status                    |             |                  |              | 9677 | 1.1        | 4 bits  | States        | 16 states/4 bits                     | 0         | 15         |
| <b>AFTERTREATMENT SYSTEM INFORMATION (ASI1)</b>  | <b>FC31</b> | <b>64561</b>     | <b>6</b>     |      |            |         | <b>Tx</b>     |                                      |           |            |
| Aftertreatment Thermal Management Status         |             |                  |              | 7332 | 1.1        | 2 bits  | states        | 4 states/2 bits                      | 0         | 3          |
| Aftertreatment Engine Speed Increase Request     |             |                  |              | 7502 | 1.5        | 2 bits  | states        | 4 states/2 bits                      | 0         | 3          |
| Aftertreatment Engine Load Request               |             |                  |              | 7503 | 1.7        | 2 bits  | states        | 4 states/2 bits                      | 0         | 3          |
| Aftertreatment Ambient Air Temperature           |             |                  |              | 7441 | 2-3        | 16 bits | °C            | 0.03125DegC/bit<br>Offset = -273DegC | -273      | 1734.96875 |
| <b>ELECTRONIC ENGINE CONTROLLER 13 (EEC13)</b>   | <b>FCC8</b> | <b>64712</b>     | <b>6</b>     |      |            |         | <b>Tx</b>     |                                      |           |            |
| Feedback Engine Fuelling State                   |             |                  |              | 5794 | 1.1        | 2 bits  | States        | 4 states/2 bit                       | 0         | 1          |
| Engine Fuelling Inhibit Allowed                  |             |                  |              | 5795 | 1.3        | 2 bits  | States        | 4 states/2 bit                       | 0         | 1          |
| <b>ELECTRONIC ENGINE CONTROLLER 12</b>           | <b>FCCC</b> | <b>64716</b>     | <b>6</b>     |      |            |         | <b>On Req</b> |                                      |           |            |
| Aftertreatment 1 Intake Gas Sensor Power Supply  |             |                  |              | 5758 | 1.1        | 2 bits  | states        | 4 states/2 bits                      | 0         | 3          |
| Aftertreatment 1 Outlet Gas Sensor Power Supply  |             |                  |              | 5759 | 1.3        | 2 bits  | states        | 4 states/2 bits                      | 0         | 3          |

| NAME  | PGN         | Default Priority | Tx/Rx/On Req | SPN       | Start Byte | Length | Units   | Resolution | Min Value                            | Max Value |                  |
|---|-------------|------------------|--------------|-----------|------------|--------|---------|------------|--------------------------------------|-----------|------------------|
| <b>DIRECT LAMP CONTROL DATA 1 (DLCD1)</b>   | <b>FD05</b> | <b>64773</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Tx</b> |            |        |         |            |                                      |           |                  |
| Engine Oil Pressure Low Lamp Data   |             |                  |              |           | 5099       | 2.5    | 2 bits  | States     | 4 states/2 bit                       | 0         | 3                |
| Engine Coolant Level Low Lamp Data  |             |                  |              |           | 5101       | 3.1    | 2 bits  | States     | 4 states/2 bit                       | 0         | 3                |
| <b>DIRECT LAMP CONTROL COMMAND 1 (DLCC1)</b>  | <b>FD07</b> | <b>64775</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Tx</b> |            |        |         |            |                                      |           |                  |
| Engine Air Filter Restriction Lamp Command  |             |                  |              |           | 5086       | 3.5    | 2 bits  | States     | 4 states/2 bit                       | 0         | 1                |
| <b>AFTERTREATMENT 1 DIESEL OXIDATION CATALYST (A1DOC)</b>                               | <b>FD20</b> | <b>64800</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Tx</b> |            |        |         |            |                                      |           |                  |
| Aftertreatment 1 Diesel Oxidation Catalyst Intake Temperature                           |             |                  |              |           | 4765       | 1-2    | 16 bits | °C         | 0.03125DegC/bit<br>Offset = -273DegC | -273      | 1734.96875       |
| <b>DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER CONTROL 1 (DPFC1)</b>                                      | <b>FD7C</b> | <b>64892</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Tx</b> |            |        |         |            |                                      |           |                  |
| Diesel Particulate Filter Lamp Command  |             |                  |              |           | 3697       | 1.1    | 3 bits  | States     | 8 states/3 bit                       | 0         | 7                |
| Aftertreatment Diesel Particulate Filter Active Regeneration Status                     |             |                  |              |           | 3700       | 2.3    | 2 bits  | States     | 4 states/2 bit                       | 0         | 3                |
| Aftertreatment Diesel Particulate Filter Status   |             |                  |              |           | 3701       | 2.5    | 3 bits  | States     | 8 states/3 bit                       | 0         | 7                |
| Diesel Particulate Filter Active Regeneration Inhibited Due to Inhibit Switch           |             |                  |              |           | 3703       | 3.3    | 2 bits  | States     | 4 states/2 bit                       | 0         | 3                |
| Diesel Particulate Filter Active Regeneration Inhibited Due to Temporary System Lockout |             |                  |              |           | 3714       | 6.1    | 2 bits  | States     | 4 states/2 bit                       | 0         | 3                |
| Diesel Particulate Filter Active Regeneration Inhibited Due to Permanent System Lockout |             |                  |              |           | 3715       | 6.3    | 2 bits  | States     | 4 states/2 bit                       | 0         | 3                |
| <b>ENGINE OPERATING INFORMATION (EOI)</b>   | <b>FD92</b> | <b>64914</b>     | <b>3</b>     | <b>Tx</b> |            |        |         |            |                                      |           |                  |
| Engine Operating State  |             |                  |              |           | 3543       | 1.1    | 4 bits  | States     | 11 states/4 bit                      | 0         | 0100 & 0100 only |

| NAME  | PGN         | Default Priority | Tx/Rx/On Req | SPN           | Start Byte | Length  | Units  | Resolution                           | Min Value | Max Value  |
|---|-------------|------------------|--------------|---------------|------------|---------|--------|--------------------------------------|-----------|------------|
| <b>AFTERTREATMENT 1 HISTORICAL INFORMATION (AT1HI1)</b>           | <b>FD98</b> | <b>64920</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>On Req</b> |            |         |        |                                      |           |            |
| Aftertreatment 1 Total Fuel Used                                  |             |                  |              | 3522          | 1-4        | 32 bits | Litres | 0.5L/bit                             | 0         | 2105540608 |
| <b>SENSOR ELECTRICAL POWER #1 (SEP1)</b>                          | <b>FD9D</b> | <b>64925</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Tx</b>     |            |         |        |                                      |           |            |
| Sensor Supply Voltage 1   |             |                  |              | 3509          | 1-2        | 16 bits | V      | 0.05V/bit                            | 0         | 3212.75    |
| Sensor Supply Voltage 2   |             |                  |              | 3510          | 3-4        | 16 bits | V      | 0.05V/bit                            | 0         | 3212.75    |
| <b>AFTERTREATMENT 1 INTAKE GAS 2 (AT1IG2)</b>                     | <b>FDB4</b> | <b>64948</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Tx</b>     |            |         |        |                                      |           |            |
| Aftertreatment 1 Diesel Particulate Filter Intake Gas Temperature |             |                  |              | 3242          | 3-4        | 16 bits | °C     | 0.03125DegC/bit<br>Offset = -273DegC | -273      | 1734.96875 |
| <b>COLD START AIDS (CSA)</b>                                      | <b>FDC6</b> | <b>64966</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>As Req</b> |            |         |        |                                      |           |            |
| Engine Start Enable Device 1                                      |             |                  |              | 626           | 1.1        | 2 bits  | states | 4 states/2 bits                      | 0         | 3          |
| Engine Start Enable Device 2                                      |             |                  |              | 1804          | 1.3        | 2 bits  | states | 4 states/2 bits                      | 0         | 3          |
| Engine Start Enable Device 1 Configuration                        |             |                  |              | 2899          | 2.1        | 4 bits  | states | 16 states/4 bits                     | 0         | 15         |
| Engine Start Enable Device 2 Configuration                        |             |                  |              | 2898          | 2.5        | 4 bits  | states | 16 states/4 bits                     | 0         | 15         |
| <b>OFF HIGHWAY ENGINE CONTROL SELECTION STATES (OHCS)</b>         | <b>FDC7</b> | <b>64967</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Rx</b>     |            |         |        |                                      |           |            |
| Engine Alternate Low Idle Select State                            |             |                  |              | 2891          | 1.5        | 2 bits  | States | 4 states/2 bit                       | 0         | 1          |
| Engine Operating Mode Selection                                   |             |                  |              | 8694          | 5.5        | 4 bits  | States | 16 states/4 bit                      | 0         | 100        |
| <b>OFF HIGHWAY ENGINE CONTROL SELECTION (OHECS)</b>               | <b>FDCB</b> | <b>64971</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Rx</b>     |            |         |        |                                      |           |            |
| Engine Alternate Low Idle Switch                                  |             |                  |              | 2883          | 1.5        | 2 bits  | States | 4 states/2 bits                      | 0         | 1          |
| Engine Operating Mode Command                                     |             |                  |              | 8608          | 5.5        | 4 bits  | States | 16 states/4 bit                      | 0         | 4          |

| NAME  | PGN         | Default Priority | Tx/Rx/On Req | SPN           | Start Byte | Length | Units   | Resolution | Min Value                            | Max Value |            |
|---|-------------|------------------|--------------|---------------|------------|--------|---------|------------|--------------------------------------|-----------|------------|
| <b>ELECTRONIC ENGINE CONTROLLER 5 (EEC5)</b>                              | <b>FDD5</b> | <b>64981</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Tx</b>     |            |        |         |            |                                      |           |            |
| Engine Exhaust Gas Recirculation 1 Valve 1 Control 1                      |             |                  |              |               | 2791       | 5-6    | 16 bits | %          | 0.0025%/bit                          | 0         | 160.6375   |
| <b>AFTERTREATMENT 1 DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID TANK 1 INFORMATION (AT1T1I1)</b> | <b>FE56</b> | <b>65110</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Tx</b>     |            |        |         |            |                                      |           |            |
| Aftertreatment Selective Catalytic Reduction Operator Inducement Active   |             |                  |              |               | 5246       | 6.6    | 3 bits  | states     | 8 states/3 bit                       | 0         | 7          |
| <b>VEHICLE FLUIDS (VF)</b>  | <b>FE68</b> | <b>65128</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Rx</b>     |            |        |         |            |                                      |           |            |
| Hydraulic Temperature   |             |                  |              |               | 1638       | 1      | 8 bits  | °C         | 1DegC/bit<br>Offset = -40DegC        | -40       | 210        |
| <b>ENGINE TEMPERATURE 3 (ET3)</b>   | <b>FE69</b> | <b>65129</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Tx</b>     |            |        |         |            |                                      |           |            |
| Engine Charge Air Cooler 1 Outlet Temperature                             |             |                  |              |               | 2630       | 7-8    | 16 bits | °C         | 0.03125DegC/bit<br>Offset = -273DegC | -273      | 1734.96875 |
| <b>ENGINE FUEL/LUBE SYSTEMS (EFS)</b>                                     | <b>FE6A</b> | <b>65130</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Tx</b>     |            |        |         |            |                                      |           |            |
| Engine Oil Priming State  |             |                  |              |               | 3551       | 6.3    | 2 bits  | states     | 4 states/2 bit                       | 0         | 3          |
| Fuel Pump Prime Status  |             |                  |              |               | 4083       | 7.4    | 2 bits  | states     | 4 states/2 bit                       | 0         | 3          |
| <b>AUXILIARY ANALOG INFORMATION (AAI)</b>                                 | <b>FE8C</b> | <b>65164</b>     | <b>7</b>     | <b>On Req</b> |            |        |         |            |                                      |           |            |
| Auxiliary Temperature 1   |             |                  |              |               | 441        | 1      | 8 bits  | °C         | 1DegC/bit<br>Offset = -40DegC        | -40       | 210        |
| Auxiliary Pressure 1  |             |                  |              |               | 1387       | 3      | 8 bits  | kPa        | 16kPa/bit                            | 0         | 4000       |
| <b>Fan Drive #1 (FD1)</b>   | <b>FEBD</b> | <b>65213</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Tx</b>     |            |        |         |            |                                      |           |            |
| Engine Fan 1 Estimated Percent Speed                                      |             |                  |              |               | 975        | 1      | 1 byte  | %          | 0.4 %/bit                            | 0         | 100        |
|   |             |                  |              |               | 977        | 2.1    | 4 bits  | States     | 16 states/4 bit                      | 0         | 15         |
| <b>SERVICE INFORMATION (SERV)</b>   | <b>FEC0</b> | <b>65216</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>On Req</b> |            |        |         |            |                                      |           |            |

| NAME  | PGN         | Default Priority | Tx/Rx/On Req | SPN           | Start Byte   | Length    | Units  | Resolution                    | Min Value | Max Value   |
|---|-------------|------------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|-----------|--------|-------------------------------|-----------|-------------|
| Service Component Identification              |             |                  |              | 911           | 1            | 8 bits    | ID     | 1ID/bit                       | 0         | 255         |
| Service Component Identification              |             |                  |              | 912           | 4            | 8 bits    | ID     | 1ID/bit                       | 0         | 255         |
| Service Component Identification              |             |                  |              | 913           | 6            | 8 bits    | ID     | 1ID/bit                       | 0         | 255         |
| Service Delay/Operational Time Based          |             |                  |              | 916           | 7-8          | 16 bits   | Hr     | 1 hr/bit<br>Offset = -32128hr | -32127    | 32128       |
| <b>SOFTWARE IDENTIFICATION (SOFT)</b>         | <b>FEDA</b> | <b>65242</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>On Req</b> |              |           |        |                               |           |             |
| Number Of Software Identification Fields      |             |                  |              | 965           | 1            | 8 bits    | step   | 1 step/bit                    | 0         | 250         |
| Software Identification                       |             |                  |              | 234           | 2<br>Onwards | 200 Bytes | ASCII  | N/A                           | 0         | 255         |
| <b>ENGINE FLUID LEVEL/PRESSURE 2 (EFL/P2)</b> | <b>FEDB</b> | <b>65243</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Tx</b>     |              |           |        |                               |           |             |
| Engine Injector Metering Rail 1 Pressure      |             |                  |              | 157           | 3-4          | 16 bits   | Mpa    | 1/253Mpa/bit                  | 0         | 250.996     |
| <b>IDLE OPERATION (IO)</b>                    | <b>FEDC</b> | <b>65244</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>On Req</b> |              |           |        |                               |           |             |
| Engine Total Idle Fuel Used                   |             |                  |              | 236           | 1-4          | 32 bits   | Litres | 0.5L/bit                      | 0         | 2105540608  |
| Engine Total Idle Hours                       |             |                  |              | 235           | 5-8          | 32 bits   | Hr     | 0.05hr/bit                    | 0         | 210554060.8 |
| <b>ELECTRONIC ENGINE CONTROLLER 3 (EEC3)</b>  | <b>FEDF</b> | <b>65247</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Tx</b>     |              |           |        |                               |           |             |
| Nominal Friction – Percent Torque             |             |                  |              | 514           | 1            | 8 bits    | %      | 1%/bit<br>Offset = -125%      | -125      | 125         |
| Engine's Desired Operating Speed              |             |                  |              | 515           | 2-3          | 16 bits   | rpm    | 0.125rpm/bit                  | 0         | 8031.875    |
| <b>ENGINE CONFIGURATION 1 (EC1)</b>           | <b>FEE3</b> | <b>65251</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Tx</b>     |              |           |        |                               |           |             |
| Engine Speed At Idle, Point 1                 |             |                  |              | 188           | 1-2          | 16 bits   | rpm    | 0.125rpm/bit                  | 0         | 8031.875    |
| Percent Torque at Idle Point 1                |             |                  |              | 539           | 3            | 8 bits    | %      | 1%/bit                        | -125      | 125         |
| Engine Speed At Point 2                       |             |                  |              | 528           | 4-5          | 16 bits   | rpm    | 0.125rpm/bit                  | 0         | 8031.875    |
| Percent Torque At Point 2                     |             |                  |              | 540           | 6            | 8 bits    | %      | 1%/bit                        | -125      | 125         |

| NAME   | PGN         | Default Priority | Tx/Rx/On Req | SPN           | Start Byte | Length  | Units  | Resolution      | Min Value | Max Value      |
|--|-------------|------------------|--------------|---------------|------------|---------|--------|-----------------|-----------|----------------|
| Engine Speed At Point 3                          |             |                  |              | 529           | 7-8        | 16 bits | rpm    | 0.125rpm/bit    | 0         | 8031.875       |
| Percent Torque At Point 3                        |             |                  |              | 541           | 9          | 8 bits  | %      | 1%/bit          | -125      | 125            |
| Engine Speed At Point 4                          |             |                  |              | 530           | 10-11      | 16 bits | rpm    | 0.125rpm/bit    | 0         | 8031.875       |
| Percent Torque At Point 4                        |             |                  |              | 542           | 12         | 8 bits  | %      | 1%/bit          | -125      | 125            |
| Engine Speed At Point 5                          |             |                  |              | 531           | 13-14      | 16 bits | rpm    | 0.125rpm/bit    | 0         | 8031.875       |
| Percent Torque At Point 5                        |             |                  |              | 543           | 15         | 8 bits  | %      | 1%/bit          | -125      | 125            |
| Engine Speed At High Idle, Point 6               |             |                  |              | 532           | 16-17      | 16 bits | rpm    | 0.125rpm/bit    | 0         | 8031.875       |
| Reference Engine Torque                          |             |                  |              | 544           | 20-21      | 16 bits | Nm     | 1Nm/bit         | 0         | 64255          |
| Engine Requested Speed Control Range Lower Limit |             |                  |              | 535           | 25         | 8 bits  | rpm    | 10rpm/bit       | 0         | 2500           |
| Engine Requested Speed Control Range Upper Limit |             |                  |              | 536           | 26         | 8 bits  | rpm    | 10rpm/bit       | 0         | 2500           |
| Engine Default Torque Limit                      |             |                  |              | 1846          | 33-34      | 16 bits | Nm     | 1Nm/bit         | 0         | 64255          |
| <b>SHUTDOWN (SHUTDN)</b>                         | <b>FEE4</b> | <b>65252</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Tx</b>     |            |         |        |                 |           |                |
| Engine Idle Shutdown has Shutdown Engine         |             |                  |              | 593           | 1.1        | 2 bits  | states | 4 states/2 bits | 0         | 3              |
| Engine Idle Shutdown Driver Alert Mode           |             |                  |              | 594           | 1.3        | 2 bits  | states | 4 states/2 bits | 0         | 3              |
| Engine Idle Shutdown Timer State                 |             |                  |              | 590           | 1.7        | 2 bits  | states | 4 states/2 bits | 0         | 3              |
| Engine Wait To Start Lamp                        |             |                  |              | 1081          | 4.1        | 2 bits  | states | 4 states/2 bits | 0         | 3              |
| Engine Over speed Test                           |             |                  |              | 2812          | 7.7        | 2 bits  | states | 4 states/2 bits | 0         | 3              |
| <b>ENGINE HOURS, REVOLUTIONS (HOURS)</b>         | <b>FEE5</b> | <b>65253</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>On Req</b> |            |         |        |                 |           |                |
| Engine Total Hours Of Operation                  |             |                  |              | 247           | 1-4        | 32 bits | hour   | 0.05h/bit       | 0         | 210,554,060.75 |
| <b>FUEL CONSUMPTION (LIQUID) (LFC)</b>           | <b>FEE9</b> | <b>65257</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>On Req</b> |            |         |        |                 |           |                |
| Engine Total Fuel Used                           |             |                  |              | 250           | 5-8        | 32 bits | Litres | 0.5L/bit        | 0         | 2105540608     |
| <b>COMPONENT IDENTIFICATION (CI)</b>             | <b>FEEB</b> | <b>65259</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>On Req</b> |            |         |        |                 |           |                |

| NAME  | PGN         | Default Priority | Tx/Rx/On Req | SPN       | Start Byte | Length    | Units  | Resolution                    | Min Value | Max Value |
|---|-------------|------------------|--------------|-----------|------------|-----------|--------|-------------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| Make  |             |                  |              | 586       | a          | 5 Bytes   | ASCII  | N/A                           | 0         | 255       |
| Model   |             |                  |              | 587       | b          | 200 Bytes | ASCII  | N/A                           | 0         | 255       |
| Serial Number                                 |             |                  |              | 588       | c          | 200 Bytes | ASCII  | N/A                           | 0         | 255       |
| <b>ENGINE TEMPERATURE 1 (ET1)</b>             | <b>FEFE</b> | <b>65262</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Tx</b> |            |           |        |                               |           |           |
| Engine Coolant Temperature                    |             |                  |              | 110       | 1          | 8 bits    | °C     | 1DegC/bit<br>Offset = -40DegC | -40       | 210       |
| Engine Fuel Temperature 1                     |             |                  |              | 174       | 2          | 8 bits    | °C     | 1DegC/bit<br>Offset = -40DegC | -40       | 210       |
| <b>ENGINE FLUID LEVEL/PRESSURE 1 (EFL/P1)</b> | <b>FEFF</b> | <b>65263</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Tx</b> |            |           |        |                               |           |           |
| Engine Oil Pressure                           |             |                  |              | 100       | 4          | 8 bits    | kPa    | 4kPa/bit                      | 0         | 1000      |
| Coolant Level                                 |             |                  |              | 111       | 8          | 8 bits    | %      | 0.4%/bit                      | 0         | 100       |
| <b>POWER TAKEOFF INFORMATION 1 (PTO1)</b>     | <b>FEF0</b> | <b>65264</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Tx</b> |            |           |        |                               |           |           |
| Engine PTO Governor Enable Switch             |             |                  |              | 980       | 6.1        | 2 bits    | states | 4 states/2 bits               | 0         | 3         |
| Engine PTO Governor Set Switch                |             |                  |              | 984       | 7.1        | 2 bits    | states | 4 states/2 bits               | 0         | 3         |
| Engine PTO Governor Coast / Decelerate Switch |             |                  |              | 983       | 7.3        | 2 bits    | states | 4 states/2 bits               | 0         | 3         |
| Engine PTO Resume Switch                      |             |                  |              | 982       | 7.5        | 2 bits    | states | 4 states/2 bits               | 0         | 3         |
| Engine PTO Governor Accelerate Switch         |             |                  |              | 981       | 7.7        | 2 bits    | states | 4 states/2 bits               | 0         | 3         |
| <b>FUEL ECONOMY (LIQUID) (LFE1)</b>           | <b>FEF2</b> | <b>65266</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Tx</b> |            |           |        |                               |           |           |
| Engine Fuel Rate                              |             |                  |              | 183       | 1-2        | 16 bits   | L/h    | 0.05L/h/bit                   | 0         | 3212.75   |
| Engine Throttle Valve 1 Position              |             |                  |              | 51        | 7          | 8 bits    | %      | 0.4%/bit                      | 0         | 100       |
| <b>AMBIENT CONDITIONS (AMB)</b>               | <b>FEF5</b> | <b>65269</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Tx</b> |            |           |        |                               |           |           |
| Barometric Pressure                           |             |                  |              | 108       | 1          | 8 bits    | kPa    | 0.5kPa/bit                    | 0         | 125kPa    |

| NAME   | PGN         | Default Priority | Tx/Rx/On Req | SPN           | Start Byte | Length  | Units  | Resolution                           | Min Value | Max Value  |
|--|-------------|------------------|--------------|---------------|------------|---------|--------|--------------------------------------|-----------|------------|
| Ambient Air Temperature                                      |             |                  |              | 171           | 4-5        | 16 bits | °C     | 0.03125DegC/bit<br>Offset = -273DegC | -273      | 1734.96875 |
| Engine Intake Air Temperature                                |             |                  |              | 172           | 6          | 8 bits  | °C     | 1DegC/bit<br>Offset = -40DegC        | -40       | 210        |
| <b>INTAKE/EXHAUST CONDITIONS 1 (IC1)</b>                     | <b>FEF6</b> | <b>65270</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Tx</b>     |            |         |        |                                      |           |            |
| Engine Intake Manifold #1 Pressure                           |             |                  |              | 102           | 2          | 8 bits  | kPa    | 2kPa/bit                             | 0         | 500        |
| Engine Intake Air Pressure                                   |             |                  |              | 106           | 4          | 8 bits  | °C     | 2kPa/bit                             | 0         | 500        |
| Engine Intake Manifold 1 Temperature                         |             |                  |              | 105           | 3          | 8 bits  | °C     | 1DegC/bit<br>Offset = -40DegC        | -40       | 210        |
| <b>VEHICLE ELECTRICAL POWER 1 (VEP1)</b>                     | <b>FEF7</b> | <b>65271</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Tx</b>     |            |         |        |                                      |           |            |
| Battery Potential / Power Input 1                            |             |                  |              | 168           | 5-6        | 16 bits | V      | 0.05V/bit                            | 0         | 3212.75    |
| Keyswitch Battery Potential                                  |             |                  |              | 158           | 7-8        | 16 bits | V      | 0.05V/bit                            | 0         | 3212.75    |
| <b>TRANSMISSION FLUIDS 1 (TRF1)</b>                          | <b>FEF8</b> | <b>65272</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Rx</b>     |            |         |        |                                      |           |            |
| Transmission Oil Temperature 1                               |             |                  |              | 177           | 5-6        | 16bits  | °C     | 0.03125 °C/bit<br>Offset = -273 °C   | -273      | 1734.96875 |
| <b>OPERATOR INDICATORS (OI)</b>                              | <b>FEFF</b> | <b>65279</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Tx</b>     |            |         |        |                                      |           |            |
| Water In Fuel Indicator                                      |             |                  |              | 97            | 1.1        | 2 bits  | States | 4 states/2 bit                       | 0         | 3          |
| <b>ELECTRONIC ENGINE CONTROLLER 4 (EEC4)</b>                 | <b>FEBE</b> | <b>65214</b>     | <b>7</b>     | <b>On Req</b> |            |         |        |                                      |           |            |
| Engine Rated Power   |             |                  |              | 166           | 1-2        | 16 bits | kW     | 0.5 kW per bit, Offset = 0 kW        | 0         | 32127.5    |
| <b>AFTERTREATMENT 1 SERVICE 1 (AT1S1)</b>                    | <b>FD7B</b> | <b>64891</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>On Req</b> |            |         |        |                                      |           |            |
| Aftertreatment 1 Diesel Particulate Filter Soot Load Percent |             |                  |              | 3719          | 1          | 8 bits  | %      | 1%/bit                               | 0         | 250        |

Table 16.2

## 16.4 J1939 Parameters – Detailed Descriptions

Note: The PGN numbers are written in some documents in decimal form (e.g.61444). This document will use the Hexadecimal form (e.g. F004) as it is easier to remember and simpler to decode when using tools to analyze traffic on the CAN J1939 bus.

### 16.4.1 Sending Messages to the Engine ECM

The engine ECM supports a large number of different J1939 PGN's and SPN's including messages such as TSC1, OHECS, and DM1 etc. Some of these messages are requests from external devices such as TSC1 and others are generated or transmitted by the ECM itself. Messages intended to be sent to the engine ECM require that the correct source and destination addresses are used.

#### 16.4.1.1 Source Addressing

The source address is used to identify different components and electronic control modules on a CAN bus, source address assignment is given in appendix B of SAE J1939. Engine #1 source address is 00, and the service tool source address is FA. Preferred J1939 source addresses vary between industry groups, when designing a system, check tables B1-B7 in the SAE J1939 standard to ensure the correct source address is allocated. The ECM will accept messages from modules with any source address as long as it is different to the source address of the engine ECM.

#### 16.4.1.2 Destination Addressing

For messages controlling the engine functionality, such a TSC1 and OHECS, the engine will only respond to these messages when sent with a destination address of 00.

The Request PGN message is also sensitive to the population of the destination address field. When the engine #1 destination 00 is requested, then the engine ECM responds with the RTS Transport protocol message, and will not release the requested information until the handshake message CTS is returned.

When the global destination is given for a Request PGN message FF (Global), then the engine ECM responds by sending the requested message. If the message is larger than 8 bytes then it will be released via the Transport Protocol BAM message. When the global destination is used, there is no need to use the RTS/CTS protocol.

### 16.4.2 J1939 Section 71 – TSC1 Operation

#### 16.4.2.1 Torque Speed Control (TSC1) Operating Principles

The TSC1 message is a J1939 PGN designed to allow the Torque/Speed control of an engine via the CAN bus. This message can be used by any electronic control module to request or limit the engine speed / torque output. Some of the feature's primary uses are; direct engine speed control via a machine controller (removes the need for a fixed throttle connection to the engine ECM), or the limiting of engine speed / torque during transmission gear changes.

The OEM is responsible for ensuring that the implementation of TSC1 speed control is safe and appropriate for the engine and machine. Furthermore it is necessary for the OEM to perform a risk assessment validation of the machine software and hardware used to control the engine speed via TSC1.

##### 16.4.2.1.1 Engine Speed Control

When correctly configured the speed control feature of the TSC1 message will directly control the engine speed. This means that desired engine speed will be set to the value contained within the TSC1 message. The engine will then respond to this request and attempt to reach the desired engine speed value. It should be noted that the TSC1 speed control message will override all other engine speed demand inputs such as analogue / PWM throttles.

##### 16.4.2.1.2 Engine Torque Control

TSC1 torque control offers the user the same type of function as the speed control feature but with the input being a torque control value. By controlling engine torque output the controlling device is actually requesting an engine delivered fuel quantity from the engine ECM. Care must be taken when operating this mode as controlling engine fuelling can lead to unpredictable engine behavior (and speed) especially when implemented under transient load conditions.

**Note: This feature must not be implemented without consulting the Perkins Applications Engineering department and a full FMEA/risk assessment must be carried out by the customer.**

### 16.4.2.1.3 Engine Speed Limiting

Engine speed limiting is a feature, which enables a machine controller to request a physical engine speed limit value as opposed to a speed control. Under this configuration the additional throttle inputs available on the machine will remain active, only up until the TSC1 transmitted speed limit is reached.

For example; if the TSC1 message is set to Speed limit with a value of 1800rpm, the operator's foot throttle will remain active and the engine will respond to any speed requests from the pedal. However if an engine speed above 1800rpm is requested then the engine speed will not respond and be limited to 1800rpm.

### 16.4.2.1.4 Engine Torque Limiting

The Engine Torque limiting function, when configured limits the max torque output of the engine to a value determined as a percentage of the max available torque for the particular rating curve being operated. The graph below is an example of an engine torque curve and the resulting engine response once an 80% torque limit is transmitted via TSC1. As with the speed limiting function the engine will operate as normal while the engine torque requirement is less than 80% but will limit the engine torque output to 80%.

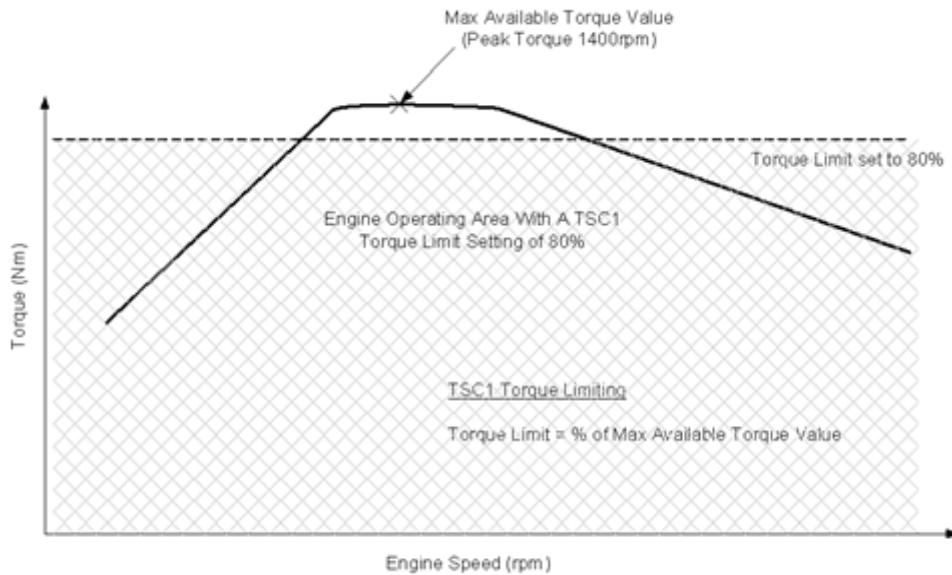


Figure 16-2

### 16.4.2.1.5 Dynamic Engine Torque Limiting

The TSC1 torque limiting feature can be used dynamically to effectively shape a torque curve that provides the same or less torque capability across the operating speed range. To do this the TSC1 torque limit must be varied based on a given engine speed.

Implementation will require a machine controller and a form of Torque map based on engine speed. Calibration of this map will most likely require dyno connection and a full understanding of the following J1939 SPN's for the correct Torque limit to be applied.

SPN's transmitted to support dynamic torque limiting and general torque availability are:

| Parameter                             | PGN   | SPN | Description  |
|---------------------------------------|-------|-----|--|
| Actual Engine % Torque                | 61444 | 513 | Torque transmitted by engine as a % of Indicated Reference Torque (Peak Torque).                                     |
| Nominal Friction % Torque             | 65247 | 514 | Friction Torque losses internal to engine transmitted as a % of indicated Reference Torque.                          |
| Engine Reference Torque               | 65251 | 544 | Max Torque defined as Indicated Torque (Flywheel Torque + Frictional Torque).  |
| Engine % Load At Current Engine Speed | 61443 | 92  | The ratio of actual engine % torque against max available at current engine speed. All torques are indicated values. |
| Engine Speed Requested Torque Limit   | 0     | 518 | TSC1 SPN used to communicate the require Torque limit values to the engine ECM.                                      |
| Engine Override Control Mode          | 0     | 695 | TSC1 setting to allow the use of Torque limiting.  |

Table 16.3

**Terminology:**

**Indicated Torque** is the total torque generated by the engine including the torque required to overcome internal friction.

**Flywheel Torque** is the advertised torque available at the flywheel and can be determined by subtracting the frictional torque from the indicated torque value.

**16.4.2.1.5.1 Enabling TSC1 Torque Limiting**

To enable engine torque limiting TSC1 must be sent from the machine controller at a rate and format as detailed in Chapter 17. When TSC1 Torque limiting is required the TSC1 PGN should be set with the settings shown below;

- **SPN 695** = 11 (binary) Speed/torque limit control required
- **SPN 518** = Required Torque limit value
- **SPN 3350** = 11111 (binary) TSC1 Control Purpose set to P32 Temporary Power Train Control

**16.4.2.1.5.2 Calculating a Dynamic Torque Limit**

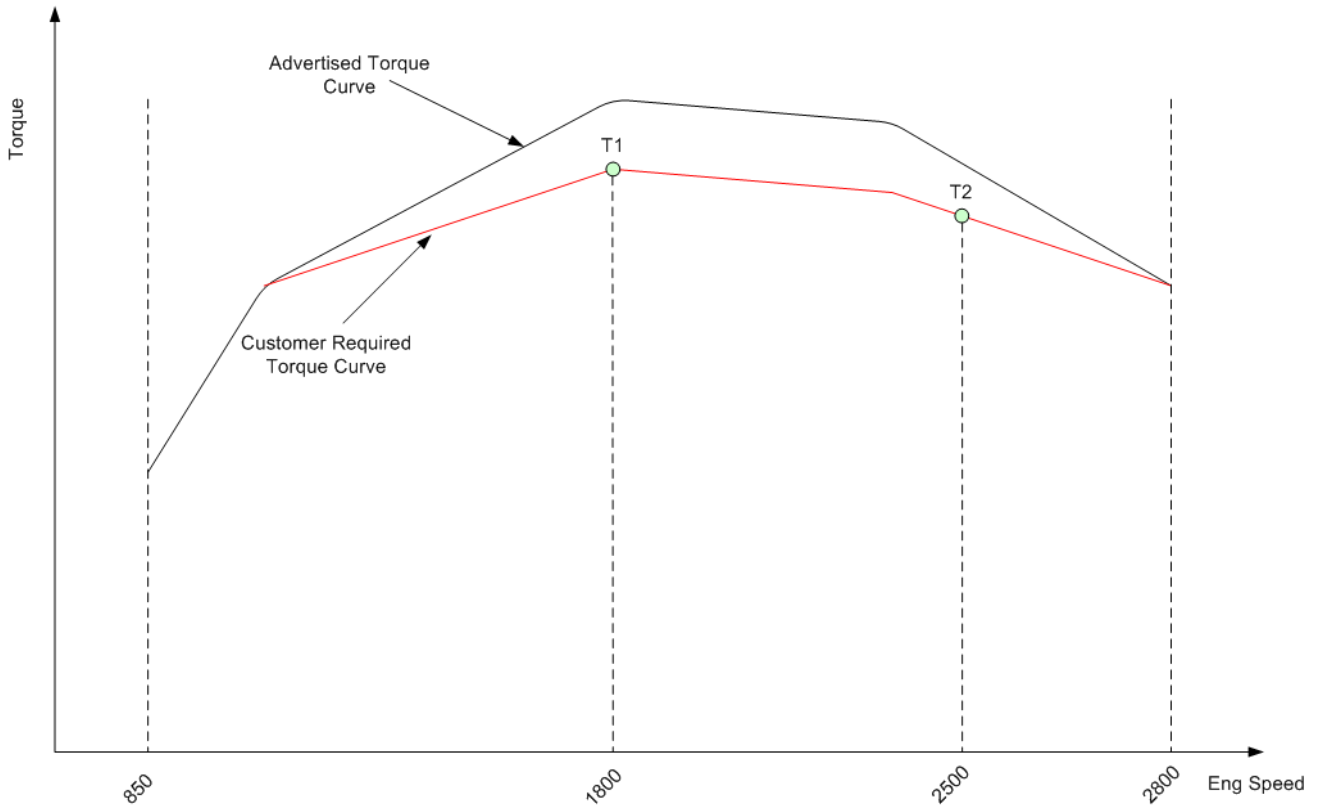
To calculate a dynamic Torque value OEM needs to determine the required max torque limits across the machine operating speed range and transmit a varying Torque limit via TSC1.

As the transmitted torque values and TSC1 torque limits are set based on Indicated torque %, the following calculations need to be made to translate machine T requirements into a TSC1 torque limit.

**Example:**

Using Figure 16-3 and the following customer T requirements for T1 and T2 the TSC1 torque limit % can be calculated as follows:

- Advertised curve T1 = 208Nm
- Customer required curve T1 = 198Nm
- Advertised curve T2 = 190Nm
- Customer required curve T2 = 180Nm



**Note: T1 and T2 are examples only and in reality the customer will need to provide torque limits across the engine speed range in order for a shaped Torque curve as shown by the red line to be achieved.**

Figure 16-3

**Calculation T1**

TSC1 Torque limit needs to be set as a % of indicated Torque (indicated T = flywheel T + Frictional T). Customer requirement is for max T of 198Nm flywheel Torque.

- 1) Calculate Frictional Torque at T1
  - Data taken from CAN bus at 1800rpm
  - Engine Reference Torque SPN 544 = 239Nm
  - Engine friction Torque SPN 514 = 13%
  - Engine friction Torque (Nm) = 239Nm \* 0.13 = 31Nm
- 2) Calculate using CAN bus data machines Torque limit as a function of indicated Torque.
  - Indicated Torque Customer T1 = T1 flywheel T + T1 frictional torque
  - Indicated Torque Customer T1 = 198Nm + 31Nm
  - Indicated Torque Customer T1 = 229Nm
- 3) Format customer required Torque limit as a function of advertised reference torque for TSC1 message.
  - TSC1 Torque Limit T1 % = (Indicated Torque Customer T1 / Engine Ref Torque)x100
  - TSC1 Torque Limit T1 % = (229Nm / 239Nm)x100
  - TSC1 Torque Limit T1 % = 96%
- 4) So for a T limit of 198Nm at 1800rpm TSC1 SPN 518 needs to be set to 96%.

## Calculation T2

- 1) Calculate Frictional Torque at T2
  - Data taken from CAN bus at 2500rpm
  - Engine Reference Torque SPN 544 = 239Nm
  - Engine friction Torque SPN 514 = 16%
  - Engine friction Torque (Nm) = 239Nm \* 0.16 = 38Nm
- 1) Calculate using CAN bus data machines Torque limit as a function of indicated Torque.
  - Indicated Torque Customer T2 = T2 flywheel T + T2 frictional torque
  - Indicated Torque Customer T2 = 180Nm + 38Nm
  - Indicated Torque Customer T2 = 218Nm
- 2) Format customer required Torque limit as a function of advertised reference torque for TSC1 message.
  - TSC1 Torque Limit T2 % = (Indicated Torque Customer T2 / Engine Ref Torque)x100
  - TSC1 Torque Limit T2 % = (218Nm / 239Nm)x100
  - TSC1 Torque Limit T2 % = 91%

So for a T limit of 180Nm at 2500rpm TSC1 SPN 518 needs to be set to 91%.

### 16.4.2.1.6 Arbitration For Multiple TSC1 Messages

Some OEM applications require the engine to respond to TSC1 messages sent from more than one controller. The Perkins product range can support TSC1 messages sent from more than 1 source address and the arbitration applied adheres to the flow chart specified within the SAEJ1939-71 section Appendix D. For more information please consult the SAE J1939-71 standard. If multiple controllers are used to send TSC1 messages to the engine ECM the following rules must be applied.

- Each controller must have an individual Source Address
- Override control mode priority must be used to determine which controller is master i.e. highest priority wins.

Please Contact your Perkins Applications Engineer for more information.

### 16.4.2.1.7 Multiple J1939 TSC1 messages – Simultaneous Speed and Torque Limiting Control

It is recognised that the J1939 TSC1 is more and more used to control Engine speed through the J1939 Network. However, there is also a need to be able to limit the output torque of the Engine to support the modern Transmission and Machine Strategies. In order to support this kind of usage of the TSC1 message, Perkins has included the usage of the SPN 3350 to differentiate the TSC1 Control Purpose of each message and offers an alternative to have the Engine control Speed and limit the Torque through the J1939 TSC1 message. How the message needs to be configured to ensure the right behaviour of the Engine is explained below. To ensure the feature works correctly the two TSC1 messages must also be sent from different Source Addresses, see details below.

To permanently control the Engine Speed through the TSC1 message, the Speed request message should be set as follows:

- **SPN 695** = 01 (binary) Speed Control required
- **SPN 898** = Required Speed value
- **SPN 3350** = 00000 (binary) TSC1 Control Purpose set to P1 Accelerator Pedal
- **Source address for this message must be 0x03**

In addition to this message, a second TSC1 message can be sent by the Machine controller to set the Torque Limit (or Speed Limit.) This message should be set as follows:

- **SPN 695** = 11 (binary) Speed/torque limit control required
- **SPN 518** = Required Torque limit value
- **SPN 3350** = 11111 (binary) TSC1 Control Purpose set to P32 Temporary Power Train Control
- **Source address for this message must be different and can be anything except for: 0x00, 0x03 or 0xFA**

It is critical that the TSC1 message with the P32 Temporary Power Train control purpose is used only for Torque limiting purpose. If this control mode is used with a speed request, then the speed request will take priority over the torque limit and the torque limit will not be applied.

**16.4.2.2 Torque Speed Control (TSC1) Message Configuration & Control**

The Torque/Speed control #1 (TSC1) PGN allows electronic control devices connected to the CAN network to request / limit engine speed and / or torque. This feature is often used as part of a closed loop engine control system with broadcast message parameters such as engine speed (EEC1). Usage is particularly common in machines that have complex hydraulic systems.

| Identifier  | Rate (msec) | PGN    | Default Priority | R1 | DP | Source    | Destination |
|-------------|-------------|--------|------------------|----|----|-----------|-------------|
| 0C 00 00 xx | 10          | 000000 | 3                | 0  | 0  | See above | 00          |

Table 16.4

| TX | RX | Parameter name   | B<br>y<br>t<br>e | B<br>i<br>t | L<br>e<br>n<br>g<br>t<br>h | S<br>t<br>a<br>t<br>e | U<br>n<br>i<br>t<br>s | Res<br>(unit/bit) | Range |       | N<br>o<br>t<br>e    |
|----|----|--|------------------|-------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|-------|-------|---------------------|
|    |    |  |                  |             |                            |                       |                       |                   | Min   | Max   |                     |
|    | X  | <b>Override Control Mode (spn 695)</b>                     | 1                | 1           | 2                          |                       |                       |                   |       |       |                     |
|    | X  | Override Disabled  |                  |             |                            | 00                    |                       |                   |       |       |                     |
|    | X  | Speed Control  |                  |             |                            | 01                    |                       |                   |       |       |                     |
|    | X  | Torque Control   |                  |             |                            | 10                    |                       |                   |       |       |                     |
|    | X  | Speed/Torque Limit Control                                 |                  |             |                            | 11                    |                       |                   |       |       |                     |
|    | X  | <b>Override Control Mode Priority (spn 897)</b>            | 1                | 5           | 2                          |                       |                       |                   |       |       |                     |
|    | X  | Highest Priority   |                  |             |                            | 00                    |                       |                   |       |       |                     |
|    | X  | High Priority  |                  |             |                            | 01                    |                       |                   |       |       |                     |
|    | X  | Medium Priority  |                  |             |                            | 10                    |                       |                   |       |       |                     |
|    | X  | Low Priority   |                  |             |                            | 11                    |                       |                   |       |       |                     |
|    | X  | <b>Requested Speed / Speed Limit (spn 898)</b>             | 2                | 1           | 16                         |                       | Rpm                   | 0.125rpm/bit      | 0     | 8032  |                     |
|    | X  | <b>Requested Torque / Torque Limit (spn 518)</b>           | 4                | 1           | 8                          |                       | %                     | 1%/bit gain       | -125  | +125  | Offset<br>-<br>125% |
|    | X  | <b>Engine Requested Torque – High Resolution (SPN4191)</b> | 6                | 1           | 4                          |                       | %                     | 0.125%/bit        | 0     | 0.875 |                     |
|    | X  | Additional Torque resolution +0.000%                       |                  |             |                            | 0000                  |                       |                   |       |       |                     |
|    | X  | Additional Torque resolution +0.125%                       |                  |             |                            | 0001                  |                       |                   |       |       |                     |
|    | X  | Additional Torque resolution +0.250%                       |                  |             |                            | 0010                  |                       |                   |       |       |                     |
|    | X  | Additional Torque resolution +0.375%                       |                  |             |                            | 0011                  |                       |                   |       |       |                     |
|    | X  | Additional Torque resolution +0.500%                       |                  |             |                            | 0100                  |                       |                   |       |       |                     |
|    | X  | Additional Torque resolution +0.625%                       |                  |             |                            | 0101                  |                       |                   |       |       |                     |
|    | X  | Additional Torque resolution +0.750%                       |                  |             |                            | 0110                  |                       |                   |       |       |                     |
|    | X  | Additional Torque resolution +0.875%                       |                  |             |                            | 0111                  |                       |                   |       |       |                     |

Table 16.5

#### **16.4.2.2.1 ECM Response Time to TSC1 Request**

The mean response time for the ECM to alter the desired speed following a TSC1 request is 52 ms +/- 5 ms.

Note: there will be a further delay in the engine's actual speed response due to the driving of mechanical components. If TSC1 response time is critical to transmission development and operation, contact your Perkins Application Engineering Department for further information.

#### **16.4.2.2.2 TSC1 Configuration**

TSC1 is always available as a speed demand input, and given that a J1939 diagnostic code is not active, the engine will prioritize the TSC1 request above all other speed demand inputs. In effect, TSC1 overrides all other configured throttle inputs.

There are currently 2 TSC1 fault-handling options available in the service tool, these are described as TSC1 Continuous Fault Handling: Disabled or Enabled.

#### **16.4.2.2.3 TSC1 Continuous Fault Handling: [Disabled] (Default)**

This mode is also known as transient fault detection. It is suitable for applications where there is more than one throttle input into the ECM, for instance, in a wheeled excavator where the analog throttle is used to control road speed, but TSC1 is used to control the machine hydraulics. The TSC1 message will override any other speed demand such as Analogue / PWM throttle pedal. TSC1 override is switched on and off using the override control mode SPN.

#### **16.4.2.2.4 End of Transmission – Fault Detection**

The ECM needs to differentiate between the end of a transmission by another controller and an intermittent failure. The ECM expects, therefore, that when a controller no longer wishes to demand engine speed then it will terminate with at least one message with the Control Override Mode SPN set to 00. If the engine sees that TSC1 messages have stopped, for 500 ms or more, and TSC1 has not been terminated correctly, the ECM will recognize this as a fault, a J1939 diagnostic code will be raised and the ECM will not accept any TSC1 speed requests for the remainder of the key cycle.

It is important to note that although the diagnostic limit for TSC1 signal rate is set at 500 ms, customers should adhere to the 10 ms transmission rate where possible. This is to minimize the risk of the engine not behaving as the customer desires.

#### **16.4.2.2.5 TSC1 Continuous Fault Handling: [Enabled]**

This mode is also known as continuous fault detection. It is suitable for applications where either TSC1 is the only throttle used or where TSC1 is continuously used to limit the top engine speed. The TSC1 speed control/speed limit cannot be switched off using the override control mode SPN. For instance, in a wheeled excavator, the analog throttle is connected to the machine ECM that sends the TSC1 message to control road speed, and to control the machine hydraulics. When TSC1 continuous fault handling is active, other throttles will be permanently overridden, and will only become available if a TSC1 fault is detected.

#### **16.4.2.2.6 TSC1 Message Counter**

The message counter is used to detect situations where the transmitting ECU malfunction repeats the same frame all the time. The receiver of the information may use the counter parameter to detect this situation. The transmitting device will increase the message counter in every cycle. The message counter will count from 0 to 7 and then wrap.

The values 8h through Eh are SAE reserved and should be ignored by the receiver.

Value Fh (all bits set to 1) will indicate that the message counter is not available. For compatibility purposes, TSC1 will operate as normal if the message counter is not available from the transmitting device (as per previous use of TSC1.)

If the transmitting device sends 'FF' then the ECM will not monitor this SPN.

**16.4.2.2.7 TSC1 Message Checksum**

The message checksum is used to verify the signal path from the transmitting device to the receiving device.

The message checksum is calculated using the first 7 data bytes, the message counter and the bytes of the message identifier. It is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Checksum} = (\text{Byte1} + \text{Byte2} + \text{Byte3} + \text{Byte4} + \text{Byte5} + \text{Byte6} + \text{Byte7} + (\text{message counter} \& 0\text{Fh}) + \text{message ID low byte} + \text{message ID mid low byte} + \text{message ID mid high byte} + \text{message ID high byte})$$

$$\text{Message Checksum} = (((\text{Checksum} \gg 6) \& 03\text{h}) + (\text{Checksum} \gg 3) + \text{Checksum}) \& 07\text{h}$$

Value Fh (all bits set to 1) will indicate that the message checksum is not available. For compatibility purposes, TSC1 will operate as normal if the message counter is not available from the transmitting device (as per previous use of TSC1.)

If the transmitting device sends 'FF' then the ECM will not monitor this SPN.

**16.4.2.2.8 Example TSC1 speed control Message format**

When transmitting TSC1 all 8 data bytes should be included in the PGN. Those not supported or not required should be set to FFh.

- Identifier format: c000017h
- Identifier priority: 3
- PGN: 0
- Destination address: 00 (Engine#1 address)
- Source address: 17 (in this example, see details above for source addresses)

| Data byte number | 1  | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5              | 6  | 7  | 8  |
|------------------|----|----|----|----|----------------|----|----|----|
| Data             | 01 | A0 | 28 | FF | 07<br>Or<br>FF | FF | FF | FF |

Figure 16-4

- Byte 1: Override Control Mode (SPN 695) = 01 (Speed Control)
- Byte 2-3: Requested Engine Speed (SPN 898) = 28A0h (1300rpm)
- Byte 4: Requested Torque Limit (SPN 518) = FF not required
- Byte 5: TSC1 Control Purpose (SPN 3350) = 07 (Accelerator pedal) or FF (Temporary Power Train Control)
- Byte 6: Engine Requested Torque (SPN4191) = FF not required
- Byte 7: Not required
- Byte 8: Message Counter and Checksum

## 17.0 Lamp and LED Specification

To correctly use a Light Emitting Diode (LED) with a ECM output driver, the LED will need a resistor in series (RS) and a resistor in parallel (RP).

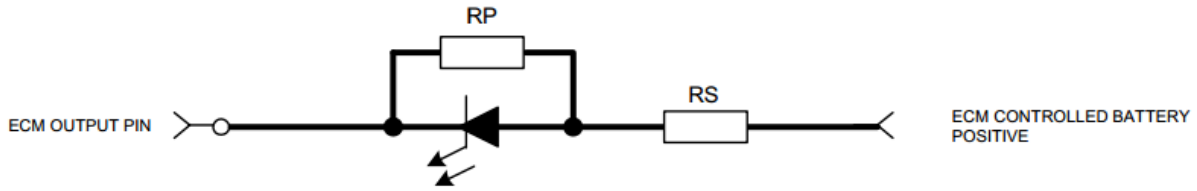


Figure 17-1

The series resistor (RS) is used to limit the current that will go through the LED and prevent it from burning out. This resistor is often called a current limiting resistor. To calculate the resistance required, use the following calculation, where  $V_{LED\ Forward}$  is the voltage drop across the LED, given by the manufacturer of the LED and  $I_{MAX}$  is the max current rating of the ECM driver.

$$RS = \frac{(V_{BATT} - V_{LED\ Forward})}{I_{MAX}}$$

The maximum lamp driver current is defined by the ECM driver used for each of the lamps, Table 17.1 shows the max current for designated lamp pinout.

| Descriptions                     | Pin Allocation | Maximum Current ( $I_{MAX}$ ) | Leakage Current ( $I_{leakage}$ ) |
|----------------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Engine Warning Lamp              | J2-23          | <0.6A                         | 0.09mA                            |
| Engine Shutdown Lamp             | J1-12          | <0.6A                         | 0.09mA                            |
| Engine Oil Pressure              | J1-34          | <1A                           | 0.09mA                            |
| DPF Lamp                         | J2-10          | <3A                           | 0.09mA                            |
| Engine Wait to Start Lamp        | J1-27          | <1A                           | 1mA                               |
| Emission System Malfunction Lamp | J2-22          | <0.4A                         | 1mA                               |
| Wait To Disconnect Lamp          | N/A            | N/A                           | N/A                               |
| Engine Running Output Lamp       | J2-21          | <1A                           | 1mA                               |
| Aftertreatment Regen Active Lamp | J2-13          | 3.5A                          | 0.79mA                            |
| DPF Lamp                         | J2 -10         | 3A                            | 0.79mA                            |
| Regen Inhibit Lamp               | J2-15          | 3A                            | 1mA                               |
| Engine Running Output Lamp       | J2-21          | 1A                            | 1mA                               |

Table 17.1

Special consideration should be given when connecting a LED to the engine ECM lamp output driver. LED's are particularly sensitive to low currents and may light dimly even when the ECM output driver is off. This is due to a small leakage current through the internal circuit of the ECM. Additionally, when the output driver is on it is necessary to ensure that there is minimum circuit current. The minimum circuit current is required to ensure that the circuit diagnostics function correctly. LED's may be used if connected in parallel with an appropriate resistor (RP), the leakage and diagnostic current will then flow through the parallel resistor. This resistor is often called a shunt resistor. To calculate the resistance required, use the following calculation, where  $I_{leakage}$  is the current leakage from the driver in the OFF state, given by Table 17.1.

$$RP = \frac{V_{LED\ Forward}}{I_{leakage}}$$

When selecting the resistors, attention will need to be made to the power rating. The selection of resistor will have to be capable of handling the expected power seen on the circuit. This can be worked out using the simple calculation below, where  $V_{max}$  is the maximum voltage on the electrical system. Maximum voltage for 12V systems it is 18V and for 24V systems it is 32V.

$$Power\ Rating = V_{Max} \times I_{Max}$$

## **18.0 Connector List Information**

Please refer to the 400 Series electrical schematics.

## 19.0 Revision History

| Version                           | Section   | Description  |
|-----------------------------------|---|--|
| 1.0                               |   | First production release created from draft version 2.1.   |
| 2.0                               | 1.2 Functional Safety   | New section added.   |
|                                   | 2.2.4 DPF Delta Pressure Sensor   | New section added.   |
|                                   | 3.3 Example of Optional Customer Installed Components   | Regen Inhibit switch, inhibit lamp and active lamp added to Table 3.2.   |
|                                   | 4.1.2 Engine Block Ground Connection  | 3-cylinder ground locations updated.   |
|                                   | 4.10 Fuel Metering Unit Cable   | Section updated to include resistance limits.  |
|                                   | 4.13 ECM Key-Off  | Power down timing updated to 70 seconds.   |
|                                   | 4.15 ECM Output Driver Connection Warning   | New section added.   |
|                                   | 4.3.2 Glow Plug System  | Table 4.2 glow plug current draw table updated.  |
|                                   | 6.2.3 WiF Switch Installation   | Figure 6.10 updated to include the correct WiF switch pinout.  |
|                                   | 6.2.5 WiF Component I/O   | Table 6.7 updated to include the correct WiF switch pinout.  |
|                                   | 6.4.4 Engine Diagnostic Connector Schematic   | Figure 6-14 Engine Power Relay fuse changed from 40A to 30A.<br>Figure 6-14 updated to include 5A fuse on comms adaptor supply wire. |
|                                   | 6.6.2 Engine Electric Fuel Prime / Lift Pump Configuration  | Section removed, not supported for every OEM.  |
|                                   | 7.3.4 Delta P Pressure Sensor Schematic   | Engine interface Connector pinout corrected.   |
|                                   | 8.2.6 Engine Idle Shutdown  | More information added around the requirement of engine coolant needs to be above 70°C or the feature is disabled.                   |
|                                   | 9.2.3 Evaluating Component Compatibility (Testing)  | Guidance added on 8-32V PWM throttles.   |
|                                   | 9.3.1 PTO Mode Operation  | PTO feature description improved.  |
|                                   | 9.4.2 MPTS Configuration  | Table 9.5 removed.<br>Position 15 (switches all closed) added to Table 9.6 and updated position 14.                                  |
| 10.1.1 Glow Plug System Operation | Table added to show wait to start times depending on the Inake Manifold Air temperature and Coolant temperature values. |  |
| 11.3.2 J1939 Indicator Support    | Table 11.4 updated with oil pressure J1939 message to SPN5099.<br>Table 11.4 updated with DPF regen lamps.              |  |

| Version | Section  | Description  |
|---------|--|--|
|         | 11.3.7 Oil Pressure Indicator                        | Table 11.9 updated with oil pressure J1939 message to SPN5099.   |
|         | 12.3.1 Coolant Temperature                           | Coolant Temperature Monitoring Mode Operation, Table 12.6 has been updated for a 112°C max coolant temperature.  |
|         | 12.3.2 Engine Oil Pressure                           | Table 12.8 updated to remove all the pressure trigger point and show just Level 3 trigger timings.<br>Table 12.9 updated to show just Level 3 event.   |
|         | 13.1.5 Engine Elevated Idle (Mandatory Installation) | Default elevated idle for DPF regen was changed from 1200rpm to 1800rpm.<br>Table 13.2 updated to include correct configured ranges for elevated speeds for DPF regen.<br>New requirement to configure Elevated Idle input method.<br>Guidance note on how to configure the elevated idle speeds added which refers to the Exhaust Temperature Drop A&I Test.    |
|         | 13.2 DPF Regeneration Control System Overview        | Default elevated idle for DPF regen was changed from 1200rpm to 1800rpm.<br>Table 13.5 updated to include note of DPF lamp flashing at 2Hz not 1Hz when locked at idle.  |
|         | 13.3 DPF Regeneration Lock to Idle Operation         | New chapter added showing how the lock to idle options of Idle Down and Shutdown works.  |
|         | 14.5.1 Mode Selection Operation                      | Mode selection feature safety advice added.  |
|         | 16.3 J1939 Supported Parameters Quick reference      | Table 16.2 updated to include PGN 64389 Engine Idle Management Information and SPN9677 Engine Idle Management Status.<br>Table 16.2 updated to include Elevated Idle Speed setting PGN 52992 SPN1784.<br>Table 16.2 updated for the Engine operating State allowed stats changed.<br>Table 16.2 updated with oil pressure J1939 message from SPN5082 to SPN5099. |
|         | 16.4.2 J1939 Section 71 – TSC1 Operation             | Multiple J1939 TSC1 messages – Simultaneous Speed and Torque Limiting Control section updated to include note that priority of message must be the same.   |
| 3.0     | 9.3.1 PTO Mode Operation                             | Table 9.3 updated with correct pin numbers for the PTO switches.   |
|         | 11.1 Engine & Aftertreatment Diagnostic Systems      | Table 11.1 updated to show Wait to Disconnect as optional.   |
|         | 13.1.5 Engine Elevated Idle (Mandatory Installation) | Table 13.3 updated to include changes in the elevate idle speed ranges and default speeds.   |
|         | 13.2 DPF Regeneration Control System Overview        | Table 13.6 updated to include additional J1939 messages at each escalation level.  |

| Version | Section  | Description  |
|---------|--|--|
| 4.0     | 6.2.3 WIF Switch Installation  | Backshell details added.   |
|         | 8.1.1.3 Starter Motor Control Configuration  | Starter Motor Control Configuration updated to include the new options of the starting system type in Table 8.1.<br>New configuration option table included to show how to set Starter Motor Hardwired Control (8.1.1.4) or Starter Motor J1939 Control (8.1.1.5). |
|         | 10.1.3 Glow Plug Connector   | Glow plug bus bar connection torque updated.   |
|         | 11.3.1 Hardwired Lamp Outputs  | Table 11.3 corrected to show DPF lamp mandatory.   |
|         | 13.1.6 Machine Integration Of Elevated Idle  | Important note added to state service tool tests and procedures need elevated idle message for safe state but doesn't send parasitic load request message.   |
|         | 16.3 J1939 Supported Parameters Quick reference  | Table 16.2 reordered by PGN.<br>SPN 6808 correct to SPN 8608.  |
| 5.0     | 11.1 Engine & Aftertreatment Diagnostic Systems  | Comment added in Table 11.1 to state Inhibit Regen Lamp mandatory only when using the Inhibit Switch.  |
| 5.0     | 8.1.1.4 Starter Motor Control Hardwired Installation   | Figure showing an alternative installation setup deleted   |
| 6.0     | 9.0 Engine Speed Demand  | Information related to unstable machine throttle input / fast transient response for demanded speed added.   |
| 6.0     | 14.5.4 Mode Select changes requested via the J1939 datalink<br>16.3 J1939 Supported Parameters Quick reference | Statement regarding SPN166 added, SPN166 added to Table 16.2   |
| 6.0     | 13.4.1 DPF Regen Inhibit Switch Operation  | Minor changes to the text for better understanding of the Regen Inhibit Operation.   |
| 7.0     | 5.2.3 Engine ECM J1 Connector Information<br>5.3.3 Engine ECM J2 Connector Information                         | Part numbers updated in Tables 5.1 and 5.2   |
| 7.0     | 16.3 J1939 Supported Parameters Quick reference  | SPN 3719 added to Table 16.2   |
| 7.0     | 12.3.3.1 Intake Manifold Temperature Monitoring Mode Operation   | L2 severity correction in Table 12.11  |
| 7.0     | 4.1.3 ECM Body Grounding   | Text added to mention the use of 360Ω resistors when certain pins are not used   |
| 8.0     | 10.2 Breather Heater Connection  | Change of temp. from -18°C to -25°C  |

| Version | Section | Description                                       |
|---------|---------|---|
| 9.0     | 12.3.1  | Severity levels Vs Temperature updated            |
| 9.0     | 15.6.1  | Reworded to remove confusion on ECM control       |
| 10.0    | 11.3.9  | Applicable states updated in Table 11.11          |
| 10.0    | 10.1.2  | Figure 10-1 corrected – fuse value changed to 60A |